

4-0016

# JAINA PHILOSOPHY :

## An Introduction

21/1/19

Mohan Lal Mehta



**Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan**  
Bangalore - 560001

# **JAINA PHILOSOPHY :**

## **An Introduction**

**Mohan Lal Mehta**

**M. A. (Phil. & Psy.), Ph. D. (B. H. U.), Shastracharya  
(Jain Darshan), Dip. Ger.  
Former Professor of Jain Philosophy,  
University of Poona**

**Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan**

**Race Course Road  
Bangalore - 560001  
(India)**

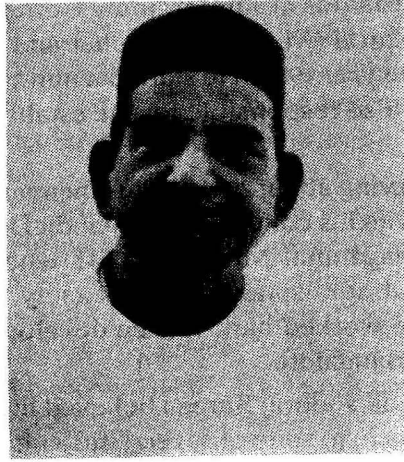
**Published by :**  
Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan  
Race Course Road  
Bangalore - 560001  
(India)

1998

**Price : Rs. 160/-**

**All Rights Reserved by the Author**

**Printed by :**  
Yog Enterprises  
428, Mangalwar Peth  
Pune - 411011  
(India)



*In  
Sacred Memory  
of  
Late Pandit  
Jodhraj Surana*

## **Late Pandit Jodhraj Surana**

Shri. Jodhraj Surana who was born in 1912, hailed from erstwhile Mewar State (Rajasthan) and completed his education at Bikaner and Jaipur in Jain Training College. He started his career at Khachrod (M. P.) as a teacher and went to Chennai (Madras) in the year 1928. He started a number of institutions there and was also responsible for the establishment of A. M. Jain College.

After serving about 20 years in Chennai, he was brought to Bangalore with his colleague Late Pandit Devdatt Sharma by Late Seth Chhaganmal Mutha in 1948 where he developed the educational atmosphere in the society till his death on 29 - 5 - 94. He worked hard for the development of various institutions in Bangalore.

Late Pandit Jodhraj Surana believed in Gandhian Ideals and followed them in spite of several difficulties. He was pious and pure in his day to day life. He was also a freedom fighter.

The Institutions which he started in Bangalore are as follows :

- 1) A Boarding House and Library situated at Primrose Road on a land measuring 75,000 Sq.ft.
- 2) A Primary School, Middle School and High School at Victoria Road.
- 3) A College at Indiranagar for Science, Commerce and Arts.
- 4) A Girls Primary School, High School and College in Rangaswamy Temple Street.
- 5) A Primary School and Middle School at Nagarathpet.

The society appreciated his services and honoured him by presenting a purse of Rs. 8,51,000/- which he donated to a Trust after adding a sum of Rs. 50,000/- for various charitable purposes. He was also honoured by the Maharana of Mewar as a distinguished personality of the State.

**Shantilal V. Sheth**

## Foreword

The present work is the third edition (revised and enlarged) of the author's earlier book 'Outlines of Jaina Philosophy' published in 1954 by the Jain Mission Society of Bangalore. The second edition was published in 1971 by the P. V. Research Institute of Varanasi. That edition having become exhausted and there being regular demand for the book, the present edition is the result.

The author Dr. Mohan Lal Mehta is an international scholar of Jainism. He has authored a number of books on Jaina philosophy, psychology, epistemology, culture, literature etc. He is the principal author of the 'Prakrit Proper Names', a monumental work in two volumes, published by the L. D. Institute of Indology, Ahmedabad. He has been the founder Director of P. V. Research Institute, Varanasi and the founder Professor of Jain Philosophy at the University of Poona.

We thank Dr. Mehta for his labour of love in preparing this revised and enlarged edition and giving us an opportunity to publish it.

We are also thankful to Mr. Mohan Lal Khariwal, C. A., H. C. Khincha & Co., 151 Avenue Road, Bangalore -2, for taking keen interest and initiative in publishing this edition. Our thanks are also due to Dr. Siddheshwar Tagwale, Proprietor, Yog Enterprises, Pune, for the excellent printing of the book.

Bangalore -1

**Publishers**

15th August, 1998

## PREFACE

My aim in preparing the present treatise has been to make an humble and honest contribution to one of the most significant systems of Indian Philosophy, viz., Jainism. The system is, of course, too vast to be adequately treated in a single treatise, and consequently, I have tried to restrict myself to the broad features thereof. I have made an attempt to present the outlines of Jaina Philosophy on the basis of original Prakrit and Sanskrit texts in such a manner as to make the presentation interesting, intelligible and easy.

The treatise is divided into eight chapters. The first chapter gives a brief history of Jainism. The second chapter deals with the religious and philosophical literature of the Jainas. The third chapter has been devoted to a brief survey of the concept of reality from the stand-point of Idealism, Realism and Jainism. The general features of the six fundamental substances recognized by Jaina Philosophy have been elaborated in a simple and comprehensive manner bearing in mind the non-absolutistic implication of thought. The nature of soul has thoroughly and critically been examined in the fourth chapter. The fifth chapter has been devoted to the concept of matter. What are the different forms of matter according to Jainism; what is the nature of atom and molecule; what is the relation between matter and soul; how many kinds of bodies are there; what is the nature of sound, union, fineness, grossness, figure, divisibility, darkness, shade, heat, light etc.? All these questions have been answered in this chapter. In the sixth chapter I have dealt with the theory of knowledge. The canonical as well as logical concept of knowledge has been discussed in it. The seventh chapter is on the relativity of judgment. The nature of seven-fold judgment and the theory of *naya* have been precisely presented in this chapter. The eighth chapter deals with the doctrine of karma which is of

(vii)

immense importance from the ethical stand-point. The doctrine of *gunastāna* has been included in this chapter, since it is invariably associated with the concept of karma. A glossary of the Jaina Technical Terms has been appended in the end for the benefit of general readers as well as scholars.

B-18, Angal Park  
Chatuhshringi  
Pune - 411016  
9 - 4 - 1998

**Mohan Lal Mehta**



## TRANSLITERATION

### *Vowels*

अ,	आ,	इ,	ई,	उ,	ऊ,	ऋ,
a,	ā,	i,	ī,	u,	ū,	r̄,
ए,	ऐ,	ओ,	औ,	अं,	अः	
e,	ai,	o,	au,	aṁ,	aḥ	

### *Consonants*

क,	ख,	ग,	घ,	ङ,			
k,	kh,	g,	gh,	ṅ,			
च,	छ,	ज,	झ,	ञ,			
c,	ch,	j,	jh,	ñ			
ट,	ठ,	ड,	ढ,	ण,			
t,	th,	d,	ḍh,	ṇ			
त,	थ,	द,	ध,	न,			
t,	th,	d,	dh,	n,			
प,	फ,	ब,	भ,	म,			
p,	ph,	b,	bh,	m,			
य,	र,	ल,	व,	श,	ष,	स,	ह
y,	r,	l,	v,	ś,	ṣ,	s,	h

# CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I HISTORY OF JAINISM ...	3
Jainism and Buddhism 3, Pārśva and other Tirthaṅkaras 4, Lord Mahāvīra 5, Sudharman, Jambū, Bhadrabāhu and Sthūlabhadra 10, Samprati 12, Khāvela 13, Kālakācārya 13, Jaina Stūpa at Mathura 13, Kumārapāla and Hemacandra 14, Dīgambaras and Śvetāmbaras 14.	
II RELIGIOUS AND PHILOSOPHICAL LITERATURE ...	17
Aṅgas 18, Upāṅgas 21, Mūlasūtras 23, Chedasūtras 24, Cūlikāsūtras 25, Prakīrṇakas 25, Canonical Commentaries 26, Karmaprābhṛta and Kaṣāyaprabhṛta 27, Dhavalā and Jayadhavalā 28, Kundakunda's Works 28, Mūlācāra and Kārttikeyānuprekṣā 28, Tattvārthādhigama Śūtra 29, Karmaprakṛti and Pañcasaṅgraha 29, Siddhasena's Works 29, Samantabhadra's Works 29, Mallavādin's Nayacakra 30, Akalaṅka's Works 30, Haribhadra's Works 30, Vidyānandin's Works 31, Nemicandra and His Works 31, Prabhācandra's Commentaries 32, Hemacandra's Works 33, Dharmāmṛta of Āśādhara 33, Yaśovijaya's Works 33.	
III REALITY ...	35
Idealism 35, Some Misconceptions 36, Different Types of Idealism 38, Platonic Idealism 38, Idealism of Berkeley 39, Idealism of Kant 39, Absolute Idealism of Hegel 40, Bradley on Idealism 41, Idealistic Attitude of Bosanquet 42, Mādhyamika School of Buddhism 44, Yogācāra School of Buddhism 44, Non-dualistic Idealism of Śāṅkara 45, Realism 47, Arguments for Physical Existence 47, Different Trends of Realism 49, Monistic Realism 50, Dualistic Realism 50, Pluralistic Realism 51, Pragmatic	

View of Realism 51, Conception of Neo-Realism 52, Theory of Critical Realism 53, Selective and Generative Realism 54, Realistic Currents of Indian Thought 55, Pūrva-Mīmāṃsā Schools 55, Sāṅkhya School 55, Rāmānuja's Position 56, Vaibhāṣika and Sautrāntika Schools 57, Cārvāka School 57, Jainism 58, Nature of Reality 58, Characteristics of Existence 60, Identity and Difference 62, Classification of Substance 63, Canonical Conception of Classification 64, Jīvāstikāya 68, Pudgalāstikāya 70, Dharmāstikāya 72, Adharmāstikāya 72, Ākāśastikāya 73, Adhāsamaya or Kāla 74, Ethical Classification of Tattva 75, Puṇya 76, Pāpa 76, Āsrava 77, Bandha 77, Saṁvara 78, Nirjarā 78, Mokṣa 79.

#### IV SOUL

...

80

Arguments for the Existence of Soul 80, Definition of Soul 85, Difference between Darśana and Jñāna 86, Jñāna-upayoga 88, Darśana-upayoga 89, Temporal Relation between Intuition and Knowledge 90, Simultaneity of Intuition and Knowledge 91, Successive Occurrence of Intuition and Knowledge 92, Intuition and Knowledge as Identical 93, Nature of Worldly Soul 95, Consciousness as the Essence of Soul 95, Soul as a Changing Entity 98, Soul as Agent 100, Soul as Enjoyer 100, Soul as Equal in Extent to its Body 100, Varieties of Soul 103, Soul as the Possessor of Material Karma 105, Bondage 108, Liberation 109.

#### V MATTER

...

111

Reality of Matter 111, Meaning of Pudgala 114, Definition of Matter 114, Parts of Matter 115, Difference between the Vaiśeṣika and the Jaina Conceptions 117, Forms of Matter 118, Aṇu 118, Skandha 119, Perceptibility of Molecules 121, Union of

Matter 122, Sub-classes of Matter 124, Matter and Soul 125, Five Kinds of Bodies 126, Manifestations of Matter 127, Sound 127, Union 129, Fineness and Grossness 130, Figure 130, Divisibility 130, Darkness 131, Shade 131, Heat and Light 132.

## VI KNOWLEDGE ... 133

Knowledge in the Jaina Canons 134, Means of Cognition in the Jaina Canons 137, Logical Conception of Knowledge 138, Validity of Knowledge 139, Classification of the Means of Valid Knowledge 140, Categories of Perception 143, Direct Perception 143, Clairvoyance 144, Telepathy 146, Clairvoyance and Telepathy 147, Omniscience 148, Arguments for the Existence of Omniscience 149, Empirical Perception 152, Senses 153, Mind 153, Categories of Empirical Perception 154, Sensation 154, Speculation 154, Determinate Perception 155, Retention 155, Non-perceptual Cognition 155, Recollection 156, Recognition 157, Inductive Reasoning 157, Inference 159, Subjective Inference 159, Probans 160, Syllogistic Inference 161, Parts of Syllogism 161, Thesis 162, Reason 162, Example 163, Application 163, Conclusion 163, Authority 164.

## VII JUDGMENT ... 165

Traces in the Canons 166, Cause and Effect 167, Anekānta, Anekāntavāda and Syādvāda 168, Seven-fold Judgment 170, Complete Judgment 175, Incomplete Judgment 177, Definition of Naya 177, Naigama Naya 178, Saṅgraha Naya 178, Vyavahāra Naya 179, R̥jusūtra Naya 179, Śabda Naya 179, Samabhirūḍha Naya 179, Evambhūta Naya 180, Province of Naya 180, Fallacy of Naya 182, Refutation of Some Objections 184.

## VIII KARMA

... 187

Meaning of Karma 188, Four Kinds of Bondage 190, Nature 190, Knowledge-obscuring Karma 190, Intuition-obscuring Karma 191, Feeling-producing Karma 192, Deluding Karma 193, Age-determining Karma 197, Physique-making Karma 197, Heredity-determining Karma 201, Power-hindering Karma 201, Bandha, Udaya, Udīraṇā and Sattā 202, Duration 203, Intensity 204, Quantity 204, Causes of Bondage 205, Causes of Knowledge, Intuition-obscuring Karmas 205, Causes of Feeling-producing Karma 205, Causes of Belief-obscuring Karma 206, Causes of Conduct -obscuring Karma 206, Causes of Physique-making Karma 207, Causes of Heredity-determining Karma 207, Causes of Power-hindering Karma 207, Prevention and Destruction of Karma 207, Stages of Spiritual Development 207, Mithyādṛṣṭi 209, Sāsvādāna Samyagdr̥ṣṭi 209, Miśradṛṣṭi 210, Avirata Samyagdr̥ṣṭi 210, Deśavirata 210, Pramatta Saṁnyata 210, Apramatta Saṁnyata 211, Nivṛtti Bādara Samparāya 211, Anivṛtti Bādara Samparāya 211, Sūkṣma Samparāya 211, Upāśānta Kaṣāya Vītarāga Chadmastha 211, Kṣīṇa Kaṣāya Vītarāga Chadmastha 212, Sayogi Kevalin 212, Ayogi Kevalin 212, Upāśama Śreṇi 213, Kṣapaka Śreṇi 214.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

... .. 217

## INDEX

... .. 221

## JAINA TECHNICAL TERMS

... .. 237

# **JAINA PHILOSOPHY :** **An Introduction**



## CHAPTER I

### HISTORY OF JAINISM

Indian culture consists of two main trends : Brāhmanic and Śramaṇic. The Vedic traditions come under the Brāhmanic trend. The Śramaṇic trend covers the Jaina , Buddhist and similar other ascetic traditions. The Brāhmanic schools accept the authority of the Vedas and Vedic literature. The Jainas and Buddhists have their own canons and canonical literature and accept their authority.

Jainism is one of the oldest religions of the world. It is an independent and most ancient religion of India. It is not correct to say that Jainism was founded by Lord Mahāvīra. Even Lord Pārśva cannot be regarded as the founder of this great religion. It is equally incorrect to maintain that Jainism is nothing more than a revolt against the Vedic religion. The truth is that Jainism is quite an independent religion. It has its own peculiarities. It is flourishing on this land from times immemorial.

The Jaina philosophy, no doubt, holds certain principles in common with Hinduism, but this does not disprove its independent origin and free development. If it has some similarities with the other Indian systems, it has its own peculiarities and marked differences as well. Its animism, atomic theory, karmic theory etc. are quite peculiar.

#### **Jainism and Buddhism :**

Jainism and Buddhism represent Śramaṇic culture. If we examine the antiquity of Jainism from the Buddhist and Jaina records, it will be clear that Jainism is older than Buddhism. The Nigaṇṭha Nāṭaputta of the Buddhist scriptures is none else but



Lord Mahāvīra, the last *tīrthaṅkara* (fordmaker) of the Jainas. The place of his death is mentioned as Pāvā. The Buddhists often refer to the Jainas as a firmly established rival sect. Buddha made several experiments in the quest of enlightenment. But such was not the case with Mahāvīra. He practised and preached the old Nirgrantha Dharma. He made no attempt to found or preach a new religion. Buddha is even said to have entered the Śramaṇic (Nirgrantha or Jaina) Order of ascetics in his quest of enlightenment.

The Sāmaññaphala-sutta of the Dīgha-nikāya refers to the four vows (*caturyāma*) of the Nirgrantha Dharma. It shows that the Buddhists were aware of the older traditions of the Jainas. Lord Pārśva, who preceded Lord Mahāvīra, had preached the four-fold Law (*caturyāma dharma*). Mahāvīra adopted the same but added one more vow to it and preached the fivefold Law (*pañcayāma dharma*). This is clear from the Uttarādhyayana-sūtra of the Jainas. In this canonical text there is a nice conversation between Keśi, the follower of Pārśva, and Gautama, the follower of Mahāvīra. In this conversation the two leaders realise and recognise the fundamental unity of the doctrines of their respective teachers. They discuss the view-points of the four vows (non-injury, truth, non-stealing and non-possession) and five vows (chastity added) and come to the conclusion that fundamentally they are the same.

#### **Pārśva and other Tīrthaṅkaras :**

The historicity of Lord Pārśva has been unanimously accepted. He preceded Mahāvīra by 250 years. He was son of King Aśvasena and Queen Vāmā of Varanasi. At the age of thirty he renounced the world and became an ascetic. He practised austerities for eighty-three days. On the eighty-fourth day he obtained omniscience. Lord Pārśva preached his doctrines for seventy years. At the age of a hundred he attained liberation on the summit of Mount Sammata (Parasnath Hills).

The four vows preached by Lord Pārśva are : not to kill, not to lie, not to steal and not to own property. The vow of chastity was, no doubt, implicitly included in the last vow, but in the two hundred and fifty years that elapsed between the death of Pārśva and the preaching of Mahāvīra, abuses become so abundant that the latter had to add the vow of chastity explicitly to the existing four vows. Thus, the number of vows preached by Lord Mahāvīra was five instead of four.

Neminātha or Ariṣṭanemi, who preceded Lord Pārśva, was a cousin of Kṛṣṇa. If the historicity of Kṛṣṇa is accepted, there is no reason why Neminātha should not be regarded as a historical person. He was son of Samudravijaya and grandson of Andhakavṛṣṇi of Sauryapura. Kṛṣṇa had negotiated the wedding of Neminātha with Rājīmātī, the daughter of Ugrasena of Dvārakā. Neminātha attained emancipation on the summit of Mount Raivata (Girnar).

The Jainas believe in the occurrence of twenty-one more *tīrthaṅkaras*. They preceded Neminātha. Lord Ṛṣabha was the first among them. The Vedic tradition also refers to him. It is not an easy job to establish the historicity of these great souls.

#### **Lord Mahāvīra :**

Mahāvīra was the twenty-fourth, i. e., the last *tīrthaṅkara*. According to the Pali texts, he was a contemporary of Buddha but they never met. The early Prakrit texts do not mention the name of Buddha. They totally neglect him. This indicates that Mahāvīra and his followers did not attach any importance to Buddha's personality and teachings. On the other hand, in the Pali Tripiṭaka Mahāvīra is regarded as one of the six *tīrthaṅkaras* of Buddha's times. This shows that Mahāvīra was an influential personality and a leading venerable ascetic.

According to the tradition of the Śvetāmbara Jainas the liberation of Mahāvīra took place 470 years before the

beginning of the Vikrama Era. The tradition of the Digambara Jains maintains that Lord Mahāvīra attained liberation 605 years before the beginning of the Śaka Era. By either mode of calculation the date comes to 527 B. C. Since the Lord attained emancipation at the age of 72, his birth must have been around 599 B. C. This makes Mahāvīra a slightly elder contemporary of Buddha who probably lived about 567-487 B.C.

There are many references in the Buddhist canon to Nāṭaputta and the Nigaṇṭhas, meaning Mahāvīra and the Jains. The Buddhist canon refers to the death of Nāṭaputta at Pāvā at a time when Buddha was still engaged in preaching. According to Hemacandra, Mahāvīra attained liberation 155 year before Candragupta's accession to the throne. This leads to a date around 549-477 B.C. for Mahāvīra and places his death slightly later than that of Buddha. Some scholars support this view.

There is no doubt that Pārśva preceded Mahāvīra by 250 years. The Jaina canon clearly mentions that the parents of Mahāvīra were followers of Pārśva whose death took place 250 years before that of Mahāvīra. Since Pārśva lived for a hundred years, his date comes to 877-777 B.C.

Mahāvīra was not the inventor of a new doctrine but the reformer of a Law already long in existence. The Uttarādhyayana-sūtra gives a good account of this fact. The following is the essence of this account :

There was a famous preceptor in the tradition of Lord Pārśva. His name was Keśi. Surrounded by his disciples he arrived at the town of Śrāvastī. In the vicinity of that town there was a park called Tinduka. There he took up his abode in a pure place.

At that time there was a famous disciple of Lord Mahāvīra. His name was Gautama (Indrabhūti). Surrounded by his pupils he, too, arrived at Śrāvastī. In the vicinity of that

town there was another park called Koṣṭhaka. There he took up his abode in a pure place.

The pupils of both, who controlled themselves, who practised austerities, who possessed virtues, made the following reflection:

'Is our Law the right one or the other ? Are our conduct and doctrines right or the other ? The Law taught by Lord Pārśva, which recognises only four vows, or the Law taught by Lord Mahāvīra (Vardhamāna), which enjoins five vows ? The Law which forbids clothes for a monk or that which allows an under and an upper garment ? Both pursuing the same end, what has caused their difference ?'

Knowing the thoughts of their pupils, both Keśi and Gautama made up their minds to meet each other. Gautama went to the Tinduka park where Keśi received him. With his permission Keśi asked Gautama: "The Law taught by Pārśva recognises only four vows, while that of Vardhamāna enjoins five. Both laws pursuing the same end, what has caused this difference ? Have you no misgivings about this two-fold law?" Gautama made the following reply : "The monks under the first *tīrthaṅkara* are simple but slow of understanding, those under the last are prevaricating and slow of understanding and those between the two are simple and wise. Hence, there are two forms of the Law. The first can but with difficulty understand the precepts of the Law and the last can but with difficulty observe them. But those between the two can easily understand and observe them." This answer removed the doubt of Keśi. He asked another question : "The Law taught by Vardhamāna forbids clothes but that of Pārśva allows an under and an upper garment. Both Laws pursuing the same end, what has caused this difference ?" Gautama gave the following reply: "The various outward marks have been introduced in view of their usefulness for religious life and their distinguishing character. The opinion of the *tīrthaṅkaras* is that right

knowledge, right faith and right conduct are the true causes of liberation" This answer, too, removed the doubt of Keṣi. He, thereupon, bowed his head to Gautama and adopted the Law of five vows.

It is clear from this account of the Uttarādhyayana-sūtra that there were two main points of difference between the followers of Pārśva and those of Mahāvīra. The first point was relating to vows and the second was regarding clothes. The number of vows observed by the followers (ascetics) of Pārśva was four, to which Mahāvīra added the vow of chastity as the fifth. It seems that Pārśva had allowed his followers to wear an under and an upper garment, but Mahāvīra forbade the use of clothes. Preceptor Keṣi and his disciples, however, adopted the Law of five vows without abandoning clothes. Thus, Mahāvīra's composite church had both types of monks: with clothes (*sacelaka*) and without clothes (*acelaka*).

Mahāvīra was son of Kṣatriya Siddhārtha and Triśalā of Kuṇḍapura (or Kuṇḍagrāma), the northern borough of Vaiśālī. He belonged to the Jñātrī clan. He was born on the thirteenth day of the bright half of the month of Caitra when the moon was in conjunction with the Hastottarā constellation. As the family's treasure of gold, silver, Jewels etc. went on increasing since the prince was placed in the womb of Triśalā, he was named Vardhamāna (the Increasing One). He was known by three names : Vardhamāna, Śramaṇa (the Ascetic) and Mahāvīra (the Great Hero). The name of Vardhamāna was given by his parents. He was called Śramaṇa by the people, as he remained constantly engaged in austerities with spontaneous happiness. Since he sustained all fears and dangers and endured all hardships and calamities, he was called Mahāvīra by the gods.

Vardhamāna lived as a householder for thirty years. When his parents died, with the permission of his elders he distributed

all his wealth among the poor during a whole year and renounced the world. After observing fast for two days and having put on one garment, Vardhamāna left for a park known as Jñātrkhaṇḍa in a palanquin named Candraprabhā. He descended from the palanquin under an Aśoka tree, took off his ornaments, plucked out his hair in five handfuls and entered the state of houselessness. He wore the garment only for a year and a month and then abandoned it and wandered about naked afterwards.

The Venerable Ascetic Mahāvīra spent his second rainy season in a weaver's shed at Nālandā, a suburb of Rājagṛha. Gośāla, the Ājīvika, approached the Venerable Ascetic and made a request to admit him as his disciple. Mahāvīra did not entertain his request. Gośāla again approached the Venerable Ascetic when he had left the place at the end of the rainy season. This time his request was, however, accepted and both of them lived together for a considerable period. While at Siddhārthapura, Gośāla uprooted a sesamum shrub and threw it away challenging Mahāvīra's prediction that it would bear fruits. Owing to a lucky fall of rain the shrub came to life again and bore fruits. Seeing this Gośāla concluded that everything is pre-determined and that all living beings are capable of reanimation. Mahāvīra did not favour such generalisations. Gośāla, then, severed his association with Mahāvīra and founded his own sect known as Ājīvika.

Mahāvīra had travelled up to Lāḍha in West Bengal. He had to suffer all sorts of tortures in the non-Aryan territory of Vajrabhūmi and Śubhrabhūmi. Many of his hardships were owing to the adverse climate, stinging plants and insects and wicked inhabitants who set dogs at him. The Venerable Ascetic had spent his ninth rainy season in the non-Aryan land of the Lāḍha country.

Mahāvīra passed twelve years of his ascetic life with equanimity performing hard and long penances and enduring

all afflictions and calamities with undisturbed mind. During the thirteenth year on the tenth day of the bright fortnight of the month of Vaiśākha the Venerable Ascetic obtained omniscience under a Śāla tree in the farm of Śyāmāka on the northern bank of river R̥jupālikā outside the town of J̥mbhikagrāma. He preached the Law in the Ardhamāgadhī language, taught five great vows etc., initiated Indrabhūti (Gautama) and others and established the four-fold Order (monks, nuns, male lay-votaries and female lay-votaries).

Lord Mahāvīra passed the last thirty years of his life as the omniscient *tīrthaṅkara*. He spent his last rainy season at Pāpā (Pavapuri). On the fifteenth day of the dark fortnight of the month of Kārttika the Lord attained liberation there at the age of seventy-two. The eighteen confederate kings of Kāśī and Kośala (and eighteen kings) belonging to the Mallaki and Lecchaki clans were present there at that time. Thinking that the spiritual light of knowledge has vanished with the passing away of the Lord they made a material illumination by lighting lamps.

Lord Mahāvīra was the head of an excellent community of 14000 monks, 36000 nuns, 159000 male lay-votaries and 318000 female lay-votaries. The four groups designated as monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen constitute the four-fold Order (*tīrtha*) of Jainism. One who makes such an Order is known as *tīrthaṅkara*. *Tīrthaṅkara* Mahāvīra's followers comprised three categories of persons: ascetics, lay-votaries and sympathisers or supporters. Indrabhūti (monk), Candanā (nun) etc. form the first category. Śāṅkha (layman), Sulasā (laywoman) etc. come under the second category. Śreṇika (Bimbisāra), Kūṇika (Ajātaśatru), Pradyota, Udāyana, Cellaṇā etc. form the third category. The *tīrthaṅkara*'s *tīrtha* or *saṅgha* consisted of only the first two categories.

**Sudharman, Jambu, Bhadrabāhu and Sthūlabhadra :**

Of the eleven principal disciples (*gaṇadhara*s) of Lord Mahāvīra, only two, viz., Indrabhūti and Sudharman survived

him. After twenty years of the liberation of Mahāvīra Sudharman also attained emancipation. He was the last of the eleven *gaṇadhara*s to die. Jambu, the last omniscient, was his pupil. He attained salvation after sixty-four years of the liberation of Mahāvīra. Bhadrabāhu, belonging to the sixth generation since Sudharman, lived in the third century B.C. He died 170 years after Mahāvīra. He was the last *śrutakevalin* (possessed of knowledge of all the scriptures). Sthūlabhadra possessed knowledge of all the scriptures less four Pūrvas (a portion of Dṛṣṭivāda). He could learn the first ten Pūrvas with meaning and the last four without meaning from Bhadrabāhu in Nepal. Thus, knowledge of the canonical texts started diminishing gradually. There are still a good many authentic original scriptures preserved in the Śvetāmbara tradition. Of course, some of the canons have, partly or wholly, undergone modifications. The Digambaras believe that all the original canonical texts have vanished.

Up to Jambu there is no difference as regards the names of pontiffs in the Digambara and Śvetāmbara traditions. They are common in both the branches. The name of Bhadrabāhu is also common, though there is a lot of difference regarding the events relating to his life. There is no unanimity with regard to the name of his own successor, too. The names of intermediary pontiffs are, of course, quite different. Judging from the total picture it seems that in fact there had been two different preceptors bearing the name of Bhadrabāhu in the two traditions. Probably they were contemporary. The Śvetāmbara account mentions that the death of *Śrutakevalī* Bhadrabāhu occurred 170 years after the liberation of Mahāvīra, whereas the Digambara tradition maintains that Bhadrabāhu died 162 years after Mahāvīra's emancipation.

According to the tradition of the Śvetāmbaras, Preceptor Bhadrabāhu had been to Nepal and remained there engaged in



some specific course of meditation. Sthūlabhadra and some other monks went to Nepal to learn the Dṛṣṭivāda from Bhadrabāhu.

The Digambara tradition believes in a migration of Bhadrabāhu and other monks to South India. It holds that the Head of the Jaina Church in the time of Candragupta's reign (322-298 B.C.) was Bhadrabāhu. He was the last *śrutakevalin*. He prophesied a twelve-year famine and led a migration of a large number of Jaina monks to South India. They settled in the vicinity of Śravaṇa Belgolā in Karnatak. Bhadrabāhu himself died there. King Candragupta, an adherent of the Jaina faith, left his throne and went to Śravaṇa Belgolā. He lived there for a number of years in a cave as an ascetic and finally embraced death.

### **Samprati :**

Sthūlabhadra's pupil Suhastin had won King Samprati, the grandson of and successor to Aśoka, for Jainism. Samprati was very zealous in the promotion and propagation of Jainism. He showed his enthusiasm by causing Jaina temples to be erected over the whole of the country. During Suhastin's stay at Ujjain (Samprati's Capital), and under his guidance, splendid religious festivals were celebrated. The devotion manifested by the king and his subjects on such occasions was great. The example and advice of King Samprati induced his vassals to embrace and patronise Jainism. He had sent out missionaries as far as to South India. In order to extend the sphere of their activities to non-Aryan countries, Samprati sent there Jaina monks as messengers. They acquainted the people with the kind of food and other requisites which Jaina monks may accept as alms. Having thus prepared the way for them, Samprati induced the superior to send monks to those countries. Accordingly, missionaries were sent to the countries of Andhra and Dramila in South India.

**Khāravēla :**

Somewhere near Samprati's time there lived King Khāravēla of Kālīṅga. His inscription in a cave of Khaṇḍagiri, dating around the middle of the second century B.C., tells among other things of how he constructed rock-dwellings and gave abundant gifts to Jaina devotees. There are some Jaina caves in sandstone hills known as Khaṇḍagiri, Udayagiri and Nilagiri in Orissa. The Hāthīgumphā or Elephant Cave, as it is now known, was an extensive natural cave. It was improved by King Khāravēla. It has a badly damaged inscription of this king. The inscription begins with a Jaina way of veneration.

**Kālakācārya :**

In the first century B.C. when Gardabhilla was the king of Ujjain, there lived a famous Jaina preceptor known as Kālakācārya. King Gardabhilla carried off Sarasvatī, a Jaina nun, who was the sister of Kālakācārya. After repeated requests and threats when Kālakācārya found that the king was not prepared to set the nun free, he travelled west of the Indus and persuaded the Śakas to attack Ujjain and overthrow Gardabhilla. The Śakas attacked Ujjain and established themselves in the city. Vikramāditya, the successor to Gardabhilla, however, expelled the invaders and re-established the native dynasty. He is said to have been won for Jainism by some Jaina preceptor.

**Jaina Stūpa at Mathura :**

An inscription of the second century A.D. has been found in the ruins of a Jaina *stūpa* excavated in the mound called Kaṅkālī Ṭilā at Mathura. The inscription says that *the stūpa* was built by gods. The truth underlying this type of belief is that in that age the *stūpa* was regarded as of immemorial antiquity. The sculptures and inscriptions found at Mathura are of great importance for the history of Jainism. They corroborate many of the points current in the

Jaina traditions. For instance, the series of twenty-four *tīrthaṅkaras* with their respective emblems was firmly believed in, women also had an influential place in the Church, the Order of nuns was also in existence, the division between Śvetāmbaras and Digambaras had come into being, the scriptures were being recited with verbal exactitude, and the like.

### **Kumārapāla and Hemacandra :**

Coming to the medieval period, King Siddharāja Jayasimha (A.D. 1094-1143) of Gujarat, although himself a worshipper of Śiva, had Hemacandra, a distinguished Jaina preceptor and writer, as a scholar-member of his court. King Kumārapāla (A.D. 1143-1173), the successor to Jayasimha, was actually converted to Jainism by Hemacandra. Kumārapāla tried to make Gujarat in some manner a Jaina model State. On the other hand, Hemacandra, taking full advantage of the opportunity, established the basis for a typical Jaina culture by his versatile scientific work. He became famous as the *Kalikālasarvajña*, i.e., the Omniscient of the Kali Age.

In South India the Gaṅgas, the Rāṣṭrakūṭas, the Cālukyas, the Hoysalas etc. were Jains. They fully supported the faith.

### **Digambaras and Śvetāmbaras :**

There were both types of monks, viz., *sacelaka* (with clothes) and *acelaka* (without clothes), in the Order of Mahāvīra. The terms *sacelaka* and *śvetāmbara* signify the same sense and *acelaka* and *digambara* express the same meaning. The monks belonging to the Śvetāmbara group wear white garments, whereas those belonging to the Digambara group wear no garments. The literal meaning of the word *digambara* is sky-clad and that of *śvetāmbara* is white-clad. It was, probably, up to Jambu's time that both these groups formed the composite church. Then they separated from each other and practised the faith under their own

Heads. This practice is in force even in the present time. The Śvetāmbaras hold that the practice of dispensing with clothing has no longer been requisite since the time of the last omniscient Jambu.

The following main differences exist between the Digambaras and the Śvetāmbaras :

1. The Digambaras believe that no original canonical text exists now. The Śvetāmbaras still preserve a good number of original scriptures.

2. According to the Digambaras, the omniscient no longer takes any earthly food. The Śvetāmbaras are not prepared to accept this conception.

3. The Digambaras strictly maintain that there can be no salvation without nakedness. Since women cannot go without clothes, they are said to be incapable of salvation. The Śvetāmbaras hold that nakedness is not essential to attain liberation. Hence, women are also capable of salvation.

4. The Digambaras hold that Mahāvīra was not married. The Śvetāmbaras reject this view. According to them, Mahāvīra was married and had a daughter.

5. The images of *tīrthaṅkaras* are not decorated at all by the Digambaras, whereas the Śvetāmbaras profusely decorate them.

The two main Jaina sects, viz., the Śvetāmbara and the Digambara, are divided into a number of sub-sects. There are at present three important Śvetāmbara sub-sects : Mūrtipūjaka, Sthānakavāsī and Terāpanthī. The number of present important Digambara sub-sects is also three : Bīsapanthī, Terahapanthī and Tāraṇapanthī. The Mūrtipūjakas worship images of *tīrthaṅkaras* etc. The Sthānakavāsīs are non-worshippers. The Terāpanthīs are also not in favour of idol-worship. Their interpretation of non-violence (*ahimsā*) is

slightly different from that of the other Jainas. The Bīsapanthīs use fruits, flowers etc. in the idolatry ceremony, whereas the Terahapanthīs use only lifeless articles in it. The Tāraṇapanthīs worship scriptures in place of images.



## CHAPTER II

# RELIGIOUS AND PHILOSOPHICAL LITERATURE

The canon forms the earliest Jaina literature. The essence of the Jaina canon lies in the teachings of Lord Mahāvīra. The Aṅga text forms the nucleus of the entire canon.

The canonical texts are broadly divided into two groups: Aṅga-praviṣṭa and Aṅga-bāhya. The authorship of the first group is attributed to the Gaṇadharas (Principal Disciples) of Mahāvīra, whereas that of the second group is ascribed to different Sthaviras (Senior Preceptors). The credit of editing the available canon goes to preceptor Devardhigaṇi Kṣamāśramaṇa who flourished after a thousand years of the liberation of Lord Mahāvīra.

The Jaina monks held three councils to recollect, revise and redact the holy teachings of Lord Mahāvīra. The first council was held at Pāṭaliputra (Patna) after 160 years of the liberation of Lord Mahāvīra when the twelve years' long famine ended. The monks who assembled there could recollect only eleven Aṅgas. It was, however, not possible for them to recall the twelfth Aṅga, viz., the Dṛṣṭi-vāda. It was only preceptor Bhadrabāhu who possessed knowledge of that text at that time. He could not participate in the council, as he was already engaged in some specific course of meditation in Nepal. The council deputed Sthūlabhadra and some other monks to go to Nepal and learn the Dṛṣṭivāda from preceptor Bhadrabāhu. It was, however, only Sthūlabhadra who could acquire knowledge

of the Dṛṣṭivāda. Thus, up to preceptor Sthūlabhadra all the twelve Aṅgas could be preserved.

The second council met under the chairmanship of preceptor Skandila at Mathura after 825 years of the death of Lord Mahāvīra. Another similar council synchronising with the second one was held at Vālabhī under the presidentship of preceptor Nāgārjunasūri.

The third council also met at Valabhī under the chairmanship of preceptor Devardhigaṇi Kṣamāśramaṇa after 980 (or 993) years of Lord Mahāvīra's emancipation. At this council all the canonical texts then available were systematically written down and an attempt was made to reconcile the differences pertaining to the two councils previously held at Mathura and Valabhī.

The texts other than the Aṅgas (the Aṅgapraviṣṭa group) belong to the group known as Aṅgabāhya. This Aṅgabāhya group is classified into five sub-groups. Thus, we have in all six groups of canonical texts. They are known by the following names: (1) Aṅgas, (2) Upāṅgas, (3) Mūlasūtras, (4) Chedasūtras, (5) Cūlikāsūtras, and (6) Prakīrṇakas. All these works are in Prakrit.

### **Aṅgas :**

The Aṅgas are twelve in number. They are as follows: (1) Ācāra, (2) Sūtrakṛta, (3) Sthāna, (4) Samavāya, (5) Vyākhyāprajñapti or Bhagavatī, (6) Jñātādharma-kathā, (7) Upāsakadaśā, (8) Antakṛddaśā, (9) Anuttaraupapātikadaśā, (10) Praśnavyākaraṇa, (11) Vipākaśruta, (12) Dṛṣṭivāda.

The Ācārāṅga is divided into two sections. The first section has at present eight chapters but formerly it had nine. The second section has sixteen chapters. This Aṅga, as its very name suggests, deals with the way of life of a monk. It furnishes us with materials pertaining to the life of Lord Mahāvīra. The first section is the oldest of all the Jaina works.

The Sūtrakṛtāṅga is also divided into two sections. The first section has sixteen chapters and the second has seven. This Aṅga mainly deals with the refutation of heretical doctrines.

The Sthānāṅga consists of ten chapters. Each chapter deals with objects according to their number. The first chapter starts with number 1. It goes up to 10 in the tenth chapter.

The Samavāyāṅga, too, deals with objects according to their number. Thus, it continues, in a way, the subject-matter of the Sthānāṅga. It enumerates different objects in rising numerical groups up to 1 Koṭākoṭi of Sāgaropamas.

The Vyākhyāprajñapti or Bhagavatī is divided into forty-one sections. It discusses all types of topics – philosophical, ethical, epistemological, logical, cosmological, mathematical and the like. It throws light on the lives of Lord Mahāvīra, Gośāla, Jamāli and many others.

The Jñātādharma-kathā is divided into two sections. The first section has nineteen chapters. The second section consists of ten sub-divisions which are further divided into different chapters. Various narratives having a moral purpose form its subject-matter.

The Upāsakadaśā consists of ten chapters giving lives of ten principal lay-votaries (Upāsakas) of Lord Mahāvīra. The vows to be observed by a lay-votary are explained in the first chapter.

The Antakṛddāśā is divided into eight sections consisting of ten, eight, thirteen, ten, ten, sixteen, thirteen and ten chapters respectively. It gives lives of some liberated souls.

The Anuttaraupapātikadaśā is divided into three sections consisting of ten, thirteen and ten chapters respectively. It gives lives of some persons who after death were born as gods in Anuttara celestial abodes.

The Praśnavyākaraṇa consists of ten chapters. Of them, the first five deal with Āsrava (influx of karmic matter) and the



last five give an account of Samvara (stoppage of the influx). The available contents of this work are different from those noted in the Samavāyāṅga and the Nandisūtra.

The Vipākaśruta is divided into two sections, each having ten narratives. The first section deals with the fruits of bad deeds, whereas the second describes those of good deeds.

Both the Jaina traditions, viz., the Śvetāmbara and the Digambara, unanimously hold that the Dṛṣṭivāda forms the twelfth, i. e., the last Aṅga of the Jaina canon. According to the Nandi-sūtra, the Acārāṅga constitutes the first Aṅga and the Dṛṣṭivāda the twelfth. The Dhavalā also upholds the same view. The Dṛṣṭivāda consists of five sections: Parikarma, Sūtra, Anuyoga or Prathamānuyoga, Pūrvagata and Cūlikā. The Pūrvagata section occupies a distinctive place in the Jaina canon. One who possesses knowledge of this section comprising fourteen Pūrvas is known as *śruta-kevalin* (possessor of knowledge of all the scriptures). The Dṛṣṭivāda or the Pūrvagata as such is not extant now. There are some treatises in both the Jaina traditions that were composed on the basis of certain Pūrvas. Since the Dṛṣṭivāda contained most difficult philosophical discussions, and hence, its study was recommended for an ascetic of nineteen years' standing who has studied the Acārāṅga etc., it is not surprising if it gradually vanished. It was not an easy job to find suitable monks for imparting knowledge of this difficult text.

The treatises composed on the basis of the Pūrvagata section of the Dṛṣṭivāda are of two categories : canonical and non-canonical or karmic and non-karmic. The canonical or non-karmic treatises include the Niśītha, the Daśāśruta skandha, the Bṛhatkalpa and the Vyavahāra *chedasūtras*, the Daśavaikālika *mūlasūtra* and the Pañcāhā chapter of the Uttarādhyayana *mūlasūtra*. The non-canonical or karmic works comprise the Karmaprābhṛta, the Kaṣāyaprābhṛta, the Karmaprakṛti, the Śataka, the Saptatikā and the Pañca-

saṅgraha. All these treatises are in Prakrit. The Niryuktis (5th century A. D.) and other commentaries record the fact that the Niśītha, the Daśāśrutaskandha, the Bṛhatkalpa and the Vyavahāra are composed on the basis of the Pratyākhyāna Pūrva. The fourth chapter of the Daśavaikālika is based upon the Ātmapravāda Pūrva, the fifth one upon the Karmapravāda Pūrva, the seventh upon the Satyapravāda Pūrva and the rest upon the Pratyākhyāna Pūrva. The Parīṣaha (second) chapter of the Uttarādhyayana is composed on the basis of the Karmapravāda Pūrva.

The Karmaprābhṛta is based upon the Karmaprakṛtiprābhṛta section of the Agrāyaṇīya Pūrva, whereas the Preyodveṣaprābhṛta section of the Jñānapravāda Pūrva is the basis of the Kaṣāyaprābhṛta. The Karmaprakṛti, just like the Karmaprābhṛta, is an important treatise on the Jaina doctrine of karma. The author Śivaśarmasūri probably belonged to the 4th century A. D. The commentator Malayagiri (12th century A. D.) mentions that the work was composed on the basis of the Karmaprakṛtiprābhṛta section of the Agrāyaṇīya Pūrva. The Śataka or Bandhaśataka by Śivaśarmasūri, the Saptatikā by Candrarṣimahattara or Śivaśarmasūri, and the Pañcasaṅgraha by Candrarṣimahattara are also said to be related to the Pūrvas. Thus, a good number of works in both the Jaina traditions are still available which were composed on the basis of the Dṛṣṭivāda that was lost long ago.

### Upāṅgas :

The Upāṅgas are subsidiary to the Aṅgas. They are also twelve in number. Their titles are as under :

- (1) Aupapātika, (2) Rājapraśnīya, (3) Jīvābhigama or Jīvājīvābhigama, (4) Prajñāpanā, (5) Sūryaprajñapti, (6) Jambūdvīpaprajñapti, (7) Candraprajñapti, (8) Nirayāvalikā or Kalpikā, (9) Kalpāvataṁsikā, (10) Puṣpikā, (11) Puṣpacūlikā, (12) Vṛṣṇidaśā.

The Aupapātika describes in full the city of Campā, King Kūṇika, Queen Dhāriṇī, Lord Mahāvīra etc. This work is of special significance from the viewpoint of these splendid descriptions, as no other canonical text contains such beautiful passages.

The Rājaprasānīya describes the life of King Pradeśin and his rebirth as Sūryābhadeva. It contains a beautiful dialogue between King Pradeśin and Preceptor Keśi regarding the identity of soul and body.

The Jīvābhigama or Jīvājīvābhigama deals with the animate and inanimate entities. It contains a detailed description of continents and oceans.

The Prajñāpanā consists of thirty-six chapters. Each of these chapters deals with one particular topic in its entirety. These topics are pertaining to different aspects of Jaina philosophy.

The Sūryaprajñapti is a work on astronomy. It is divided into twenty chapters. It deals not only with the sun, as its name suggests, but also with the moon etc.

The Jambūdvīpaprajñapti is a work on cosmology. It has seven chapters. It gives a detailed description of the Jambūdvīpa continent.

The available edition of the Candraprajñapti is identical with the Sūryaprajñapti. There must have existed in olden days two separate works of the names of Sūryaprajñapti and Candraprajñapti dealing with the sun and the moon respectively.

The Nirayāvalikā or Kalpikā gives lives of King Śreṇika and his sons in ten chapters.

The Kalpāvataṃsikā also consists of ten chapters. They deal with lives of ten grandsons of King Śreṇika.

The Puṣpikā gives a description of the moon, the sun and other gods in ten chapters.

The Puṣpacūlikā also contains ten chapters. They deal with lives of goddesses Śrī, Hrī, Dhṛti etc.

The Vṛṣṇidaśā or Andhakavṛṣṇidaśā has twelve chapters describing lives of twelve princes belonging to the Vṛṣṇi lineage.

### **Mūlasūtras :**

Two explanations are offered for the term 'Mūlasūtra'. Some scholars are of the opinion that the term 'Mūlasūtra' means the original text, i. e., the text containing the original words of Lord Mahāvīra as received directly from his mouth. Some are of the view that the Mūlasūtras are the fundamental texts intended for those who are at the beginning of their spiritual career. The following works are designated as Mūlasūtras:

(1) Uttarādhyayana, (2) Daśavaikālika, (3) Āvaśyaka, (4) Piṇḍaniryukti or Oghaniryukti.

The Uttarādhyayana consists of thirty-six chapters which deal with different topics pertaining to asceticism, discipline, death, karma, metaphysics, legends, penances, ceremonialism, sacrifice etc. It contains nice parables and similes as well as beautiful dialogues and ballads.

The Daśavaikālika gives some important rules relating to ascetic life. It contains ten chapters and two appendices. The fifth chapter has two sections and the ninth has four. Some of the verses of this work agree word for word with those of the Uttarādhyayana.

The Āvaśyaka is divided into six sections known as Sāmāyika, Caturviṃśatistava, Vandana, Pratikramaṇa, Kāyotsarga and Pratyākhyāna. It deals with monastic jurisprudence.

The Piṇḍaniryukti consists of 671 verses. It gives a detailed description of the type of food a monk is expected to accept.

The Oghaniryukti consists of 881 verses. It deals with some general rules of monastic discipline.

### Chedasūtras :

The word 'cheda' means 'cut'. Probably the treatises that prescribed cuts in seniority of monks on their violating monastic discipline, were called Chedasūtras. The existing texts belonging to this group are not exclusively devoted to this type of punishment. They deal with all sorts of topics pertaining to monastic jurisprudence. The following works are included in this group :

(1) Niśītha, (2) Mahāniśītha, (3) Vyavahāra, (4) Daśāśrutaskandha, (5) Bṛhatkalpa, (6) Jītakalpa or Pañcakalpa.

The Niśītha consists of twenty chapters. It prescribes some rules pertaining to monastic life. Punishments for various transgressions are also prescribed in it. Certain exceptions to the general rules also find place therein.

The Mahāniśītha has six chapters and two appendices. It deals with some specific topics relating to ascetic life. It contains some narratives, too.

The Vyavahāra contains ten chapters. It supplies injunctions and prohibitions regarding the conduct of monks and nuns. It prescribes a number of atonements and penances, too, by way of punishment for various transgressions.

The Daśāśrutaskandha consists of ten chapters. Of them, one deals with eleven *upāsakapratimās* (postures and penances pertaining to a lay-votary) and the rest explain different aspects relating to monastic life.

The Bṛhatkalpa has six chapters. It supplies rules and regulations regarding the conduct of monks and nuns.

The Jītakalpa consists of 103 verses. It prescribes penances pertaining to violations of rules of monastic life. These penances are in the form of ten types of expiations (*prāyaścittas*).

The Pañcakalpa is extinct.

**Cūlikāsūtras :**

The Nandī and the Anuyogadvāra are called Cūlikāsūtras. The word '*cūlikā*' means 'appendix'. The two Cūlikāsūtras may be taken as appendices to the entire Jaina canon.

The Nandī contains a detailed exposition of five kinds of knowledge. In its beginning a list of senior preceptors (*sthavirāvalī*) is given.

The Anuyogadvāra deals with different types of topics — metaphysical, grammatical, logical, mathematical etc. It is a small encyclopedia of Jaina subjects.

**Prakīrṇakas :**

The term '*prakīrṇaka*' or '*prakīrṇa*' means 'miscellany'. Generally the following ten miscellaneous canonical works are known as Prakīrṇakas :

(1) Catuḥśaraṇa, (2) Āturapratyākhyāna, (3) Bhaktaparijñā, (4) Saṁstāraka, (5) Tandulavaicārika, (6) Candravedhyaka, (7) Devendrastava, (8) Gaṇividya, (9) Mahāpratyākhyāna, (10) Vīrastava.

The Catuḥśaraṇa consists of 63 verses. It deals with the four-fold refuge, viz., the refuge of the *arhats*, that of the *siddhas*, that of the *sādhus* and that of the *dharma*.

The Āturapratyākhyāna deals with various types of death and the means leading to them. It consists of 70 verses.

The Bhaktaparijñā consists of 172 verses. It also describes different types of death.

The Saṁstāraka deals with the importance of the pallet of straw and praises those who resort to it. It contains 123 verses.

The Tandulavaicārika mostly consists of verses, their number being 139. It deals with topics like embryology, osseous structure etc.

The Candravedhyaka or Candrakavedhya consists of 175 verses. It explains how one should behave at the time of death.

The Devendrastava contains 307 verses. It gives information regarding different types of gods and their lords.

The Gaṇividya is an astrological treatise. It consists of 82 verses.

The Mahāpratyākhyāna contains 142 verses. It deals with renunciation, expiation, confession etc.

The Vīrastava consists of 43 verses. It enumerates different names of Lord Mahāvīra by way of eulogy.

### Canonical Commentaries :

The canonical texts are variously explained by different authors in different times. These explanations or commentaries are mainly of four categories : Niryuktis, Bhāṣyas, Cūrṇis and Vṛttis. The Niryuktis and the Bhāṣyas are in verse, whereas the Cūrṇis and the Vṛttis are in prose.

The Niryukti commentaries are composed by Preceptor Bhadrabāhu (5th century A. D.) who is different from the author of the Chedasūtras. All the Niryuktis are in Prakrit. The following canonical texts have Niryuktis on them :

- (1) Ācārāṅga, (2) Sūtrakṛtāṅga, (3) Sūryaprajñapti,
- (4) Uttarādhyayana, (5) Daśavaikālika, (6) Āvaśyaka,
- (7) Vyavahāra, (8) Daśāśrutaskandha, (9) Bṛhatkalpa,
- (10) Ṛṣibhāṣita.

The Niryuktis on the Sūryaprajñapti and the Ṛṣibhāṣita are extinct.

The Bhāṣyas are also in Prakrit. They explain the text as well as the Niryukti commentary. The following canonical works have Bhāṣyas on them :

- (1) Uttarādhyayana, (2) Daśavaikālika, (3) Āvaśyaka,
- (4) Vyavahāra, (5) Bṛhatkalpa, (6) Niśītha, (7) Jītakalpa,
- (8) Oghaniryukti, (9) Piṇḍaniryukti, (10) Pañcakalpa.

Jinabhadra and Saṅghadāsagaṇi (6th century A. D.) are well-known for their Bhāṣyas. The author of the Viśeṣā-

vaśyaka-bhāṣya is Jinabhadra. Saṅghadāsagaṇi is the author of the Bṛhatkalpa-bhāṣya.

The Cūrṇis are in Prakrit mixed with Sanskrit. Jinadāsagaṇi Mahattara (7th century A. D.) is the author of most of the Cūrṇi commentaries. The following canonical texts have Cūrṇis on them :

(1) Ācārāṅga, (2) Sūtrakṛtāṅga, (3) Vyākhyaprajñapti, (4) Bṛhatkalpa, (5) Vyavahāra, (6) Niśītha, (7) Daśāśrutaskandha, (8) Jītakalpa, (9) Jīvābhigama, (10) Jambūdvīpaprajñapti, (11) Uttarādhyayana, (12) Āvaśyaka, (13) daśavaikālika, (14) Nandī, (15) Anuyogadvāra, (16) Mahāniśītha, (17) Pañcakalpa, (18) Oghaniryukti.

The Vṛttis are in Sanskrit. Haribhadrasūri, Śīlāṅkasūri, Śāntyācārya, Abhayadevasūri, Maladhārī Hemacandra, Malayagiri, Droṇācārya, Kṣemakīrti etc. are Sanskrit commentators (from 8th century onwards). Abhayadevasūri composed commentaries on all the Aṅgas except the first two, viz., the Ācārāṅga and the Sūtrakṛtāṅga, which were commented upon by Śīlāṅkasūri. There are canonical commentaries in some modern Indian languages, too.

### **Karmaprābhṛta and Kaṣāyaprābhṛta :**

The Digambaras believe that the Ācārāṅga etc. have totally vanished. They attach canonical importance to the Karmaprābhṛta and the Kaṣāyaprābhṛta (both in Prakrit). The Karmaprābhṛta is variously known as Mahākarmaprakṛtiprābhṛta, Āgasiddhānta, Ṣaṭkhaṇḍāgama Paramāgama, Khaṇḍasiddhānta, Ṣaṭkhaṇḍasiddhānta etc. It is in prose. It was composed by Preceptors Puṣpadanta and Bhūtabali on the basis of the Dṛṣṭivāda. The authors lived between 600 and 700 years after the liberation of Lord Mahāvīra.

The Karmaprābhṛta is divided into six sections : 1. Jīva-sthāna, 2. Kṣudrakabandha, 3. Bandhasvāmitvavicaya, 4. Vedanā, 5. Vargaṇā, 6. Mahābandha (Mahādhavala). It deals with the doctrine of karma.



The Kaṣāyaprābhṛta is also known as Preyodveṣa-prābhṛta. It was composed by Preceptor Guṇadhara. It is also based upon the Dṛṣṭivāda. Guṇadhara seems to be a contemporary of the authors of the Karmaprābhṛta. The Kaṣāyaprābhṛta deals with attachment, aversion etc. It consists of 180 verses.

### **Dhavalā and Jayadhavalā :**

The Dhavalā by Vīrasena is an exhaustive commentary on the first five sections of the Karmaprābhṛta. Just like the Cūrṇi commentary on canonical works it is also in Prakrit mixed with Sanskrit. The Jayadhavalā is a similar commentary on the Kaṣāyaprābhṛta. It was composed by Vīrasena and Jinasena. They lived in the 9th century A. D.

### **Kundakunda's Works :**

Kundakunda's contribution to Jaina philosophy and religion is in no way less important. The Digambaras attach special importance to his works. He wrote only in Prakrit. The Pravacanasāra, Samayasāra, Pañcāstikāyasāra, Niyamasāra etc. are some of his learned works. The Pravacanasāra is a valuable treatise on Jaina ethics. The Samayasāra is an important work on the nature of self. The Pañcāstikāyasāra deals with the following five entities : soul, matter, medium of motion, medium of rest and space. The Niyamasāra is a work on Jaina monastic discipline. Kundakunda lived in one of the early centuries of the Christian era.

### **Mūlācāra and Kārttikeyānuprekṣā :**

Vaṭṭakera and Kārttikeya, too, probably lived in the early centuries of the Christian era. The Mūlācāra by Vaṭṭakera is a Prakrit treatise on the conduct of Jaina ascetic. It is the Ācārāṅga of the Digambaras.

The Kārttikeyānuprekṣā is a Prakrit work composed by Preceptor Kumāra, also known as Kārttikeya. This treatise treats in twelve chapters of the twelve great reflections to which both monk and layman must devote themselves in order to attain emancipation.

**Tattvārthādhigama Sūtra :**

Umāsvāmin or Umāsvāti is the author of the Tattvārthādhigama Sūtra or Tattvārtha Sūtra, the first Sanskrit work on Jaina philosophy. He lived in an early century of the Christian era. The Tattvārtha Sūtra is a manual for the understanding of the true nature of things. It is recognised as an authority by both the Śvetāmbaras and the Digambaras. It deals with Jaina logic, epistemology, psychology, ontology, ethics, cosmography and cosmology. It has a large number of commentaries, one being by the author himself.

**Karmaprakṛti and Pañcasaṅgraha :**

The Karmaprakṛti by Śivaśarmasūri and the Pañcasaṅgraha by Candrarṣi are two important Prakrit treatises on the Jaina doctrine of karma. They, too, were composed during the early centuries. Both of them have been commented upon by Malayagiri.

**Siddhasena's Works :**

Siddhasena Divākara was a great logician. He also belonged to one of the early centuries. Like Umāsvāti, the author of the Tattvārtha Sūtra, he too, is regarded by both the sects as one of their own. His works include the Sanmatitarka, the Nyāyāvatāra and thirty-two Dvātrimśikās (twenty-two are available). The Sanmatitarka is an excellent Prakrit treatise on the theory of Nayas (ways of approach and observation). It also deals with the theories of knowledge and judgment. The Nyāyāvatāra (Sanskrit) is the earliest Jaina work on pure logic. The Dvātrimśikas (Sanskrit) are on different aspects of Jaina philosophy and religion. Siddhasena Divākara has really made a valuable contribution to Jaina philosophical literature.

**Samantabhadra's Works :**

Samantabhadra's contribution to the philosophical literature of the Jainas is equally important. He is the author

of the Āptamīmāṃsā, Yuktyanuśāsana and Svayambhūstotra. The Ratnakaraṇḍaka-śrāvākācāra is also ascribed to him by some scholars. In the Āptamīmāṃsā or Devāgamastotra the philosophy of non-absolutism is explained. The Yuktyanuśāsana is a hymn to Lord Mahāvīra in a philosophical theme. The Svayambhūstotra or Caturviṃśatijīnastuti is a hymn to the twenty-four Jaina Tīrthaṅkaras. The Ratnakaraṇḍaka-śrāvākācāra is a manual of morals for the lay-votary. All these works are in Sanskrit. Samantabhadra was a Digambara preceptor who lived in an early century.

#### **Mallavādin's Nayacakra :**

The Nayacakra or Dvādaśāranayacakra by Mallavādin is an excellent Sanskrit work on the Jaina theory of Naya. The author is one of the great Śvetāmbara scholars of the early centuries. Tradition reports his decisive victory over the Buddhists. His commentary on Siddhasena Divākara's Sanmatitarka is not available. There exists a commentary on the Nayacakra, entitled Nyāyāgamānusāriṇī, by Simhasūri.

#### **Akalaṅka's Works :**

Akalaṅka (7th century A. D.) was a great Digambara author and commentator. He composed the following philosophical (logical) treatises in Sanskrit : (1) Laghīyastraya, (2) Nyāyaviniścaya, (3) Pramāṇasaṅgraha and (4) Siddhiviniścaya. He commented upon the Tattvārtha Sūtra and Āptamīmāṃsā. The commentary on the Tattvārtha Sūtra is known as Tattvārtharājavārttika and that on the Āptamīmāṃsā is called Aṣṭaśatī. A treatise on expiatory rites entitled Prāyaścitta, is also ascribed to Akalaṅka. The authorship of this work is, however, doubtful.

#### **Haribhadra's Works :**

Haribhadra (8th century), a famous Śvetāmbara writer, composed a large number of works both in Sanskrit and

Prakrit. He was an eminent author in verse as well as in prose. His *Ṣaḍdarśanasamuccaya* (with *Guṇaratna's* commentary) is an important treatise on Indian philosophy. It gives a summary of the six philosophical systems of India. He wrote a commentary on the *Nyāyapraveśa* of *Dinnāga*, a Buddhist logician. His *Dharmabindu* is a manual of morals. The *Anekāntajayapatākā*, *Śastravārtāsamuccaya*, *Anekāntavādapraveśa*, *Dvijavadanacapeṭā*, *Paralokasiddhi*, *Sarvajñāsiddhi*, *Dharmasaṅgrahaṇī*, *Lokatattvanirṇaya* etc. are his philosophical treatises. He composed the following works on yoga : (1) *Yogaḍṛṣṭisamuccaya*, (2) *Yogabindu*, (3) *Yogaśataka*, (4) *Yogaviṃśikā* and (5) *Ṣoḍaśaka*. The *Samarādityakathā*, *Dhūrtākhyāna* etc. are nice stories composed by him. He commented upon a number of canonical works and composed many miscellaneous treatises.

#### **Vidyānandin's Works:**

*Vidyānandin* or *Vidyānanda* (9th century) is a distinguished Jaina philosopher belonging to the *Digambara* sect. His *Aṣṭasaḥsṛī* commentary on the *Aṣṭaśatī* (*Akalaṅka's* commentary on the *Āptamīmāṃsā* of *Samantabhadra*) is, perhaps, the most difficult of all the Jaina philosophical treatises. It was further commented upon by *Yaśovijaya*. *Vidyānandin's* *Tattvārthaśloka-vārttika* is an important commentary on the *Tattvārtha Sūtra*. His original philosophical works include the *Āptaparīkṣā*, the *Pramāṇaparīkṣā*, the *Patraparīkṣā*, the *Satyāśāsanaparīkṣā* and the *Vidyānandamahodaya* (extinct). The *Yuktyanuśāsanālaṅkāra* is his commentary on the *Yuktyanuśāsana* of *Samantabhadra*. He has also composed the hymn entitled *Śrīpura-Pārśvanāthastotra*. The *Pañcaprakaraṇa* is also ascribed to him. All his works are in Sanskrit.

#### **Nemicandra and His Works :**

*Nemicandra*, a *Digambara* author, lived between the 10th and 11th centuries. He was the teacher of *Cāmuṇḍarāya*

who caused the colossal statue of Gommaṭa or Bāhubali to be made at Śravaṇa Belgolā in Karnatak. His works include the Dravyasaṅgaha, the Gommaṭasāra, the Labdhisāra, the Kṣapaṇāsāra and the Trilokasāra. The Dravyasaṅgraha is a brief treatise on the Jaina theory of substance. The Gommaṭasāra (also known as Pañcasaṅgraha) is a bulky work on the Jaina doctrine of karma. It consists of two parts : Jīvakāṇḍa and Karmakāṇḍa. The Jīvakāṇḍa gives a detailed account of the souls and their classification. The Karmakāṇḍa deals exhaustively with the nature and effects of karma. The Labdhisāra treats of the attainment of the things that lead to perfection. The Kṣapaṇāsāra deals with the annihilation of passions. The Trilokasāra is a comprehensive treatise on cosmology. It gives a detailed description of the three worlds. All these treatises are in Prakrit and consist of verses.

### **Prabhācandra's Commentaries :**

Prabhācandra, a famous Digambara writer of the 11th century, composed a number of commentaries on philosophical and other works. His Prameyakamalamārtaṇḍa and Nyāyakumudacandra are comprehensive Sanskrit commentaries on the Parīkṣāmukha (a work on Jaina logic by Māṇikyanandin) and the Laghīyastraya (a work on Jaina logic by Akalaṅka) respectively. They deal with all important philosophical problems.

### **Hemacandra's Works :**

Hemacandra was the most versatile and prolific Jaina writer of Sanskrit. Since he composed in the most varied domains, he was called 'the Omniscient of the Kali Age' (Kalikālasarvajña). He was born in 1089 A. D. and died in 1172 A. D. He belonged to the Śvetāmbara sect. His patrons were the Caulukya kings Jayasīṃha (Siddharāja) and Kumārapāla of Gujarat.

Hemacandra's Vītarāgastotra is a poem in praise of the passionless Lord Mahāvīra. It is at the same time a

poetical manual of Jainism. It consists of twenty small sections. The Ayogavyavacchedadvātriṁśikā of the author forms the first part of his hymn called Dvātriṁśikā. The second part is called Anyayogavyavacchedadvātriṁśikā. The first part contains an easy exposition of the doctrines of Jainism. The second part refutes the doctrines of the non-Jaina systems. It has a commentary called Syādvādamañjarī by Malliṣeṇa. This commentary serves as an excellent treatise on Jaina philosophy.

The Pramāṇamīmāṃsā by Hemacandra is a valuable work on Jaina logic. Its commentary by the author himself enhances the value of the work.

Hemacandra's Yogaśāstra is an important work on Jaina yoga. It is in verse and has twelve chapters. The author himself has commented upon it. The work contains a complete doctrine of duties. It treats of the effort one must make to attain emancipation.

#### **Dharmāmṛta of Āśādhara :**

Āśādhara was a great Digambara scholar and poet of the 13th century. He composed a number of learned works and commentaries in Sanskrit. The Dharmāmṛta is his principal work. It is in two parts: Sāgāra-Dharmāmṛta and Anagāra-Dharmāmṛta. The Sāgāra-Dharmāmṛta deals with the duties of the lay-votary, whereas the Anagāra-Dharmāmṛta treats of the conduct of the ascetic. The author himself composed a commentary on this work in 1243 A. D. The original work is in verse.

#### **Yaśovijaya's Works :**

Yaśovijaya was a prominent Śvetāmbara writer of the 17th century. He composed several excellent treatises and various valuable commentaries in Sanskrit. His works on philosophy include the Anekānta-vyavasthā, the Jñānabindu, the Jaina-tarka-bhāṣā, the Naya-pradīpa, the

Nayopadeśa, the Naya-rahasya, the Nyāya-khaṇḍa-khādyā, the Nyāyāloka, the Bhāṣā-rahasya, the Pramāṇa-rahasya, the Adhyātma-mata-parīkṣā, the Adhyātmopaniṣad, the Adhyātmika-mata-khaṇḍana, the Upadeśa-rahasya, the Jñānasāra, the Devadharmā-parīkṣā, the Gurutattvaviniṣaya etc. Some of his valuable commentaries are on the Aṣṭasahasrī, Śāstravārtāsamuccaya, Syādvādamāñjarī, Yogavimśikā, Yogasūtra and Karma prakṛti.

•••

## CHAPTER III

### REALITY

It will not be improper to maintain that the entire metaphysical world is divided into Idealism and Realism. If we want to study the essential features of philosophy, we will have to establish a close contact with the main trends of Idealism and Realism. Without a comprehensive and systematic study of these two isms, we cannot grasp the essence of philosophy. Although it seems that Idealism and Realism represent two apparently different lines of approach to the philosophy of life and the universe, yet, a tendency to reconcile them is not absent. It has begun in recent years to be thought that the difference between these two currents is not so much in their goal as in their presuppositions and methods of approach.

#### **Idealism :**

Some thinkers maintain that a theory is often called Idealistic in so far as it underestimates the temporal and spatial aspects of the real universe. Some philosophers are convinced that the term Idealism has been used to cover all those philosophies which agree in maintaining that spiritual values have a determining voice in the ordering of the universe.<sup>1</sup> Others hold that according to Idealism, spirit is the *terminus ad quem* of nature.<sup>2</sup>

Idealism is the belief or doctrine according to which thought is the medium of the self-expression of reality. In other

---

1. Prolegomena to an Idealistic Theory of Knowledge, p. 1.

2. Idea of God, p. 200.



words, reality is such as must necessarily express itself through the ideal or ideals that are organic to the knower's intellectual equipment which may be called thought or reason.<sup>1</sup>

The mind of man is the organ through which reality expresses itself; and if it is certain that man alone has the capacity to interpret experience through intellectual ideals, then it follows that it is man alone who can be the organ to reality. He possesses a unique position in the determination of the universe.

### **Some Misconceptions :**

Some laymen as well as philosophers define Idealism as a doctrine which openly or secretly seeks to establish that the whole choir of heaven and earth is unreal. Now, the first thing which we should bear in mind is that Idealism does not take away the reality of anything which is considered as real by commonsense or science. Far from subtracting anything which is considered to be real by commonsense or science Idealism adds to the reality of things in so far as it alone makes it clear that things have still many other significant aspects of their life than those which are revealed to commonsense or science. To put it in the words of Bosanquet : 'Certainly for myself, if an Idealist were to tell me that a chair is really not what we commonly take it to be, but something altogether different, I should be tempted to reply in language below the dignity of controversy'.<sup>2</sup> In the same way, a philosophy must stand self-condemned if it thinks that the electronic constitution of matter or the inner structure of the material particles is a mere figment. The philosophers like Berkeley (who says that '*esse est percipi*' i.e., to exist is to be perceived) etc. are not Idealists in the strict sense of the term Idealism. They may be called Subjective Idealists who think that perception is the real cause of external

---

1. Self, Thought and Reality, p. 45.

2. Contemporary Philosophy, p. 5.

objects. They reduce existence or reality to mere perception which position is wrong according to the real definition of Idealism in which the mind only determines the objects and does not create them. Determination and creation are two different things. What needs emphasis at this place is that true Idealism has never disputed the existence of the external world. Green remarks: 'The fact that there is a real external world of which through feeling we have a determinate experience and that in this experience all our knowledge of nature is implicit, is one which no philosophy disputes. What Mr. Spencer understands by Idealism is what a raw undergraduate understands by it. It means to him a doctrine that 'there is no such thing as matter' or that 'the external world is merely the creation of our own minds', a doctrine expressly rejected by Kant, and which has had no place since his time in any Idealism that knows what it is about.'

Now, the point is quite clear. There is no difference between the Idealistic and Realistic creeds in so far as the reality of the material world is concerned, for both there is an external world which is not the creation of our own minds. The defect, as the Idealist holds, of Realism lies in the fact that it does not realize the universe in its completeness.

The conclusion of what we have discussed so far is as follows : Though the things we know do not depend for their existence on the fact that somebody knows them, and so in this sense they are independent of the knowing mind, yet, all the determinations of the things are discovered only in the knowledge-relation, so that the things which are referred to in our explanations of facts are necessarily determined in certain specific ways. Hence, to insist that we can know only phenomena is not to degrade the things into mind-dependent appearances; it is merely to indicate that things are what we know them to be. And we know only by bringing them into

---

1. Works, I, p. 386.

relation to things other than themselves, and it follows consequently that to refer a fact to a thing-in-itself that cannot be determined in any way is to admit that the fact cannot be explained at all.<sup>1</sup> It is only through consciousness that the world exists for us at all, though, of course, it is not created by our own consciousness.

### **Different Types of Idealism :**

There have been Idealistic views in Western philosophy, some making thoughts or ideas to be eternal reals composing the world of transcendental realities preceding but somehow determining the world of phenomena, some others making thought or idea to be the pre-condition of phenomenal existence, while others conceiving spirit as the ultimate creative reality creating the world of subject and object by its own self-differentiation. The first of these types is Platonic, the second is that of Berkeley and Kant, and the last is that of Hegel and his followers.

### **Platonic Idealism :**

Plato conceived reality as consisting of an organized realm of ideas, each of which enjoys immutability and eternity. This organized realm of the eternal and immutable ideas is real in the sense that there are independent entities not depending upon mind, either finite or infinite. They are the real metaphysical forces, remaining at the back of and somehow determining our empirical world of thoughts and things as their imperfect imitations. Hence, our world of experience is only phenomenal and unreal. It comes into existence and passes out of it. It is somehow determined by the ideas which are universal and eternal. The Idealism of Plato is objective in the sense that the ideas enjoy an existence in a real world independent of any mind. Mind is not antecedent for the existence of ideas. The ideas are there whether a mind reveals them or not. The determination of the phenomenal

---

1. Self. Thought and Reality, pp, 86-7.

world depends on them. They somehow determine the empirical existence of the world. Hence, Plato's conception of reality is nothing but a system of eternal, immutable and immaterial ideas.

### **Idealism of Berkeley :**

Berkeley may be said to be the founder of Idealism in the modern period, although his arrow could not touch the point of destination. According to Locke (the predecessor of Berkeley), substance was regarded as a seat of qualities some of which are primary in the sense that they are objective and others are secondary in the sense that they are not in objects but in our minds, i.e., subjective. Berkeley rejected this twofold division on the basis that if secondary qualities are what they are by means of perception or idea, the primary qualities are no less dependent on the same perception. A quality whether primary or secondary must be cognized by our perception. All the things which are composed of qualities both primary and secondary must be regarded as such only when they are perceived as such. In other words, the existence of things must be determined by perception or idea : *Esse est percipi*. This type of Idealism may be regarded as Subjective Idealism. According to Berkeley, it is the individual mind that determines the existence of external objects. In his later writings he faced a horrible difficulty of dualism regarding his doctrine of '*esse est percipi*.' For the emergence of perception the existence of external objects independent of mind is necessary. Without an external and independent object no perception is possible. To overcome this difficulty Berkeley established a new doctrine in his later works which is known as '*esse est concipi*.' In this new doctrine he placed the word 'conception' in place of 'perception' meaning thereby 'to exist is to be conceived.'

### **Idealism of Kant :**

Kant's Idealism is a direct result of his epistemological position adopted in his Critique of Pure Reason. He points out

that knowledge or intelligible experience is a complex product of the elements of sensibility and understanding. Pure knowledge, i.e., *a priori* is that with which no empirical element is mixed up. But our judgments are always *a posteriori* because they are derived from experience. Sensations originate from an unknown world of things-in-themselves but must be organized into a systematic whole by the forms of intuition, i.e., space and time and by the categories or the fundamental concepts of understanding such as substance, causality and the like. The forms and categories are *a priori*, because our judgments presuppose the existence of these forms and categories. Experience is never possible without the existence of these transcendental laws of judgment. Thus, it is our understanding that makes nature, according to Kant. The Idealism of Kant, therefore, consists in this that the world of our knowledge is an ideal construction out of sense-manifold to which alone the forms and categories of understanding are confined and, therefore, is commonly known as Objective Idealism. It is subjective in the sense that knowledge does not reach out to the world of things-in-themselves : *ding an sich*. He argues that reality cannot be grasped by our knowledge because our judgment is conditional, relative and partial. We cannot know a thing as it is but we know it as our experience reveals. Hence, the Kantian *ding an sich* is unknowable by our experience. His view of the Transcendental Unity of Apperception is more important as regards the unity of knowledge. All knowledge presupposes the Synthetic Unity of Pure Apperception, because unless there is a Synthetic Unity no knowledge is possible. This idea of Synthetic Unity of Pure Apperception leads Kant quite near the conception of soul which is not accepted by him outwardly.

#### **Absolute Idealism of Hegel :**

The fundamental question before Hegel was : What must be the nature and characteristic of the ultimate principle of the universe in order to explain by it the origin, growth and

development of mind and nature, their mutual relations as well as the questions of science, philosophy, ethics, art and religion. He found the ultimate principle of his fundamental question in Absolute Spirit, Reason, Thought or Idea. This Absolute Idea of Hegel is not static but a dynamic spiritual principle as it is with Fichte who after Kant established the world-view of Absolute Idealism on his conception of Absolute Ego. But his Absolute Ego was a moral principle satisfying man's craving for moral values alone, while Hegel took it in a more pronounced and comprehensive form. In his principle of Absolute Idea thinking and being coincide, or what is thinking finds its expression in being, for thinking involves an object of thought. It cannot be in *vacuo* (vacuum). 'The world consists of both mind and nature, subject and object, self and not-self. Thus, the world of mind and nature is the heterisation of the Absolute Thought for its thinking, so that the laws of its thinking are also the laws of being. Hegel, thus, seems to reserve for his Absolute an immutable and inexhaustible being which always transcends its heterisation or the world of becoming.'<sup>1</sup> It shows that the Absolute Idealism of Hegel is Monistic Spiritualism, i.e., in the shape of one spiritual reality as the source and foundation of all external objects as well as individual thoughts. In other words, the Absolute Idealism of Hegel may be called Objective Idealism. Thought, according to Hegel, is a self-developing reality which develops through the contradiction of the subject and the object, through the clash of the opposites — the thesis and the anti-thesis, and ultimately overcomes this dualism not by negating it but by correcting it.

### **Bradley on Idealism :**

Following the intellectual lead of Hegel, Bradley starts his enquiry and finds that the revelation of the intellect can acquaint us with the fact that the categories of substance,

---

1. Principles of Philosophy, p. 107.

attributes, causality etc., the forms of time and space — all these limited abstractions are riddled with contradictions. He finds that the external relations are meaningless to the conception of the Unity of Reality and the internal relations. Though consistent with the intellectual conception they cannot be applied to the Absolute Reality which is non-relational. Therefore, Bradley thinks that the proper organ for grasping the Absolute Reality is not intellect but the whole of mental life which is constituted by intellect, feeling and will. He, therefore, describes his Absolute as identified with Experience. Human experience is a piece of Transcendental Experience and can approximate it when it has learnt to transcend the limitations of intellect. The Absolute of Bradley, therefore, is to be felt, experienced or realized and not to be known by our simple intellect.

The implication of Bradleian Idealism is that intellect is an important factor of consciousness and cannot ordinarily be prevented from grasping and modifying reality under its own qualifications of categories and relations. But it fails to grasp reality itself, which is a non-relational whole. Therefore, intellect which grasps reality in some conditional and partial aspects, must be transcended if we are not to remain satisfied with partial realities or 'appearances' as Bradley calls them. Reality is to be apprehended by Transcendental Experience. The ordinary world of our experience in the form of individuality and diversity is the realm of appearances. Reality is something transcendental which transcends all the empirical experiences of external objects. The objects of external world are only appearances as experienced by our ordinary intellect, not reality itself in its absolute form. Hence, the external objects and finite concepts are only appearances, not the Absolute Reality.

#### **Idealistic Attitude of Bosanquet :**

Following almost the same line of thought as that of Bradley, Bosanquet has come to conceive of reality as a logical

or rational whole which he calls 'Individual'. He laid emphasis on the faculty of intellect or reason but did not reject the objective order of things. While explaining the nature and functions of thought, Bosanquet says : 'The essence of thought is not in a mental faculty but in the objective order of things. We bring the two sides together if we say, it is the control exercised by reality over mental process.'<sup>1</sup>

Thought, as Bosanquet conceives it, has for its goal the 'Whole'. It is by its very nature, compelled to construct. As he puts in his own words : 'Implicit in all the modes of experience which attracted us throughout, it is now considered in its own typical manifestations, in which the idea of system, the spirit of the concrete universal, in other words, of individuality, is the central essence.'<sup>2</sup> On this very fundamental basis he defines error as simply an inadequate determination without a system, which leaves alternative possibilities open, i.e., dependent on unknown conditions.<sup>3</sup> Bosanquet, therefore, thinks that it is intellect, when pursued in its fullest capacity, that comprehends or constructs the whole of reality. He not only maintains this but lays emphasis on the unity of values also. 'Totality expresses itself in value, which is... the concentration and focus of reality in its essence as real, as a positive centre which is a solution of contradictions...'<sup>4</sup> The Idealism of Bosanquet, thus, establishes the monism of the spirit which is at once the unity of experience and the unity of values. The ultimate spirit is the 'Real Thing.' This spirit is nothing but the totality of existence and the unity of values. Thus, the external world is nothing more than the spirit as a unity of experience and the unity of values. The Spiritual Idealism propounded by Bosanquet is monistic in character.

---

1. Life and Philosophy in Contemporary British Philosophy, First Series, p. 61.

2. Ibid., p. 63.

3. Ibid., p. 67.

4. Ibid., p.73.



After giving an introductory account of Western Idealism we, now, come to the Idealistic Schools of India. Mahāyāna Buddhism and Advaita Vedānta are the most important schools of Indian Idealism.

### **Mādhyamika School of Buddhism :**

According to this school, reality is beyond the four categories of thought.<sup>1</sup> Human intellect cannot grasp reality. What we grasp is the *prapañca*, and not the *paramārtha*. If we put this idea in the technical language of Buddhism, we can say that the human knowledge is confined to the *saṃvṛtisatya*, i.e., to the phenomenal reality. It is unable to grasp the *paramārtha-satya*, i. e. the noumenal reality. The phenomenal reality is *svabhāva-sūnya*, i.e., devoid of self-existence. The noumenal reality is *prapañca-sūnya*, i. e., devoid of plurality. Some scholars are of the view that the word *sūnya* is synonymous with Nihilism and they draw the conclusion that the school of Mādhyamika Buddhism is Nihilistic. According to the opinion of other scholars, this view is not correct. They are of the opinion that the word *sūnya* must be interpreted in the sense of *svabhāva-sūnya* and *prapañca-sūnya*. As it is remarked by an eminent exponent of the system : 'The Buddha preached reality (*dharma*) considering two types of truth. The first type is the Phenomenal Truth and the second one is the Noumenal Truth.'<sup>2</sup> The empirical world is the phenomenal reality, while the ultimate truth is the noumenal reality. 'The ultimate truth is intuitional, peaceful, devoid of plurality, indeterminate and one. This is the nature of reality.'<sup>3</sup>

### **Yogācāra School of Buddhism :**

This school advocates *vijñānādvaita-vāda*. According to it, as is generally believed, only momentary ideas are real. It is only because of this belief that the system is regarded as

1. *Catuṣkoṭiviviruktam tattvam mādhyamikā viduh.*

2. Mādhyamika-kārikā, XXIV. 8.

3. Ibid., XVIII. 9.

Subjective Idealism. But this view is not correct. The doctrine of momentary ideas is tenable only in the case of phenomenal reality. The conception of momentariness is necessary to reach the ultimate reality. If the phenomenal reality is not conceived as momentary, our approach to the highest reality is not possible.

The highest reality, according to the *Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra*, is the universal consciousness (*ālayavijñāna*). The reality which is grasped by the four categories of thought is only phenomenal.<sup>1</sup> The highest reality is unchanging, calm and permanent. It is beyond the four categories of thought.<sup>2</sup> It is beyond the duality of subject and object.<sup>3</sup> By mere analysis we cannot grasp reality. Thus, it is indescribable and devoid of any explanation.<sup>4</sup>

Although the *Laṅkāvatāra* appears to support the doctrine of crude subjectivism, yet, really it is pregnant with deeper expressions which forbid us to draw such a conclusion. The external world is the creation, not of the individual consciousness, but of the Absolute Consciousness.<sup>5</sup> All, except consciousness, is unreal. Consciousness alone is the established truth preached by the Buddha. All the three worlds are the result of discrimination or thought-relations. No external object exists in reality. All that is, is consciousness.<sup>6</sup>

### Non-dualistic Idealism of Śāṅkara :

In the philosophy of Śāṅkara the ultimate reality is Brahman or Self. He maintains that the transcendental ground of experience is Self. The Self is not momentary but permanent, not changing but changeless, not finite but infinite, not limited and conditional but unlimited and unconditional.

1. *Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra*, p. 188.

2. *Catuṣkoṭivinirmukta*.

3. *Grāhyagrāhakavinirmukta*.

4. *Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra*, p. 116.

5. *Indian Philosophy* (C. D. Sharma), p. 145.

6. *Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra*, P. 186.

The existence of Self is self-proved (*svayamśiddha*) and cannot be denied. It is always conscious.

Now, there arises a question : If the Self is changeless and permanent, what about the reality of the external world ? Śāṅkara recognises three grades of reality.<sup>1</sup> The external objects of our ordinary experience have only a *vyāvahārika sattā* (empirical reality), the objects appearing in dreams and illusions enjoy only a *prātibhāsika sattā* (illusory appearance) and the *Brahman*, i. e., the Absolute has the *pāramārthika sattā* (ultimate reality). The *vyāvahārika* and *prātibhāsika* existences are real from a lower stand-point. The ultimate reality is the highest reality which is devoid of all differences and contradictions. This reality is further described as '*prapañcasya ekāyanam*', i. e., the basis of the whole world including the things, the senses and the mind.<sup>2</sup> Or again it is described as the '*bhūmā*' which though the ground of every thing, does not itself stand in need of a ground or support; it is *apraṭiṣṭhita* and *anāśrita*.<sup>3</sup> The Self is not affected by the appearance of the duality of subject and object. It is pure consciousness running through all the appearances. It is indescribable by the categories of thought. It can only be realised by intuition where there is no dualism of the subject and the object, the knower and the known. The subject-object-dualism is ultimately reduced to pure consciousness which is nothing but bliss. Our intellect cannot grasp the ultimate reality because it is absolute and infinite, while our intellect is limited and finite. We cannot know *Brahman* but we can become *Brahman*. 'He who knows *Brahman*, becomes *Brahman*.'<sup>4</sup> The appearance of the external world and of the individual souls is due to Ignorance or Nescience (*Avidyā*). At the time of the realisation of the Self it automatically disappears.

1. Vedānta-siddhānta-muktāvalī, p. 25.

2. Śāṅkara-bhāṣya, I. 4; VI. 19.

3. Chāndogya-upaniṣad, VII. 24. 1.

4. *Brahmavid brahma eva bhavati*.

**Realism :**

The general conception of Realism is that whatever is, is real in the sense that it exists and functions independently of any mind and its interference whatsoever. The mind may or may not be present there. Its existence is quite indifferent to the real. Realism seems to represent the most primitive and natural tendency of thought to which what is outside, is first to appeal. It takes the clear and distinct view of reality as it appears. In Western philosophy, as we find, the first Greek philosophers were realists making either water or air or fire to be the ultimate principle of the world existing independently of the mind, and the world with all its complex contents was supposed to owe its origin and growth to this principle.

**Arguments for Physical Existence :**

When the Realist says that there is an existence of physical objects independent of intellect or idea, can he give any arguments to prove his statement? Can he give any reasons why we should believe that the external objects exist? He presents the following arguments to prove it:¹

1. The existence of physical objects can be inferred from sense-data as their cause. If there is no physical object, how can sensation be possible? Everything which exists must have a cause. The sensation exists, therefore it must have a cause and this cause is nothing but sense-datum in the shape of physical objects. The similarity of the sense-data of one person to those of another, when both are perceiving the same object, is a good reason for believing in physical objects as their common cause. As Russell writes: 'What reason, then, have we for believing that there are such public neutral objects? Although different people may see the table slightly differently, still they all see more or less similar things when they look at the table...so that it is easy to

---

1. Nature of the World, p. 125.

arrive at a permanent object underlying all the different people's sense-data."

2. It is simpler than any other hypothesis. A man of common-sense can understand the theory of the existence of external objects more easily than any other theory of the Idealists. Its details are answerable to a simple mathematical treatment.

3. We have a strong propensity to believe that there is physical reality of external objects. What the plain man believes about the table is that it is a square, brown, hard object which he sees existing now and which goes on existing, being brown and square and hard when no one is perceiving it. If you tell him that it is nothing of the sort, that the squareness, brownness and hardness disappear when he shuts his eyes and reappear when he opens them, that they are not parts of the Real Table at all, and that the Real Table has no colour, texture, shape and weight, but only some qualities which neither he nor even the greatest philosopher can even imagine, he will not understand you and certainly will have no strong propensity to believe what you say. He won't believe if you say that it is like a dream where although there are no physical objects still we see or enjoy them. Because he knows that our dream is contradicted when we get up but the valid knowledge of waking life is not contradicted afterwards. Even our dream is not quite unreal because it has impressions of our waking life which is quite real.

There are other arguments as well that prove the independent existence of physical objects. The intellect discovers but does not make concepts. In a different language, concepts are not merely functions of the intellect, they constitute a 'coordinate realm' of reality. Philosophy must then recognise many realms of reality which mutually

---

1. Problems of Philosophy, p. 32.

interpenetrate. Intellect is an organ, not of 'fabrication,' but of 'discernment', a power men have to single out the most fugitive elements of what passes before them... aspect within aspect, quality after quality, relation upon relation. The action of the mind is not creative. Its ideas are not of its own making but rather of its own choosing. It is essentially a selective agency, 'a theatre of simultaneous possibilities.' The sense-organs select from among simultaneous stimuli, attention is selective from among sensations, morality is selective from among interests. To reason is to guide the course of ideas.

Thus, the Realists do not regard only one reality as valid. They establish the theory of the reality of physical objects independent of and entirely different from any mind, intellect, experience, consciousness, individual or spirit. Consciousness is different from its object. The object of a sensation is not the sensation itself.

The nature of consciousness is quite different from the nature of material objects. Consciousness is the essence of spirit, i. e., mind, while material objects exist outside the mind. How can these two absolutely different realities be identical? If, 'Consciousness Alone' is real, what necessity is of the existence of external objects? Why should an external object prove itself as an obstacle in the production of knowledge? If consciousness itself is non-blue, what is the necessity of an external object? If consciousness itself is blue, what is the necessity of an external object? If 'Consciousness Alone' is real, there would be no difference between the state of dream and the state of waking life, inasmuch as it is the external and objective reality that makes a distinction between the two.

### **Different Trends of Realism :**

We, now, proceed to consider the problem whether Realism takes the existent to be numerically one, two or

many. Realism would be Monistic, Dualistic or Pluralistic according to its view of numerical strength of the existent. If it believes in one material reality, it would be called Monistic Realism. If it takes the existent to be two, it would fall in the category of Dualistic Realism. If it admits reality to be more than two, it would be called Pluralistic Realism. Similarly, some other types of Realism would be dealt with according to their specific characteristics.

### **Monistic Realism :**

The primitive Greek philosophers such as Thales, Anaximander, Anaximenes and Heraclitus, in so far as they each thought one or other of water, air, and fire to be the one indivisible stuff of reality, were Monistic Realists. To them all things as the physical objects, the mind, the life and the rest were the products of any one of these stuffs. Thus, consciousness was considered to be merely a product of matter.

### **Dualistic Realism :**

It regards the mental and physical worlds as two distinct and independent realities. The monistic trend changed its attitude and began to believe in 'life' as a separate and distinct reality. Empedocles believed in the psychical forces over and above the four elements of earth, fire, air and water. Anaxagoras admitted '*nous*' or 'mind' as the central principle of movement and change. Plato and Aristotle may be said to have indulged in Dualism in spite of their insistence on the reality of the world of Ideas or Forms. Aristotle was, perhaps, more pronounced in his Dualism than Plato.

In modern philosophy, it was Descartes who gave a distinct turn to Realism. To him matter and mind are independent existences each having a characteristic diametrically opposed to the characteristic of the other. This Dualism appeared in Locke in a somewhat different shape in his distinction between cogitative and non-cogitative substance.

Although Kant was an Idealist in his noumenal outlook, still, he became guilty of a Double Dualism – Epistemological Dualism between sense and understanding and Ontological Dualism between mind and noumenal world of things-in-themselves.<sup>1</sup>

### **Pluralistic Realism :**

The primitive Greek philosophers were satisfied with one indivisible matter as the basic principle of all that is in the universe. The later Greek thinkers like Democritus and others could not satisfy their impulse of curiosity in this fashion. They thought that the visible objects of the universe are many and independent of one another, and each such object can be divided further and further till we come to a point beyond which our division cannot go. Such units of material objects, which they call 'atoms', must be the ultimate physical principles of the universe. From these 'atoms' all else (including minds) have been derived. They are the only reals, self-sufficient, self-existent and indivisible, and independent of the minds which originate from them. This type of Realism can be called 'Pluralistic Material Realism' or 'Atomic Realism.'

### **Pragmatic View of Realism :**

Pragmatism means, in the broadest sense, the acceptance of the categories of life as fundamental. Perry remarks that it is the 'bio-centric' philosophy. The Pragmatist means by life, not the imaginary or ideal life of any hypothetical being, not the 'eternal' life or the 'absolute' life but the temporal, operative life of animals and men, the life of instinct and desire, of adaptation and environment, of civilization and progress. The whole 'experimentalist' tendency in English science and philosophy may be said to have anticipated the pragmatist theory that truth is achieved by the trying of hypotheses. This tendency of Pragmatic Realism is

---

1. Principles of Philosophy, p. 91.



mainly directed against Absolutism.

It regards idea as an exercising force of the function of 'meaning.' Anything may be an idea, provided you mean with it; just as anything may be a weapon, provided you do injury with it. An idea is what an idea does. In this sense ideas are 'modes of conceiving' the given, a 'taking it to be' this or that. It is a virtual access to an immediate experience of that which it means. By ideas, Pragmatism does not mean 'Platonic essences' but the modes of an individual's thinking. The Pragmatist conceives reality in the terms of intellectual process and circumstances.

### **Conception of Neo-Realism :**

Neo-Realism believes that the world is existent and is independent of mind. However, it does not appear exactly in the same form as the dualistic Realism of Hamilton, who makes no provision for any mediation of ideas between mind and nature. While Neo-Realism insists like other Realists that things are independent, it also asserts that when things are known, they become immediate objects of knowledge. These immediate objects of knowledge are technically called 'sensa.' So things are nothing else than 'sensa' in a certain relation. The Neo-Realist does not postulate mind as a self-conscious substance. He conceives mind as a cross-section of the physical world. Neo-Realism seems to be an ally to Naturalism and Pragmatism as it accepts like Naturalism the truth of the results of physical science and like Pragmatism the practical and empirical character of knowledge.' Let us, now, turn to a brief discussion of the conception of knowledge recognised by Neo-Realism.

#### **(a) Theory of Immanence**

The Neo-Realist suggests by his Theory of Immanence that things and minds are not to be regarded as two independent

---

1. Present Philosophical Tendencies, p. 271.

realities but rather as 'relations' into which knowledge as a fact must necessarily enter. As has been observed by Perry : 'Instead of conceiving of Reality as divided absolutely between two impenetrable spheres, we may conceive it as a field of interpenetrating relationships.'

**(b) Theory of Independence**

The suggestion of the Theory of Independence is that things are directly experienced, and that in the act of direct experience the things remain as they are without being affected by experience. Experience gives us immediate knowledge of things as they are presented to it but does not determine them.

From the above statement it follows that according to the Theory of Independence, things being independent of one another, the relations which exist amongst things are also external and real, and not subjective and internal. Just as things are outside of mind, so is the relation. This view is quite similar to the Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika conception of the external existence of relations.

**Theory of Critical Realism :**

If all knowledge were immediate grasp of things then there remains no provision for distinction between true and false knowledge. Such being the case no one would be allowed to deny illusions, hallucinations and differences in the degrees of accuracy in knowledge. The Critical Realist removes this difficulty. The contention of the Critical Realist is that in our perception things do not enter directly into our consciousness, but only through the mediation of certain elements partly subjective and partly objective, which make the sense-data into the actual objects of perception. These elements are partly of the nature of the subject and partly that of the object and intervene between the subject and the object, as logical entities. These entities are called 'character-

---

1. Ibid., p. 311.

complex' or 'essence'. The object cannot be apprehended immediately as it is, and this accounts for the distinction between true and false knowledge, between truth and error, and for illusions and hallucinations and degrees of accuracy in knowledge.

The Critical Realist further maintains that things have their independent existence and are not known in their entirety but only in their partial character. Our knowledge of things is determined by our interest which selects certain qualities of things in preference to the rest. Things are not entirely unaffected by our experience, as the Neo-Realist holds.

#### **Selective and Generative Realism :**

The Selective hypothesis holds that the sense-datum is not an effect which is produced or part-produced by the sense-organ. The function of the sense-organ is to 'select' which sense-datum we perceive. Thus, if I see an object as red while a colour-blind person sees it as green, the truth is that both red and green are present in the object; but my retina selects the red for me to see and shuts out the green, while the colour-blind person's retina selects the green for him to see and shuts out the red. The outside world actually has all the qualities which can ever be perceived in it by any organism.

The Generative hypothesis holds that the existence of data is physiologically conditioned. The sense-datum is the effect of two joint causes, *viz.*, the physical object and the sense-organ. Thus, a colour is actually produced by the interaction of the physical object and the organ of sight. If this hypothesis is taken to be true, there will exist no colour when there is no eye. Similar conclusions follow as regards the data of the other senses. Hence, according to this theory, sense-data exist only when they are being perceived.

Thus, the Selective theory says that a physical object has all the qualities which we or any other existing or possible

organism ever has or ever will perceive in it. The Generative theory says that it has none of the qualities which any actual or possible organism ever did or ever will perceive in it.

### **Realistic Currents of Indian Thought :**

Indian Realism can be classified into two broad divisions: Orthodox Realism and Heterodox Realism. That school which believes in the Vedic Testimony is called Orthodox and that which does not regard the Vedic Authority as valid is called Heterodox. In the following paragraphs we propose to give a brief account of the schools of Orthodox Realism.

#### **Pūrva-Mīmāṃsā Schools :**

Both the schools, viz., Bhāṭṭa and Prābhākara, believe in two independent realities. Regarding these schools we do not easily find any reference in the *Sūtras* that directly points out the problem of realism. But a close study of the Mīmāṃsā-sūtra in which it is indicated that knowledge is produced when the sense-organ comes in contact with the object, shows quite clearly that the writer believes in the separate and independent existence of knowledge from objects. In the Bhāṣya of Śābara also we find that while criticising the view of the Śūnyavādins, Śābara says that the Objective Reality is quite independent of knowledge which in its turn really depends upon the External Reality for its occurrence. Later on, the schools of Bhāṭṭa and Prābhākara discussed this problem at great length in their respective works. Thus, it is right to say that both the schools of Pūrva-Mīmāṃsā are of realistic nature.

#### **Sāṅkhya School :**

This school also falls in the category of Realism. It points out clearly that there are two ultimate entities, viz., *Puruṣa* and *Prakṛti* both of which are eternal and different from each other. *Puruṣa* is nothing but consciousness (*cit*), while *Prakṛti* is non-conscious (*jaḍa*).<sup>1</sup> *Puruṣa* is spectator (*draṣṭṛ - sākṣin*)

1. Sāṅkhya-kārikā, 11.

and enjoyer (*bhoktr*), while *Prakṛti* is what is seen and enjoyed (*dr̥ṣya* and *bhogya*). From this account it is evident that *Puruṣa* is consciousness or spirit, whereas *Prakṛti* is physical existence. *Prakṛti* is further manifested into different forms<sup>1</sup> with which we are not concerned here. In short, the Sāṅkhya system believes in two realities which are independent of and different from each other.

### **Rāmānuja's Position :**

According to Rāmānuja, the conscious substance (*cit-tattva*) is knower and is the substratum of knowledge (*jñāna*). Both are eternal and inseparably connected together.<sup>2</sup> Knowledge is all pervading. It is non-material (*ajada*) and of self-revealing nature. It is capable of contraction and expansion (*saṅkoca* and *vikāśa*). It illumines things as well as itself,<sup>3</sup> but it cannot know itself. The physical substance is divided into three kinds: (1) that which possesses immutable existence (*sattva*) only, (2) that which has all the three qualities (*guṇas*) and (3) that which does not possess any one of the three qualities (*guṇas*). It is eternal.<sup>4</sup> It is distinct from knowledge and is free from consciousness.<sup>5</sup> It is subject to change.<sup>6</sup> Both the realities, viz., consciousness and non-conscious objects, are eternal and independent. Although Rāmānuja believes in the qualified monism, still, he is quite clear in his view when he says that both these substances will never become one with *Brahman*. The individual souls can become similar to *Brahman*, not same with *Brahman*. The physical objects will never become identical with *Brahman*. Hence, according to his view, the universe is of realistic nature.

### **Position of Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika School :**

It is needless to say that the joint system of Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika

1. Sāṅkhya-kārikā, 21.

2. Tattva-traya, p. 17.

3. Ibid., p. 35.

4. Ibid., pp. 41,45.

5. Ibid., p. 41.

6. *Vikārāspadam*.

school holds that spirit and matter are two independent substances. It believes in seven categories of reality. Matter which is an important factor in the concept of Realism has been shown as eternal, non-momentary and cognisable through one or more means of valid cognition.

Now, we come to the schools of Heterodox Realism.

### **Vaibhāṣika and Sautrāntika Schools :**

The Vaibhāṣika school of Buddhism belongs to the sect of Sarvāstivādins. The very name of this sect shows that it believes in the separate and independent existence of the objective world. Both the external and the internal existences in the shape of matter and knowledge are real.<sup>1</sup> Both of them are momentary.

According to the Sautrāntika school of Buddhism, there is an external world which is as much real as knowledge itself. Although the objective world is independent of knowledge or intellect, yet, it is not cognised through direct perception. The Sautrāntikas hold that the existence of the external world (*bāhyārtha*) is inferred from the various forms of knowledge which forms would not have otherwise existed. In other words, they believe that knowledge assumes various forms which lead us to infer the existence of an external world corresponding to them.<sup>2</sup>

According to the Vaibhāṣikas, knowledge, consciousness or intellect is formless, while it has forms according to the Sautrāntikas. The former believes in the direct perceptibility of the outside world, while the latter holds it to be entirely inferential. The Vaibhāṣika system may be called 'Direct Momentary Realism'. The Sautrāntika school may be named 'Indirect Momentary Realism'.

### **Cārvāka School :**

According to the Cārvāka, consciousness is not a separate reality. He holds that reality consists of the objective world

1. History of Indian Logic. p.247.

2. Guṇaratna's Commentary on Śaḍdarśana-samuccaya, p. 47.

only which is constituted by the four *Mahābhūtas* (Primary Elements), viz., earth, water, fire and air. Consciousness is merely a by-product of a peculiar amalgamation of the above-mentioned *Mahābhūtas*,<sup>1</sup> although none of them possesses it separately. This school does not believe in anything which is neither a *bhūta* nor a *bhautika* (product of the *bhūtas*). This system of Realism is purely materialistic.

### Jainism :

All the philosophical problems are based upon the concept of universe. No school of thought denies the existence of universe but each tries to prove it by its own point of view. In the *Bhagavatī-sūtra*, a question is asked by Gautama in connection with the concept of universe. Lord Mahāvīra replied in a direct manner. The conversation is as follows :

Gautama : "O Lord ! what is this universe ?"

Mahāvīra : "O Gautama ! this universe is composed of five extensive substances. They are the Medium of Motion, the Medium of Rest, Space, Soul and Matter."<sup>2</sup>

In this conversation Time is not regarded as a separate substance but is included in both the conscious and non-conscious substances. In some chapters of the *Bhagavatī-sūtra*, Time is mentioned as a separate entity.<sup>3</sup> This two-fold classification shows that there were two schools of thought in Jainism. One believed in the existence of five extensive substances while the other conceived the universe as composed of six substances. The latter added Time as a separate and independent entity to the five extensive substances without regarding it as an extensive reality. This is a rough estimate of the concept of universe in the Jaina canons.

### Nature of Reality :

The Jaina thinkers have mentioned the word '*sat*', '*tattva*', '*artha*', '*padārtha*' and '*tattvārtha*' as synonyms for the word

1. *Śaddarśana-samuccaya*, p. 306.

2. *Bhagavatī-sūtra*, XIII. 4.481.

3. *Ibid.*, XXV. 2-4.

reality. They generally did not make any distinction among substance, reality, existence etc. The other Indian systems did not do so in the same sense. In the Vaiśeṣika-sūtra, all the six, viz., substance, quality, action, generality, particularity and inherent relationship are called *padārthas*, but the term *artha* is reserved only for three *padārthas*, viz., substance, quality and action.<sup>1</sup> The Naiyāyikas call the sixteen principles by the name of '*sat*'.<sup>2</sup> The Sāṅkhya system regards *Prakṛtī* and *Puruṣa* as *tattvas*. In spite of being a school of Realism, Jainism did not make any difference among Reality, Existence, Substance, Object etc.

According to Umāsvāti, the definition of reality is '*sat*', i.e., existence.<sup>3</sup> He did not use the term '*tattva*' but used the word '*dravya*,' i.e., substance for reality. We have already seen that there is no difference between substance and reality. Reality is substance and substance is reality. In this way, the primary and essential criterion of reality is existence or *sattā*. That which exists is real. In other words, existence is reality or reality is existence. Considering from this point of view, it can be asserted that 'all is one because all exists.'<sup>4</sup> This view is taken to be very much similar to that of the Upaniṣads. In the Jaina canons there are some references that indicate this view. As we find in the Sthānāṅga-sūtra : 'One Soul,' 'One Universe' etc.<sup>5</sup> This concept of oneness is considered to be valid only from the view-point of the '*saṅgrahanaya*'. This view-point of the Jainas reaches near the Absolute Idealism of Indian philosophy and the 'Experience' of Bradley. Our intellect cannot describe this reality in whole. It can be realised by intuition which is possessed by an omniscient self. Both the conscious and non-conscious substances are the attributes

1. Vaiśeṣika-sūtra, I. I. 4; VIII. 2.3.

2. *Sacca Khalu ṣoḍaśadhū vyūḍhamupadeśyate* – Nyāya-bhāṣya, I. 11.

3. *Sat dravyalakṣaṇam*, V. 29. (Dīgambara tradition)

4. *Tattvārtha-sūtra-bhāṣya*, I. 35.

5. *Ege āyā; ege loe* – Sthānāṅga-sūtra, I. 1; I. 4.



of this reality, according to Jainism. Existence is neither 'Consciousness Alone' nor 'Matter Alone'. When we analyse reality in this fashion, our stand-point comes in clash with the Absolute Idealism and the Absolute Materialism. The Jainas hold that Existence is all-inclusive. If you say that it is nothing but Pure Consciousness, you commit a blunder. If you describe it as Pure Matter, you are guilty. It is neither sheer consciousness nor mere matter. Both consciousness and matter are included in it.

### Characteristics of Existence :

Umāsvāti defines *sat* as possessing origination, decay and permanence.<sup>1</sup> When a substance, conscious or non-conscious, originates without leaving its own nature, it is called origination. As for instance, a jar originates from clay without leaving the nature of clay. Decay is the name of leaving the former mode. As for example, clay leaves its former mode when it becomes a jar. Permanence is the essential characteristic of a substance which remains unchanged in both the conditions, viz., origination and decay. It is neither created nor destroyed. It is changeless. As for instance, the essential nature of clay remains unchanged among its various modes.<sup>2</sup>

In the Jaina canons we do not find the word '*sat*' as the criterion of reality or substance. Only the word '*dravya*' has been used there. As it is mentioned in the Anuyogadvāra-sūtra that the universal criterion of reality is '*dravya*' (substance) and the particular characteristics of reality are the *jīva dravya* and the *ajīva dravya*, i.e., the conscious substance and the non-conscious substance.<sup>3</sup> Umāsvāti developed this canonical concept of '*dravya*' (substance) into '*sat*' (existence) and made no distinction between '*sat*' and '*dravya*'. His language was

1. *Utpādavyayadhrauvyayuktam sat* – Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 29.

2. Sarvārtha-siddhi, V. 30.

3. Anuyogadvāra-sūtra, 123. (*Aviseṣie davve viṣeṣie jīvadavve ajīvadavve ya.*)

philosophical rather than canonical. Although he mentioned 'sat' as the criterion of reality, yet, he did not define 'sat' in the same manner as it was defined by other philosophical systems. The Vedānta school and the Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika system define 'sattā' as absolutely permanent having no change whatsoever. Umāsvāti also defined 'sat' as permanent (*dhruva*) but his concept of permanence was not that of the absolute permanence. According to him, the criterion of permanence is 'not leaving self-essence'.<sup>1</sup> He explained this definition in the following manner : 'That which neither leaves its existent essence at present nor will leave it in future, is permanent.'<sup>2</sup> The substance during the period of taking new forms and leaving old ones does not leave its essence. In both origination and decay it remains as it is. Its nature remains unchanged. This immutable nature is called permanence.

Now, there arises a question : How is it possible that a substance which leaves the old mode and takes the new form is permanent ? How these two contradictory qualities, viz., change and permanence can remain in the same substance ? How is it possible that a permanent existence changes ? All these questions seem to be contradictory but really speaking they are not so. Umāsvāti himself says that this concept of permanence can be understood by the term 'leaving' and 'not-leaving'.<sup>3</sup> That which is left is changed and that which is not left is permanent. The modes are temporary because they are left by the substance. The essential criterion is permanent because it remains unchanged. No substance can be absolutely destroyed. No object is absolutely permanent. The nature of reality is permanent as well as momentary. Its modes (*parvāyas*) change but the essential characteristic (*dravya*)

1. *Tadbhāvāvvyayam nityam* — Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 30.

2. *Yat sato bhāvānnavyeti na vyeṣyati tannityam* — Tattvārtha-sūtra-bhāṣya. V. 30.

3. *Arpitānarpitasiddheḥ* — Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 31.

remains unchanged. Kundakunda also defines reality (*sattā*) in the same way.<sup>1</sup>

### **Identity and Difference :**

What the Jaina maintains is that the nature of reals can be understood from experience. It is wrong to admit that any attribute or element that does not belong to the real can be ascribed as belonging to it. This is the fundamental position of almost all the Realistic schools.

Our experience tells us that no object is absolutely identical. We experience this also that the differences are not absolutely scattered. Jainism takes this commonsense-view and maintains that the identity is accepted to be true in the midst of all the varying modes or differences. There is no reason to call in question the reality of the changes or of the identity, as both are perceived facts. Every entity is subject to change and maintains its identity throughout its career. Dispassionate study reveals reality to be a synthesis of opposites – identity and difference, permanence and change, describability and indescribability, oneness and maniness. The Vedāntins start with the premise that reality is One Universal Existence and that is Permanent Consciousness. The Vaibhāṣikas and Sautrāntikas believe in atomic particulars and momentary ideas, each absolutely different from the rest and having nothing underlying them to bind them together. The Naiyāyikas believe in both as combined in an individual, though they maintain that the two characters, i.e., universality and particularity are different and distinct. A real, according to them, is an aggregate of the universal and the particular, i.e., identity and difference and not a real synthesis. The Jaina differs from them all and maintains that the universal and the particular are only distinguishable traits in a real, which is at once identical with and different from both. Reality is neither a particularity nor a universality in an exclusive

---

1. Pañcāstikāyasāra, 8.

manner, but a synthesis which is different from both severally and jointly though embracing them in its fold.' It is existence. It is '*sattā*'. Both identity and difference live in its bosom. They are not different from existence as such. They are in the form of existence or existence is in the form of them. This existence is '*sat*'. This '*sat*' is called '*dravya*'. This '*dravya*' is known as '*tattva*'. This '*tattva*' is described as reality. This type of reality is '*tattvārtha*' or '*padārtha*'.

### Classification of Substance :

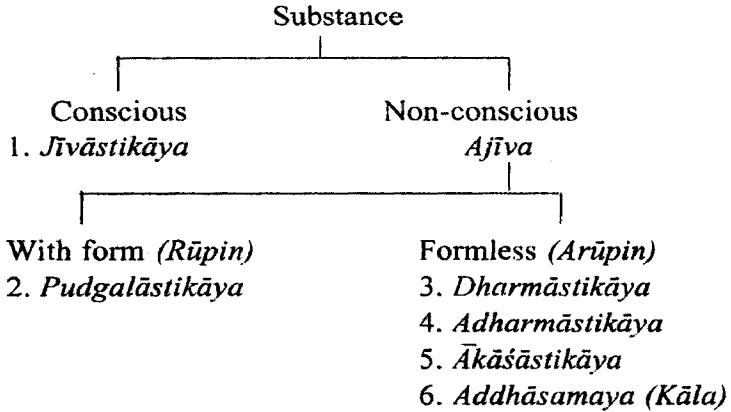
It has already been mentioned that if we look at substance from the view-point of *saṅgraha* (universality), we have only one substance, one reality and that reality is existence. From this stand-point, we make no distinction between consciousness and non-consciousness, between universality and particularity, between subject and object, between one and many. All these differences are covered by '*sat*'. Hence, from one point of view, '*sat*' is the only substance. This view-point leads to a form of Monism, inasmuch as it takes note of the thread of unity running through plurality which we find recorded in the earlier works of Jaina philosophy.

If we look at substance from the dualistic view-point, we experience it as composed of *jīva* and *ajīva*. The *jīva* is the enjoyer and the *ajīva* is the enjoyed from the empirical point of view. That which has consciousness is *jīva*; that which has not consciousness is *ajīva*. Dr. Radhakrishnan writes in his book 'Indian Philosophy' that which has not consciousness but can be touched, tasted, seen and smelt, is *ajīva*.<sup>2</sup> This statement is not correct. The real criterion of *jīva* and *ajīva* is consciousness and non-consciousness respectively. The Jainas do not mean by *ajīva* that which can be touched, tasted, seen and smelt. These four characteristics belong to '*puḍgala*' only

1. Aṣṭa-sahasrī, pp. 147-8.

2. Indian Philosophy, Vol. I. p. 314.

which is *rūpin*.<sup>1</sup> In other words, it is matter which can be touched, tasted, seen and smelt, because matter has gross form. *Ajīva* is not only matter but something more. The medium of motion, the medium of rest, space and time also fall in the category of *ajīva*. The following table will clearly show the real position :



The last four categories of *ajīva* are formless.<sup>2</sup> Hence, they cannot be touched, tasted, seen or smelt. It is the *rūpin* only which can be touched etc. Such substance is '*pudgala*'. Therefore, the four characteristics of form can be ascribed to '*pudgala*' (matter) only and not to '*ajīva*' as a whole. '*Pudgala*' (matter) is a part of *ajīva*, and it is needless to say that the characteristics of a part cannot be attributed to the whole. The criterion of '*ajīva*' is non-consciousness. Hence, from the dualistic point of view, the conscious substance is *jīva*, while the unconscious substance is *ajīva*.<sup>3</sup>

### Canonical Conception of Classification :

In the Bhagavatī-sūtra substance is classified into two divisions. These two divisions are the same as we have already

1. *Rūpīṇaḥ pudgalāḥ* –Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 5.

2. *Nityāvasthitānyarūpāni* – Ibid., V. 4.

3. Bhagavatī-sūtra, XXV. 2; XXV. 4.

discussed. There is a further classification of the *ajīva* substance. It is divided into '*rūpin*' and '*arūpin*'. The '*rūpin*' substance is *pudgalāstikāya* alone. The '*arūpin*' one is divided into '*dharmāstikāya*' (medium of motion), '*adharmāstikāya*' (medium of rest), '*ākāśāstikāya*' (space) and '*addhāsamaya*' (time). The first four '*ajīva*' substances, viz., '*pudgala*' (matter), '*dharma*' (medium of motion), '*adharmā*' (medium of rest) and '*ākāśa*' (space) and '*jīva*' are called '*astikāyas*' meaning thereby 'substances having extension'. Here it should be noted that the term 'extension' is not used by the Jaina in the realistic sense of material extension. The Jaina conception of 'extension' is a unique one. It is as follows :

As these exist, they are called '*asti*' by the great Jinās, and because they have many '*pradeśas*', like bodies, therefore, they are called '*kāyas*'. Hence, these are called *astikāyas* (extensive substances).<sup>1</sup>

To be more clear, let us understand what is meant by a '*pradeśa*'. It has been defined to be that part of space which is covered by one indivisible atom of matter.<sup>2</sup> Such '*pradeśas*' contain not only the atoms of matter, but also the particles of other substances. '*Jīva*', '*pudgala*', '*dharma*', '*adharmā*' and '*ākāśa*' have many '*pradeśas*', as these consist of many indivisible parts. The particles of these are mixed up or capable of being mixed up. The last substance, viz., '*addhāsamaya*' (time) consists of particles which never mix up, and consequently, each of these particles occupies a particular '*pradeśa*'. Thus, time is said to have a single '*pradeśa*'. Therefore, '*addhāsamaya*' is not an extensive substance. The '*addhāsamaya*' substance is also called '*kāla*'.

1. Dravya-saṅgraha, 24.

2. Ibid., 27.

Thus, we can broadly divide substance into three categories :

1. That which is conscious and has no form. '*Jīva*' alone is such.
2. That which is non-conscious and has some form. '*Pudgala*' falls in this category.
3. That which is non-conscious and has no form. '*Dharma*', '*adharma*', '*ākāśa*' and '*addhāsamaya*' are of this category.

Another division is also possible. It consists of '*astikāya*' and '*anastikāya*'.

1. That which has more than one '*pradeśa*', whether they are countable, innumerable or infinite, is known as '*astikāya*'. '*Jīva*', '*dharma*', '*adharma*', '*ākāśa*' and '*pudgala*' constitute this variety.
2. That which has only one '*pradeśa*' is called '*anastikāya*'. Such substance is '*addhāsamaya*' or '*kāla*' alone.

The following tables will clearly show the scheme :

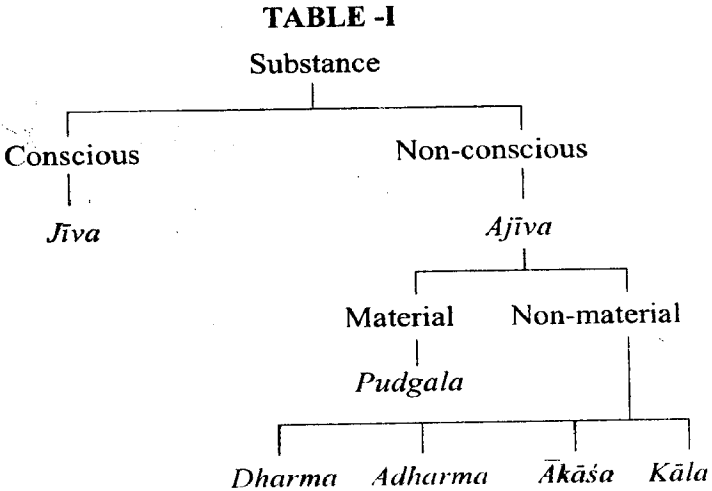
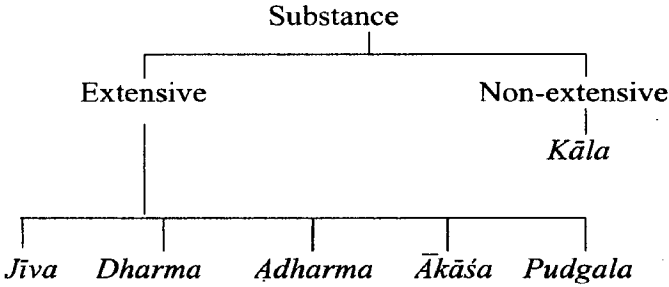


TABLE II



Almost all the Realists of Indian thought except the Naiyāyikas and Vaiśeṣikas divided reality into two broad categories. These categories are known as spirit and matter, soul and matter, ideas and matter, *Puruṣa* and *Prakṛti* or subject and object. The materialistic school of Realism is not included in this scheme, because it is not dualistic. None of the Realists tried to divide reality exactly in the same sense as Jainism did. So far as consciousness is concerned, Jainism joins hands with the other Realists, but as regards the conception of non-conscious substance, it differs from them. The Jaina conception of non-conscious substance, is not in the sense of matter. It includes some non-material substances as well.

Jainism holds that there are not only two categories of reality, viz., consciousness and matter, but there is a third category as well which is non-conscious and non-material. Neither is it necessary that what is non-conscious must be material nor is it essential that what is non-material must be conscious. There is a third category which is non-material but non-conscious. It should not be forgotten that matter is that substance which has form, i. e., which can be touched, tasted, smelt and seen. '*Dharma*', '*adharmā*', '*ākāśa*', and '*kāla*' are non-conscious but not material. They cannot be touched, tasted, smelt or seen.

To sum up : There are six substances according to the pluralistic conception of the Jainas. They are as follows :



1. *Jāvāstikāya* – Extensive, conscious, non-material substance.
2. *Pudgalāstikāya* – Extensive, non-conscious, material substance.
3. *Dharmāstikāya* – Extensive, non-conscious, non-material substance in the form of the medium of motion.
4. *Adharmāstikāya* – Extensive, non-conscious, non-material substance in the form of the medium of rest.
5. *Ākāśāstikāya* – Extensive, non-conscious, non-material substance in the form of space.
6. *Addhāsamaya (kāla)* – Non-extensive, non-conscious, non-material substance (time).

Now, we propose to explain each of these substances in detail.

### **Jīvāstikāya :**

The fundamental characteristic of 'jīva' is 'upayoga'.<sup>1</sup> Because of its formlessness it cannot be perceived by the sense-organs. It can be known by introspection and inference. Now, what is 'upayoga' ? The criterion of 'upayoga' is consciousness. In the technical language of Jainism, this consciousness is called 'bodha.' When this 'bodha' is evolved in a particular fashion, it becomes knowledge. To explain the term 'upayoga' it is further mentioned that *upayoga* is of two kinds : determinate and indeterminate.<sup>2</sup> Determinate *upayoga* is further divided into eight categories. These categories are : *mati-jñāna, śruta-jñāna, avadhi-jñāna, maṇḍ-paryāya-jñāna, kevala-jñāna, mati-ajñāna, śruta-ajñāna and avadhi-ajñāna (vibhaṅga-jñāna)*. Indeterminate *upayoga* is divided into four categories. They are : *Cakṣurdarśana, acakṣurdarśana, avadhi-darśana and kevala-darśana*. According to Jainism, there are infinite *jīvas* in the universe and each *Jīva* has

1. *Upayogo lakṣaṇam* — Tattvārtha-sūtra, II. 8.

2. *Sa dvividhoṣṭacaturbhedaḥ* — Ibid., II. 9.

innumerable *pradeśas*.<sup>1</sup> It is not all pervasive. 'By contraction and expansion of its *pradeśas* a soul is capable of occupying varying proportions of the countless *pradeśas* of the universe, just like the flame of a lamp whose light can fill a small room as well as a big hall.<sup>2</sup> As has been observed by Umāsvāti : 'If the space is divided into innumerable parts, the size of a soul can be so small as to occupy one or more of these parts'<sup>3</sup> One part should not be confined to one *pradeśa* but it should be taken as having innumerable *pradeśas*, since the innumerability of the spatial *pradeśas* is of innumerable kinds. In special cases the size of a single soul can fill the whole universe. 'By the contraction and expansion of *pradeśas*, the soul occupies space like the light from a lamp.'<sup>4</sup> It can occupy the smallest possible body, viz., that of a bacterium or the biggest body of a great fish (*mahāmaccha*). The soul becomes equal in extent to a small or a large body by contraction and expansion.<sup>5</sup> This view about the size of the soul is bitterly criticised by the other philosophers of India. No school of Indian philosophy but Jainism regards the soul as equal in extent to the body it occupies.

Such souls are infinite in number, but there are two broad divisions, viz., worldly souls and liberated souls.<sup>6</sup> The worldly souls are further divided onto two classes : mobile (*trasa*) and immobile (*sthāvara*).<sup>7</sup> The mobile souls are again divided into five-sensed, four-sensed, three-sensed and two-sensed *jīvas*. The immobile souls are divided into five categories: those living in the bodies of earth, water, fire, air and vegetable. The following table will show the classification:

---

1. Ibid., V. 7-8.

2. Tattvārtha-sūtra, III. 14.

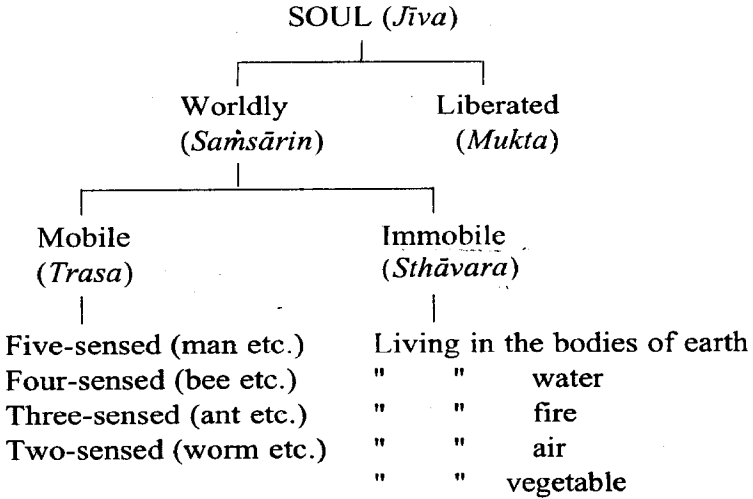
3. *Asaṅkhyeyabhāgādiu jīvanām* — Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 15.

4. *Pradeśasaṁhāra visargābhyām pradīpavat* — Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 16.

5. *Dravya-saṅgraha*, 10.

6. *Samisāriṇo muktāśca* — Tattvārtha-sūtra, II. 10.

7. Ibid., II. 12.



Those *jāvas* that possess five sense-organs, viz., those of touch, taste, smell, sight and hearing are called five-sensed *jīvas*. Those possessing four sense-organs, viz., those of touch, taste, smell and sight are four-sensed. Having three sense-organs, viz., those of touch, taste and smell are known as three-sensed souls. Those who possess only two sense-organs, viz., those of touch and taste are called two-sensed *jīvas*. The immobile *jīvas* possess only one sense-organ, viz., that of touch. They are known as *prthvīkāya*, *apkāya*, *tejaskāya*, *vāyukāya* and *vanaspatikāya*. They possess the forms of earth, water, fire, air and vegetable.

### **Pudgalāstikāya :**

It has already been mentioned that '*pudgala*' is nothing but matter. Matter is '*rūpin*'. In other words, it has touch, taste, smell and colour. It consists of numerable, innumerable and infinite parts according as we consider the different molecular combinations.<sup>1</sup> The indivisible elementary particle of matter is *anu* (atom). It has only one *pradeśa* because the criterion of *pradeśa* itself is based on *anu*. One atom

1. Niyama-sāra, 35.

will necessarily occupy one *pradeśa*. But it is not necessary that one *pradeśa* would always be occupied by one atom only because of the contraction and expansion of atoms in molecules.

Matter is of two varieties : in the form of an atom (*aṇu*) and in the form of a molecule (*skandha*). That substance which is the beginning, the middle and the end by itself and is indivisible should be known as atom. In other words, atom is the smallest possible part of matter. Atom as a unit is inapprehensible by the sense-organs. It is perceptible only in the form of *skandha*. Atoms are produced only by division.<sup>1</sup> When any molecule is dissolved into the smallest possible atoms, the atoms so obtained are called effect-atoms (*kārya-paramāṇus*). Those atoms which cause the formation of four root matters — earth, water, fire and air are called cause-atoms (*kāraṇa-paramāṇus*). Each and every atom is potentially capable of forming earth, water, fire or air. According to the Jainas, there are no distinct and separate atoms of earth, water etc. The school of Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika does not agree with this view.

*Skandha* is formed in three different ways :

- (1) By *bheda* (division)
- (2) By *saṅghāta* (union)
- (3) By the combined process of division and union taking place simultaneously.<sup>2</sup>

The manifestations of *pudgala* are found in the forms of sound, union, fineness, grossness, figure, divisibility, darkness, shade or image, sunshine and moonlight.<sup>3</sup>

1. *Bhedādaṇuḥ* — Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 27.

2. *Bhedasaṅghātebhya utpadyante* — Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 26.

3. *Ibid.*, V. 24.

### Dharmāstikāya :

This substance as the medium of motion is defined by Umāsvāti as permanent, fixed and without form. *Dharmāstikāya* is only one. It is not capable of moving from one place to another. The whole universe (*loka*) is the place of *dharmāstikāya*.<sup>1</sup>

Now, what is the nature of this substance ? It is helpful in supporting the motion of souls and matter. What does it mean ? It means that although the souls and matter have the capacity of moving, yet, they cannot move unless the medium of motion is present in the universe. The medium of motion does not create motion but only helps those who have already got the capacity of moving. It is the medium through which motion takes place. As for instance, a fish swims in water. Here, water does not create swimming but it only helps the fish that has the tendency of swimming. As water helps fish in swimming, the *jīvāstikāya* and *pudgalāstikāya* are helped by *dharmāstikāya* when the former tend to move. The medium of motion (*dharmāstikāya*) is non-material substance possessing no consciousness. It is permanent as well as fixed and one. Everything can penetrate it without any obstruction. It consists of innumerable *pradeśas*, because the universe-space possesses countless spatial units.

### Adharmāstikāya :

The auxiliary cause of rest to the soul and matter is called medium of rest (*adharmāstikāya*).<sup>2</sup> It is a single non-material substance pervading through the whole of the universe. There are countless points of *adharmāstikāya* as those of *dharmāstikāya*. *Adharmāstikāya* is as helpful with respect to rest as *dharmāstikāya* is regarding motion. As a tree is helpful to a

1. Ibid., V.3, 5 . 6, 7, 13.

2. Niyama-sāra, .30.

person who is coming from a far distance in the hot sun and wants to have some rest under it, so is the nature of *adharmāstikāya* to help the souls and matter when they take rest. Both these substances have the capability of rest but unless there is the medium of rest, they cannot take rest. Hence, it is called the auxiliary cause of rest. *Dharma* and *adharma* pervade all the parts of the universe as oil pervades the whole of a mustard seed. The concept of *dharma* and *adharma* as the categories of substance is a unique contribution of Jain philosophy.

### Ākāśastikāya :

Know that which is capable of allowing space to the *jīvas*, *puḍgala*, *dharma*, *adharma* and *kāla* to be *ākāśa*, according to Jainism. *Ākāśa* is eternal, all-pervasive, all the objects of the universe exist in it and it has no form.<sup>1</sup> It is a single substance having infinite *pradeśas*. *Ākāśastikāya* is of two divisions : *lokākāśa* and *alokākāśa*. *Loka* is that place in which *dharma*, *adharma*, *kāla*, *puḍgala* and *jīvas* exist. That which is beyond this *lokākāśa* is called *alokākāśa*.<sup>2</sup> Jainism believes in two varieties of space. One is called *lokākāśa* or that space in which all other substances exist. This variety of space is called 'universe' in our ordinary language. Jainism does not believe in this universe-space only but admits space beyond the universe as well. It holds that the universe-space is only *lokākāśa*. There is *alokākāśa* as well which is pure space. In this space, no substance of the universe exists, hence, it is called *alokākāśa*. This division is not in *ākāśa* itself but it is due to its relation with the other five substances. When it is relatively divided into *lokākāśa* and *alokākāśa*, *lokākāśa* has innumerable *pradeśas*, while *alokākāśa* has infinite *pradeśas*.

1. Vardhamāna-purāṇa, XVI. 31.

2. Dravya-saṅgraha, 19.

Having taken innumerable *pradeśas*, i.e., the *pradeśas* of *lokākāśa* from *ākāśa* as a whole, the remaining *pradeśas* of *alokākāśa* are still infinite.<sup>1</sup> Space is self-supported, while the other substances are not so. They are accommodated in it.

### **Addhāsamaya or Kāla :**

*Kāla* (time) is defined by Nemicandra from two stand-points. *Vyavahāra-kāla* (time from ordinary point of view) is that which helps to produce changes in a substance and which is known from modifications produced in it, while *Pāramārthika*, i.e., real *kāla* is understood from continuity.<sup>2</sup> Let us explain it. According to Jainism, *kāla* is viewed from two view-points. Really speaking, *kāla* is nothing but the auxiliary cause of change. This change is understood from continuity. Without continuity we cannot understand change at all. If there is no continuity, what is that which changes ? Hence, continuity is the ground of change. From ordinary point of view, *kāla* is understood in hours, minutes, seconds etc., by which we call a thing to be new or old according to changes produced in the same. These two types of time are technically called '*kāla*' and '*samaya*' respectively. *Kāla* is eternal and devoid of form. *Samaya* has a beginning and an end, and consists of varieties, viz., hour, minute etc. *Kāla* may be said to be the substantial cause of *Samaya*.

*Kāla* consists of minute particles which never mix up with one another. The universe is full of these particles of time. No space-unit of the universe is devoid of it. Every space-unit contains time-unit. Hence, it is said that the particles of time are indivisible, innumerable and without form. As it is remarked : 'Those innumerable substances which exist one by one in each *pradeśa* of *lokākāśa*, like heaps of jewels, are points of time.'<sup>3</sup>

1. Compare : *Pūrṇasya pūrṇamādāya pūrṇamevāvaśisyate*.

2. *Dravya-saṅgraha*, 21.

3. *Ibid.*, 22.

### Ethical Classification of Tattva :

Now, we proceed to the ethical classification of 'tattva' which is not less important than the previous one. In the Sthānāṅga-sūtra, *tattva* (*padārtha*) is divided into nine categories. In philosophical works like the Samayasāra etc., we find the same classification. These nine categories are as follows : 1. *jīva* (soul), 2. *ajīva* (non-soul), 3. *puṇya* (good karma), 4. *pāpa* (bad karma), 5. *āsrava* (influx of karma), 6. *bandha* (bondage of karma), 7. *saṁvara* (prevention of the influx of karma), 8. *nirjarā* (partial annihilation of karma) and 9. *mokṣa* (total annihilation of karma) :

We have already discussed the nature of *jīva* and *ajīva* and established the fact that the whole universe is nothing but *jīva* and *ajīva*. It is but natural to ask that when the whole reality is divided into two categories, what else remains which makes the latter seven categories necessary. The Jaina thinkers answer this question from ethical point of view. They say that the whole reality is divided into *jīva* and *ajīva*, and we do not deny this. The latter seven categories are necessitated by the consideration of the problem of the concept of *mokṣa* (emancipation). The worldly *jīvas* are bound by karma from beginningless time and they tend to liberate themselves from this strong karmic chain. They do not like bondage but try to attain liberation according to the best of their present capacity. Hence, liberation (*mokṣa*) is our goal. When we accept this category as our life-aim, we naturally desire to know the obstacles which stand in our way. How do these obstacles originate and how might they be removed ? What is the nature of these obstacles ? All these questions are answered by the postulation of the latter seven categories. In other words, the latter seven categories are different conditions and forms of *jīva* and *ajīva*.



We have described the nature of *jīva* and *ajīva*. We propose to give, now, a brief account of the nature of the remaining seven categories.

### **Puṇya :**

The essential characteristic of *jīva* is consciousness, purity and bliss but through the beginningless chain of karmas, bondage is there and the *jīvas* enjoy weal (*puṇya*) or woe (*pāpa*). *Puṇya* is produced by our auspicious *bhāvas* (activities). The auspicious *bhāvas* are said to consist of freedom from delusion, acquirement of right faith and knowledge, practice of reverence, observance of the five vows, etc. The manifestation of *puṇya* consists in *sātā-vedanīya* (feeling of pleasure), *śubha-āyus* (auspicious life), *śubha-nāman* (auspicious physique) and *śubha-gotra* (auspicious heredity).<sup>1</sup>

### **Pāpa :**

*Pāpa* is produced by inauspicious *bhāvas*. These *bhāvas* consist of delusion, wrong faith and knowledge, violence, falsity, stealing, indulgence, attachment, anger, pride, deceitfulness, greed etc. The manifestation of *pāpa* consists in *asātā-vedanīya* (feeling of pain), *aśubha-āyus* (inauspicious life), *aśubha-nāman* (inauspicious body) and *aśubha-gotra* (inauspicious heredity).<sup>2</sup>

Some writers like Umāsvāti and others have recognised only seven categories.<sup>3</sup> They did not regard *puṇya* and *pāpa* as separate and distinct categories. These two categories were included in *āsrava* and *bandha*. It has been observed by Umāsvāti that *puṇya* and *pāpa* are nothing but the auspicious and inauspicious influx of karmas.<sup>4</sup>

1. *Sadvedyaśubhāyurnāmagotrāṇi puṇyam*—Tattvārtha-sūtra. VIII. 25.

2. *Atonyat pāpam* —Tattvārtha-sūtra, VIII. 26.

3. *Jivājīvāsra-bandhasamvaranirjarāmokṣāstattvam* — Ibid., I, 4.

4. *Subhah puṇyasya: aśubhah pāpasya* — Ibid., VI. 3-4.

**Āsrava :**

*Āsrava* is divided into '*bhāvāsrava*' and '*dravyāsrava*'. That modification of soul by which karma gets into it, is known as *bhāvāsrava*. *Dravyāsrava* is the karmic matter itself which enters the soul.<sup>1</sup> In other words, *bhāvāsrava* is nothing but activities, while *dravyāsrava* is a peculiar type of matter. Umāsvāti did not make such an explicit difference between *bhāvāsrava* and *dravyāsrava*. According to his definition, *āsrava* is nothing but the actions of body, speech and mind.<sup>2</sup>

**Bandha :**

That conscious state by which karma is bound with the soul is called *bhāva-bandha*, while the interpenetration of the *pradeśas* of karma and the soul is called *dravya-bandha*. Now, how does this *bandha* (bondage) come into existence ? That modification of consciousness consisting of *kaṣāyas*, i.e., anger, pride, deceit and greed by which karmas are tied to the soul is the cause of *bandha*.<sup>3</sup> In other words, it is attachment and aversion that constitute the fundamental cause of *bandha*.

First of all there is influx of karmic particles through *āsrava*. Then there are some activities of consciousness which are responsible for a peculiar kind of bondage. It is called *bhāva-bandha*. After this *bhāva-bandha* there is union of the *jīva* with the actual karmas. This union which consists of the interpenetration of the soul and the karmas is known as *dravya-bandha*.

*Bandha* is of four kinds, according to its *prakṛti* (nature), *sthiti* (duration), *anubhāga* (intensity) and *pradeśas* (mass).<sup>4</sup>

1. Dravya-saṅgraha, 29.

2. *Kāyavānmanahkarma yogah: sa āsravaḥ* --- Tattvārtha-sūtra, VI. 1-2.

3. Ibid., VIII, 2-3.

4. Dravya-saṅgraha, 33.

The *prakṛti* and *pradeśas* of bondage result from the activities of thought, speech and body, while the *sthiti* and *anubhāga* result from the conditions of attachment and aversion.<sup>1</sup>

### Samvara :

It is the antagonistic principle of *āsrava*.<sup>2</sup> It is also classified into two kinds, according to the internal and external nature of it. That modification of consciousness which is the cause of checking *bhāva-āsrava* is known as *bhāva-samvara* and that by which *dravya-āsrava* is checked is known as *dravya-samvara*.

It is divided into seven varieties, : *vrata* (vow), *samiti* (carefulness), *gupti* (restraint), *dharmā* (observance), *anupreksā* (meditation), *parīśahajaya* (victory over troubles) and *cāritra* (conduct). Each of these, again, is divided into various sub-classes.

The above-mentioned classification is from the *Dravya-saṅgraha*. The *Tattvārtha-sūtra* does not mention '*vrata*' as a variety. It mentions '*tapas*' (penance) in place of '*vrata*'.<sup>3</sup>

### Nirjarā :

That modification of soul by which the matter of karma disappears partially is called *bhāva-nirjarā*. The destruction itself is known as *dravya-nirjarā*. Thus, *nirjarā* is the partial destruction of the karmas which are bound with the soul. This type of partial destruction takes place in two ways : (1) The matter of karma disappears in proper time after the fruits of such karma are enjoyed. (2) The matter of karma is destroyed through penances before the actual period of enjoyment comes.<sup>4</sup>

1. Ibid.

2. *Āsravanirodhaḥ samivarah* --- *Tattvārtha-sūtra*. IX. 1.

3. *Tapasā nirjarā ca* --- Ibid., IX. 3.

4. *Tattvārtha-sāra*, VII. 2.

**Mokṣa :**

That modification of soul which is the cause of the total destruction of karmas is known as *bhāva-mokṣa* and the actual separation of the karmic matter is called *dravya-mokṣa*. After attaining this stage the soul is never bound again. As Umāsvāti says : A person attains *kevala-jñāna* (omniscience) when first his *mohanīya* karma and then his *jñānāvaraṇīya*, *darśanāvaraṇīya* and *antarāya* karmas are destroyed. After attaining *kevala-jñāna*, the cause producing bondage being absent and *nirjarā* being present, he becomes free from the remaining karmas, i.e., the *vedanīya*, *āyus*, *nāman* and *gotra* karmas in due course, and thus, being void of all kinds of karmas attains final liberation.<sup>1</sup>




---

1. Ibid. X. 1-3.

## CHAPTER IV

### SOUL

The complicated problem of the existence of soul has troubled almost all the great minds of the world. There have been such philosophers who did not believe in an independent existence of soul like the Cārvākas in India and earlier Greek philosophers as Thales, Anaximander, Anaximenes, Heraclitus and the like. In the times of Lord Mahāvīra such thoughts were not altogether absent. He attempted in a successful manner to prove the independent existence of soul.

#### Arguments for the Existence of Soul :

Lord Mahāvīra in the opening presents the views of those opponents who do not believe in an independent existence of soul. "O Indrabhūti ! you have a doubt about the existence of soul (*jīva*), since it is not directly perceived by the senses as is the case with a jar (*ghaṭa*). And so you argue that whatever is imperceptible does not exist in the world, e.g., a flower in the sky."<sup>1</sup>

Some one may here argue that though *aṇus* (atoms) are not within the range of perception, yet, they do exist. So what about them ? The answer is that no doubt they are imperceptible to us as *aṇus*, but when they are so transformed as to perform the function of a jar etc., they no longer remain so. Such is not, however, the case with the soul. It never attains a stage when it can be directly perceived.

"The soul is not an object of inference, because inference, too, is preceded by perception and is the outcome of the

---

1. Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1549.

recollection of the universal concomitance. There has not been previously seen any connection between soul (major term) and its *līṅga* (middle term), the recollection of which, along with the sight of its *līṅga*, can lead us to a conviction about the existence of soul."<sup>1</sup>

"The soul is not even within the range of scriptural authority, because scripture is not quite distinct from inference. Moreover, the soul is not directly perceptible to any one whose words make up scripture."<sup>2</sup>

There is none to whom the soul is an object of direct perception. Had there been any one of that type, his word would have been looked upon as scriptural authority and on the basis of that scripture the existence of soul would have been admitted.

"Furthermore, the scriptural authorities are mutually contradictory. Consequently, on that account, too, the doubt is justifiable. You, therefore, believe that the existence of soul cannot be established by any of the means of valid cognition."<sup>3</sup>

The existence of soul cannot be established even by the means of analogy, because in the entire universe there is no object whatsoever that resembles the soul.

Even implication does not help in proving the existence of soul. There does not exist any such object seen or heard whose postulation can prove the independent existence of soul.

Thus, when the existence of soul cannot be proved by any of the five means of valid cognition, each of which establishes the existence of an object, it automatically follows that it comes within the range of negation (*abhāva*), the sixth means of valid cognition whose function is to establish non-existence.

---

1. Ibid., 1550-1.

2. Ibid., 1552.

3. Ibid., 1553.

Thus, it is proved that soul does not exist. This is, in brief, the view of the opponent — the thesis (*pūrva pakṣa*).

Now, Lord Mahāvīra refutes the arguments of the opponent in the following manner :

"O Gautama ! the soul is indeed directly cognizable to you as well. Your knowledge about it which consists of doubt etc., is itself the soul. What is proved by your own experience need not be proved by other means of cognition. No proof is required to establish the existence of happiness, misery etc.

Or, the soul is directly experienced owing to the '*ahampratyaya*' (realisation as 'I') in 'I did, I do, and I shall do' the realisation which is associated with the functions pertaining to all the three tenses.

If there is no soul, how do you realise '*aham*' ? How can there be a doubt whether soul is or not ? Or, if there is a doubt, in whose case is this '*ahampratyaya*' justifiable?"

This argument for the existence of soul is advanced from the psychological point of view. The various aspects of cognition, viz., memory, recognition, doubt, judgment etc., are never possible, if there is no soul. All these psychological functions are centred in a conscious and sentient entity which is not material but spiritual. Cognition, feeling and conation are not possible unless we regard the existence of a spiritual entity or substance as the source of all these phenomena. All the three aspects of our mental life, viz., knowing, feeling and willing, are not scattered phenomena. The process of memory certainly proves the existence of soul. The four stages of memory, viz., retention, recall, recognition and localisation, are systematically connected with one another and the source of this systematic connection is the soul. A purely material brain cannot work in such a systematic and well adjusted manner.

---

1. Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1554-6.

The problem of doubt and doubter is rather ontological. Just like the Sāṅkhya system that proves the separate existence of *Puruṣa* on the ground of '*adhiṣṭhāna*', Lord Mahāvīra proved the existence of soul on the ground of doubt. He argued that without a doubter who is beyond all kinds of doubt but still remains in all doubts, no doubt is possible. Doubt presupposes the existence of a doubter as its ground. That ground is a soul, a self, a sentient being, a conscious principle. "If the object about which one has doubt is certainly non-existent, who has a doubt as to whether I do exist or I do not exist ? Or, Gautama ! when you yourself are doubtful about yourself, what can be free from doubt ?"<sup>1</sup>

He further says : "The soul which is the substratum (*guṇin*) of attributes is self-evident owing to its attributes (*guṇas*) being self-evident, as is the case with a pitcher. For on realising the attributes (*guṇas*) the substratum (*guṇin*), too, is realised."<sup>2</sup>

Substance cannot exist without qualities and qualities have no place absolutely independent of substance. If the qualities are experienced, the experience of the substance is apparent. The qualities of soul such as perception, intuition etc. are quite evident. These qualities cannot have an absolutely independent existence. Hence, the existence of the soul to which all these qualities belong, is quite obvious.

The opponent may admit that there is a '*guṇin*' (substance) which is the substratum of the qualities like knowledge etc., but he may refuse to believe that this substance is something else than a body. That is to say, he looks upon the body itself as thē substance in question, because the qualities are found only in the body. The argument is like this: Knowledge etc. are the qualities of a body, because they are observed there and there only like other attributes of the body, such as its whiteness, fatness, thinness etc.

---

1. Ibid., 1557.

2. Ibid., 1558.



The answer is : The qualities like knowledge etc. cannot belong to the material body, for the body is '*rūpin*' (with form), as is the case with a pitcher. The qualities of a substance having form must be with form (*rūpin*). Knowledge etc. are formless. Therefore, the substance possessing these qualities, too, must be formless, and hence, it cannot be the body which is with form. Thus, that substance which is formless is nothing but the soul.

Secondly, sometimes it is seen that the qualities like perception, memory etc. are absent even when the body is present as in sound sleep, death etc.<sup>1</sup> It indicates that knowledge etc. are not the qualities of body but they belong to a separate substance, i.e., soul.

Thirdly, the body cannot be the cause of knowledge, because it is composed of material elements (*bhūtas*) which do not possess consciousness. The effect must exist in the cause implicitly. If the material elements do not possess consciousness as one of their qualities, how is it possible that the body becomes conscious ? If consciousness is absent in each of the material elements, it will necessarily be absent in the combination as well. As oil is absent in each particle of sand, it cannot be produced from the combination also.<sup>2</sup> Hence, it is illogical to maintain that consciousness is merely a by-product of some peculiar amalgamation of the four *mahābhūtas* (primary elements), although none of them possesses it separately. The intoxicating nature of wine is not absent in those objects by which it is produced. Intoxication is not a mere by-product. It is systematically produced by those objects in which it exists implicitly. The patent nature of intoxication is merely a manifestation of its latent nature. It is not a product which is quite strange. Hence, consciousness cannot be ascribed to the body. All the spiritual qualities reside in a separate conscious substance. A thing which is absolutely non-existent

1. Prameya-kamala-mārtaṇḍa, p. 114.

2. Śāstra-vārtā-samuccaya, 44.

cannot come into existence like sky-flower or a horn on the head of a hare. A thing which is existent cannot be absolutely non-existent like the material elements.<sup>1</sup> If consciousness is absolutely non-existent, it can never come into existence. It exists in the soul because the soul is the principle of consciousness.

Fourthly, a person who does not accept the existence of soul, cannot make a negative judgment in the case of an absolutely non-existent object. Even the existence of sky-flower is not absolutely negative, for both sky and flower exist. The conjunction (*saṃyoga*) of sky and flower is non-existent, not the objects themselves. Hence, the negation of soul itself proves the existence of soul. If there is no soul, whose negation is this ?

Fifthly, the word '*jīva*' is synonymous with the word 'soul.' This word '*jīva*' is significant, for it has a derivation (*vyutpatti*) and it is a singular whole (*śuddha pada*). Whatever is a singular whole and has a derivation is here seen to be one having a meaning. Pitcher etc. may be mentioned as instances. So is the word '*jīva*'. Therefore, it, too, has a meaning. What is not significant and has no meaning, is wanting in derivation, and besides, it is not a singular whole. *Ḍittha*, sky-flower etc. are words of this type, for the former has no derivation, whereas the latter is not a singular whole. Such is not the case with the word '*jīva*'. Therefore, it is significant and has a meaning.<sup>2</sup> The meaning is nothing but the concept of soul. This argument is etymological in nature.

### **Definition of Soul :**

The defining characteristic of soul is *jīvatva* which means *cetanā*. When we use the word consciousness as the criterion of soul, we only mean *cetanā* by it. It is *cetanā* alone which does not exist in any substance other than the soul. Hence, the

1. Śāstra-vārtā-samuccaya, 76.

2. Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1575.

main line of demarcation between *jīva* and *ajīva* is *cetanā*. Existence, origination, decay, permanence etc. are the general characteristics of all the substances, therefore, when the Jainas define *jīva* as a substance possessing *cetanā* or consciousness, they do not exclude all these general qualities (*sādhāraṇa dharmas*). These qualities are included in consciousness itself. The definition of a particular substance consists of only those special qualities which are not found in other substances.<sup>1</sup> When a substance is taken as a whole, or in other words, if we want to refer to all its characteristics, we analyse its complete nature. That analysis is not definition. It is proper to call it description.

Consciousness consists of knowledge and intuition (*jñāna* and *darśana*). In the Tattvārtha-sūtra, the definition of soul in the shape of *upayoga* is very liberal. It includes bliss and power in it. Strictly speaking, soul is that substance which possesses four infinities (*ananta catuṣṭaya*). These four infinities are infinite knowledge, infinite intuition, infinite bliss and infinite power. A liberated soul possesses all these infinities. The worldly *jīvas* do not possess them in their perfection, because they are obscured by the veil of four obstructive (*ghātin*) karmas, viz., *jñānāvaraṇīya* (covering the faculty of knowledge), *darśanāvaraṇīya* (covering the faculty of intuition), *mohanīya* (covering the faculty of bliss) and *antarāya* (covering the faculty of power). The liberated souls as well as the omniscients are absolutely free from these four kinds of karmas,<sup>2</sup> hence, they possess the four infinities in all perfection. Thus, the definition of soul consists in the possession of the four infinities.

### **Difference between Darśana and Jñāna :**

The difference between intuition (*darśana*) and knowledge (*jñāna*) consists in the fact that in the former the

1. Tattvārtha-śloka-vārtika, p. 318.

2. *Mohakṣayājñānadarśanāvaraṇāntarāyākṣayācca kevalam* — Tattvārtha-sūtra, X. 1.

details are not perceived, while in the latter the details are also known. In the technical language of Jainism, *darśana* is known as *nirākāra-upayoga*, while *jñāna* is called *sākāra-upayoga*. 'Before we know a thing in a detailed way, there is the stage where we simply see, hear, or otherwise become conscious of it in a general way, without going into its ins and outs. We simply know it as belonging to a class. This is the first stage of knowledge. It may be called detail-less knowledge or indefinite cognition. If this stage is not experienced, there can be no knowledge of the thing.'<sup>1</sup> This statement of Herbert Warren is correct to some extent, because 'to know a thing as belonging to a class' is the first stage of *jñāna* which arises after *darśana*. according to some Jaina thinkers. They say that the cognition of a thing as belonging to a class is *avagraha jñāna* (sensation).<sup>2</sup> According to them, *darśana* is the primitive stage or the first stage of cognition where we are only aware of an object. This simple awareness without any reference to a particularity or generality may be called *darśana*. In this awareness, the knowledge contains only existence, i.e., '*sattāmātra*'. This kind of knowledge originates just after the contact between the subject and the object. This state of cognition is the preceding stage of sensation proper. In other words, according to these thinkers, sensation is divided into two categories or two stages. The first stage where we have only awareness of the object is called *darśana* (sensation of existence). The second stage where we have sensation of the object as belonging to a class is called *jñāna* (sensation proper).

There are some thinkers who define *darśana* as the cognition of generality. Such thinkers regard *avagraha* (sensation) as a stage of *darśana*.<sup>3</sup> The difference between *darśana* and *jñāna*, however, consists in the fact that in the former the details are not perceived, while in the latter the

1. Jainism, P. 29.

2. Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka, II. 7.

3. Sanmati-tarka-prakaraṇa, II. 21.

details are also known. In other words, *darśana* is indeterminate, while *jñāna* is determinate ; *darśana* is *nirākāra*, while *jñāna* is *sākāra*.

### Jñāna-upayoga :

*Jñāna-upayoga* is of two kinds : *svabhāva-jñāna* (natural knowledge) and *vibhāva-jñāna* (non-natural knowledge).<sup>1</sup> Natural knowledge is independent of the senses. It is direct as well as immediate. It is the innate attribute of soul. It is pure and perfect. The Jainas call it *kevala-jñāna*.

Non-natural knowledge is of two kinds : right knowledge and wrong knowledge. Right knowledge is further divided into four kinds :

1. Sensory knowledge (*mati-jñāna*).
2. Scriptural knowledge (*śruta-jñāna*).
3. Limited direct knowledge (*avadhi-jñāna*).
4. Direct knowledge of mind (*manah-paryāya-jñāna*).

Wrong knowledge is of three kinds :

1. Sensory wrong knowledge (*mati-ajñāna*).
2. Scriptural wrong knowledge (*śruta-ajñāna*).
3. Limited direct wrong knowledge (*vibhaṅga-jñāna*).<sup>2</sup>

Knowledge is the innate attribute of soul. It is pure and perfect. But, on account of the operation on the worldly soul of knowledge-obscuring karma in varying degrees, it is manifested to a greater or less extent. When knowledge-obscuring karma is altogether destroyed, the pure and perfect knowledge shines forth. This type of knowledge is called *svabhāva-jñāna*.

So long as the soul is in its worldly condition and is not altogether free from knowledge-obscuring karma, its knowledge is impure and imperfect, and so it is called *vibhāva-jñāna*.

1. *Nānuvaogo duviho sahāvanāṇaṃ vibhāvanāṇaṃ tti* — Niyama-sāra, 10.

2. *Matiśrutāvadhayo viparyayāśca* — Tattvārtha-sūtra. I. 32.

This *vibhāva-jñāna* is of two kinds : right knowledge and wrong knowledge. The conditions of rightness and wrongness are dependent on our belief. External matter is not responsible for them. The knowledge combined with right belief is right knowledge and the knowledge combined with wrong belief is wrong knowledge.

Again, right knowledge has been sub-divided into four kinds :

1. Sensory knowledge - knowledge of the self and non-self by means of the senses and mind.
2. Scriptural knowledge - knowledge derived from the reading or hearing of scriptures.
3. Limited direct knowledge - direct knowledge of matter in varying degrees.
4. Direct knowledge of mind - direct knowledge of another's mental activities.

The first three kinds are wrong as well as right. The fourth one is never wrong. Knowledge, thus, is divided into eight kinds :

1. Perfect or natural knowledge.
2. Right sensory knowledge.
3. Wrong sensory knowledge.
4. Right scriptural knowledge.
5. Wrong scriptural knowledge.
6. Right limited direct knowledge.
7. Wrong limited direct knowledge.
8. Direct knowledge of mind.

### **Darśana-upayoga :**

*Darśana-upayoga* is also of two kinds : natural intuition (*svabhāva-darśana*) and the opposite of it - non-natural intuition (*vibhāva-darśana*). Natural intuition is perfect and independent of the senses.

Non-natural intuition is said to be of three kinds:

1. Visual intuition (*cakṣurdarśana*).
2. Non-visual intuition (*acakṣurdarśana*).
3. Limited direct intuition (*avadhi-darśana*).

In visual intuition, the object is undefinedly visible.

In non-visual intuition, the object is undefinedly tangible to the other senses (including the mind).

In limited direct intuition, there is direct tangibility of material objects just preceding their knowledge, without the assistance of the senses (including the mind).

*Darśana*, thus, is divided into four kinds :

1. Perfect or natural intuition (*kevala-darśana*).
2. Visual intuition (*cakṣurdarśana*).
3. Non-visual intuition (*acakṣurdarśana*).
4. Limited direct intuition (*avadhi-darśana*).

### **Temporal Relation between Intuition and Knowledge :**

As regards the temporal relation between intuition and knowledge, there is no unanimity among Jaina philosophers. The canonical conception of the above-mentioned problem is that two conscious activities cannot occur simultaneously. Even two perfect conscious activities, viz., perfect intuition and perfect knowledge are not an exception. This fact is recorded in the *Āvaśyaka-niryukti* as 'the omniscient cannot have two conscious activities simultaneously'.<sup>1</sup> Therefore, as regards the canonical conception, it is free from doubt that intuition and knowledge - whether sensory or extra-sensory - cannot occur simultaneously. Regarding the occurrence of intuition and knowledge in imperfect persons, all the thinkers are unanimous, inasmuch as all of them admit the impossibility of the simultaneous occurrence of intuition and knowledge. But with respect to the case of perfect personalities, there is a great controversy among them. The opinions of these thinkers can be classified into three varieties. Some of them hold that the

---

1. *Savvassa kevalissa jugavaṃ do natthi uvaogā* — *Āvaśyakaniryukti*, 973.

intuition and knowledge (both extra-sensory) of an omniscient person occur simultaneously, some stick to the canonical conception and regard them as successive and not operating at the same time, while others assert that they are mutually identical. Let us deal with all the three.

### **Simultaneity of Intuition and knowledge :**

It is observed by Umāsvāti that the conscious activities manifesting themselves as sensory cognition, scriptural cognition, limited direct cognition and direct cognition of mind (*matī, śruta, avadhī* and *manahparyāya*) occur successively, and not simultaneously. The conscious activities of the omniscient, possessing perfect knowledge and intuition which comprehend all objects and are independent and pure, occur simultaneously at every moment.<sup>1</sup> Umāsvāti, thus, upholds the view of simultaneous occurrence of intuition and knowledge in the case of an omniscient being. Kundakunda also holds the same opinion. It is stated by him that the knowledge and intuition of an omniscient person operate at the same time even as the light and heat of the sun occur simultaneously.<sup>2</sup> Pūjyapāda is also of the same opinion. According to him, knowledge and intuition occur in succession in the imperfect who is under the influence of obstructive karma, while in the perfect who is completely free from the veil of obscuring karma, they occur simultaneously.<sup>3</sup> Akalaṅka also supports the same view. He says : 'If the knowledge and intuition of the omniscient were to occur in succession, his perfection would be conditional and accidental. To the omniscient who has destroyed all the relevant karmic veils, the universal and the particular reveal themselves simultaneously.<sup>4</sup> The same position is possessed by Vidyānandī who holds that the

1. Tattvārtha-bhāṣya, I. 31.

2. Niyama-sāra, 159.

3. Sarvārtha-siddhi, II. 9.

4. Aṣṭaśatī on Āptamīmāṃsā, 101.



awareness of the generic form is intuition and the comprehension of the specific characters is knowledge. The knowledge-obscuring karma and the intuition-obscuring karma obstruct these faculties. Because of the presence of these two, people like us are not in a position to possess intuition and knowledge in all perfection. There is no reason why the universal and the particular should be revealed only in alternate succession and not simultaneously when the two types of karma are destroyed simultaneously due to a particular kind of purification of the self.<sup>1</sup>

### **Successive Occurrence of Intuition and Knowledge :**

Now, we proceed to the problem of the successive occurrence of intuition and knowledge in the omniscient. Jinabhadra is a great advocate of this view. He has very elaborately dealt with the problem in his *Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya* and *Viśeṣaṇavāṭī*. He has mentioned all the three positions and advanced arguments for and against all of them. His own opinion is in favour of the successive occurrence, since he sincerely recognises the validity of the scriptural texts. He argues that if perfect intuition and perfect knowledge are identical and not separate, what is the sense in recognising two separate veils of karma, viz., intuition-obscuring karma and knowledge-obscuring karma? Moreover, the scriptural conception of five types of knowledge and four types of intuition is condemned by those who are not prepared to accept the successive occurrence of intuition and knowledge.<sup>2</sup> The view of the simultaneous occurrence of intuition and knowledge is also invalid, since two conscious activities cannot occur at the same instant.<sup>3</sup> Now, the opponent may argue that the simultaneous occurrence of the two in the imperfect is not possible, since he is under the influence of the veil of obstructive karma and thus not completely free from it; but in the case of the perfect

1. Aṣṭasaḥsṛī on Āpta-mīmāṃsā, 101.

2. Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 3093.

3. Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 3096.

who is completely free from obstructive karma, it is not an impossibility. This argument, according to Jinabhadra, is also futile. The faculty of the self is qualitatively the same whether it is partially free or completely free.<sup>1</sup> The cognition of the self is of the same type whether it is imperfect or perfect. The only difference between the two is that perfect cognition comprehends all the objects with all their modes, whereas imperfect knowledge does not comprehend all of them. Thus, Jinabhadra supports the alternate occurrence of intuition and knowledge in the omniscient on the basis of scripture.

### Intuition and Knowledge as Identical :

Now, we come to Siddhasena who did not recognise the intuition and knowledge of an omniscient being as two separate faculties. According to his logical mind, both these faculties are identical as regards the case of the omniscient. He observes: 'We can distinguish between knowledge and intuition up to direct cognition of mind (*manahparyāya*). In omniscience, however, knowledge and intuition are identical'.<sup>2</sup> He elaborates the remark in a systematic and logical way. When perfect knowledge dawns just after the complete destruction of the relevant karma, perfect intuition also must dawn immediately after the complete destruction of the veil of the relevant karma. And as it is unanimously admitted that both the destructions are simultaneous, it logically follows that both perfect intuition and perfect knowledge also occur at the same time.<sup>3</sup> As it is maintained that there is no sensory cognition, i.e., the senses do not serve any purpose as regards the cognition of the omniscient who has completely destroyed the karmic veil that obscures cognition, so also it should be admitted that there is

1. Ibid., 314-5.

2. *Maṇapajjavanānamto nāṇassa ya darisaṇassa ya viṣeso. Kevalaṇāṇaṃ puṇa daṃsaṇaṃ ti nāṇaṃ ti ya samāṇaṃ.*

-Sanmati-tarka-prakaraṇa, II. 3.

3. Sanmati-tarka-prakaraṇa, II. 5.

no separate faculty of intuition in one who has completely destroyed the relevant karmic veil.<sup>1</sup> The contention that knowledge is determinate and distinct, whereas intuition is indeterminate and indistinct is true only in the case of an imperfect person. As regards a person who has destroyed all the relevant karmic obstructions, such distinction has no meaning. In his case, there is no distinction between determinate knowledge and indeterminate knowledge.<sup>2</sup> The difference of distinct and indistinct, determinate and indeterminate is true only in the case of the knowledge of imperfect beings, and not with regard to the knowledge of perfect ones. He further argues : 'If it is admitted that the omniscient intuits the unknown and knows the unintuited, the conception of all perfection would be ridiculous.'<sup>3</sup> According to the view of the successive occurrence of intuition and knowledge in the omniscient, a perfect person knows a fact that was not comprehended before, and intuits a feature which was not cognised previously, since his cognition occurs in succession. In a different language, for the omniscient some aspect of an object remains unknown for ever. If such is the case, what is the charm in admitting omniscience ? Furthermore, in the scriptures, omniscience is said to have beginning but no end<sup>4</sup> Those who have any regard for the commandments of scripture must realise the significance of this fact. If it is held that at the time of perfect intuition, knowledge is not possible, and at the moment of perfect knowledge, intuition is an impossibility, it would mean to admit the break of continuity of both of them, but this is absurd, since it goes against the scriptures that prescribe non-break.<sup>5</sup> If the destruction of intuition-obscuring

---

1. Sanmati-tarka-prakarāṇa, II. 6.

2. Ibid., II. 11.

3. Ibid., II. 13.

4. Prajñāpanā-sūtra, XVIII. 10.

5. Sanmati-tarka-prakarāṇa, II. 7-8.

karma and knowledge-obscuring karma takes place simultaneously, and the problem arises which of the two, perfect intuition and perfect knowledge, should spring forth first, the priority cannot be given to any one of them. Nor is it proper to maintain the simultaneous occurrence of both, for two conscious activities never synchronise.<sup>1</sup> If the removal of the obstruction of both intuition and knowledge takes place at one and the same moment, does the question at all arise as to which of the two arises first ?

### **Nature of worldly Soul :**

Vādideva describes the nature of the (worldly) soul in the following manner :

The soul which is proved by direct experience (*pratyakṣa*) etc., is the knower (*pramātā*). It is essentially conscious, changing, agent, direct enjoyer, equal in extent to its own body, different in each body, and the possessor of material karmas.<sup>2</sup>

All these characteristics serve specific purposes. The author intends to refute all those schools that do not agree with his conception of soul.

The first characteristic of the soul that it is proved by direct experience, is meant to refute the view of the Cārvāka who does not regard soul as a separate substance. The arguments for the separate existence of soul have already been given.

### **Consciousness as the Essence of Soul :**

The second characteristic that it is essentially conscious, is meant for refuting the view of the Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika school which regards consciousness as an accidental quality of soul.

1. Sanmati-tarka-prakaraṇa, II. 9.

2. Pramātā pratyakṣādiprasiddha ātmā.

Caitanyasvarūpaḥ pariṇāmī kartā sāksādbhoktā svadehaparimāṇaḥ pratikṣetraṁ bhinnāḥ paudgalikādṛṣṭavaṁścāyam. —Pramāṇanaya-tattvāloka, VII. 55-6.

*Caitanya* (consciousness) which one would expect to be regarded as the very essence of *ātman* (soul) is treated by the Vaiśeṣikas and Naiyāyikas as an adventitious (*aupādhika*) quality<sup>1</sup> which comes temporarily into the soul as a result of the working of the machinery of cognition. *Caitanya* or *Jñāna* is, thus, something different from *ātman* (soul). This view is refuted in the following way :

If *jñāna* is supposed to be absolutely distinct from *ātman*, the *jñāna* of Mr. Caitra is in the same position with respect to his *ātman* as the *jñāna* of Mr. Maitra, that is to say, both the *jñānas* would be equally strangers to the *ātman* of Mr. Caitra, and there is no reason why his *jñāna* should serve him better than the *jñāna* of any other person in determining the nature of things. In fact, there is no such thing as his own *jñāna*, all *jñānas* being equally foreign to him. An explanation may be offered by the other side : *Jñāna* is absolutely distinct from *ātman*, but it is connected with *ātman* by *samavāya-sambandha* (inherent relationship), and hence, the *jñāna* of Mr. Caitra is not in the same position with respect to him as the *jñāna* of Mr. Maitra; for the former is connected with him by *samavāya* relation, while the latter is not so. But this explanation can be easily refuted. According to the Vaiśeṣika, *samavāya* is one, eternal and all-pervasive,<sup>2</sup> and therefore, it is impossible that *the jñāna* should reside in Caitra and not in Maitra; and since the souls are also all-pervasive according to this school, the *jñāna* which takes place in one *ātman* takes place in all the *ātman*s as well and any knowledge which Caitra has acquired will belong to Maitra also.

Granted it is possible for *jñāna* to be connected with *ātman* by *samavāya* relation. But a question still remains to be answered : By what relation is the *samavāya* connected

---

1. *Caitanyamaupādhikamātmanonyat.*

– Anyayoga-vyavaccheda-dvātrimśikā, 8.

2. *Samavāyasyaikātvānnyatvādvyāpakatvācca.*

with *jñāna* and *ātman* ? If the answer is that it is connected by another *samavāya*, that would mean an unending series of *samavāyas* leading to infinite regress. If the answer is in the form of 'itself,' why should not *jñāna* and *ātman* be connected of themselves without requiring a *samvāya* relation to accomplish the connection ?

The Vaiśeṣikas and Naiyāyikas advance another argument : The distinction between *ātman* and *jñāna* is essential owing to their being related as *karṭṛ* (agent) and *karāṇa* (instrument), *ātman* being the *karṭṛ* and *jñāna* the *karāṇa*. The Jaina thinkers hold that the position of *jñāna* is different from that of an ordinary *karāṇa* such as a scythe (*dātra*). *Jñāna* is an internal *karāṇa*, while the scythe is an external *karāṇa*.<sup>1</sup> Now, if an internal *karāṇa* like *jñāna* could be shown to be absolutely distinct like scythe from *karṭṛ* (*ātman*), the argument of absolute distinction between *jñāna* and *ātman* would stand valid, but not otherwise. We say : "Devadatta sees with the eyes and a lamp."<sup>2</sup> Here 'eye' and 'lamp' are both *karāṇas*, but on that account the two are not in the same position of absolute distinction with respect to Devadatta. Hence, *jñāna* is not absolutely distinct from *ātman* as an ordinary *karāṇa*. It is identical with the soul, having different types of modifications (*paryāyas*).

Now, the opponent asks that if *jñāna* and *ātman* are one, how is their relation of *karṭṛ* and *karāṇa* to be accounted for? The answer is given by the analogy of a serpent who makes a coil of his body by his own body.<sup>3</sup> It may be said that the conception of *karṭṛ* and *karāṇa* in the case of the serpent is simply imaginary. How can it be said to be imaginary, when we actually see the effect, viz., the coil, which is a new state of rest different from the former state of motion ? No amount of imagination could make us believe that a pillar was going to wind itself into a coil.

1. Syādvāda-mañjarī, p. 42.

2. *Dīpena cakṣusā Devadattaḥ paśyati*.

3. *Sarpa ātmānamātmanā veṣṭayati* — Syādvāda-mañjarī, p. 43.

Next, consider the word *caitanya*. It is the abstract noun from *cetana* which means *ātman*. Thus, *caitanya* means the *bhāva*, *svarūpa* or nature of *ātman*. Now, how can the *bhāva* (nature) of a thing be absolutely distinct from the thing ?

The opponent again argues that *ātman* is no doubt *cetana* but that is not without a cause but is owing to *cetanā* coming to reside by *samavāya* relation in *ātman* as is shown by actual experience (*pratīti*). The counter argument is in the following manner : If you are prepared to accept the evidence of *pratīti*, you must admit that *ātman* is by nature *upayogātmaka*, i.e., of the nature of consciousness. Nobody is aware of being first *acetana* and afterwards becoming *cetana* in consequence of the connection with *cetanā*, or of *cetanā* coming to reside by *samavāya* relation in him who was at first *acetana*. On the contrary, he is always aware of himself as the knower (*jñātā*).

It may be further held that the consciousness '*jñānavānaham*' (I have knowledge) would prove a distinction between *jñāna* (knowledge) and *aham* (self), for the former is that which is possessed and the latter is that who possesses. This contention is also untenable. Who possesses the consciousness '*jñānavānaham*' in the theory of the opponent ? Not the self, because it is supposed to be *jaḍa*, i.e., essentially devoid of *jñāna* in itself like a pitcher (*ghaṭa*). It cannot be asserted that *ātman* is *jaḍa*, and yet is able to become conscious. Hence, that substance which has the consciousness as '*jñānavānaham*' cannot in itself be *jaḍa* by nature. Therefore, *ātman* is not in itself *jaḍa* by nature which afterwards comes to possess *jñāna* by *samavāya* relation, but it is essentially conscious.

### **Soul as a Changing Entity :**

The soul is said to be changing. This characteristic is meant for refuting the theory of the Sāṅkhya and other systems that regard soul as an absolutely permanent entity. They do not admit it as changing. According to the Sāṅkhya system, *Puruṣa* (soul) is devoid of form, conscious, enjoyer, permanent,

omnipresent, static, inactive, devoid of the three *guṇas* (*sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas*) and subtle. Now, if *Puruṣa* is permanent, i.e., *aparīṇāmin*, he is above modifications of any sort; he is not liable to undergo bondage; for the same reason, he is devoid of action (*kriyā*) and cannot transmigrate from one life to another. Hence, there is no occasion for *mokṣa* (liberation) in his case. Therefore, *Puruṣa* is neither bound nor liberated. He does not transmigrate. It is the *Prakṛti* (primordial matter) that is bound, liberated and reborn.<sup>1</sup> The Jaina asks : If *Prakṛti* is bound and liberated, what is that which binds it ? If *Prakṛti* itself is bound and liberated, there will be no difference between bondage and liberation, because *Prakṛti* is always present. Hence, no question of bondage and liberation will arise in this case. If the response of *Puruṣa* is necessary to influence *Prakṛti*, the response is not possible without *pariṇāma* (modification) in *Puruṣa*. The mere presence of *Prakṛti* could bring about no change in *Puruṣa* unless *Puruṣa* was capable of action. According to the Sāṅkhya system, it is *Prakṛti* which is said to be subject to pleasure and pain (*sukha* and *duḥkha*). *Puruṣa* is reflected in *buddhi* (intellect) which is a factor in the evolution of *Prakṛti*. It is the effect of this reflection which is responsible for regarding *Puruṣa* to be subject to pleasure and pain. This theory of the Sāṅkhya school also proves *pariṇāma* in *Puruṣa*. Without separating from his original character he could not be said to be subject to pleasure and pain. And the moment it is admitted that the original character is lost and a new one acquired, the operation of losing one and acquiring the other is a *kriyā* which makes *Puruṣa* a *kartr* (agent) which is contrary to the Sāṅkhya tenets. When it is proved that *Puruṣa* is active, i.e., he loses one character and acquires another one, it goes without saying that *Puruṣa* is *pariṇāmin*, i.e., active and changing, and not inactive and absolutely permanent.

---

1. Sāṅkhya-kārikā, 62.



Moreover, if pleasure and pain of which we are all undeniably conscious as belonging to ourselves, i.e., to our *ātman*, do not belong to *ātman*, they will have to hang in the air, since *buddhi* is incompetent to possess them, it being held to be *jaḍa* (unconscious). Hence, *ātman* is active and changing having consciousness as its essence.

### **Soul as Agent :**

The Sāṅkhya school does not regard *Puruṣa* as agent, active entity. *Puruṣa*, according to this school, is merely a silent and passive spectator. This view has been already refuted. Pleasure and pain cannot belong to an unconscious entity. *Puruṣa* is subject to pleasure and pain, because consciousness belongs to *Puruṣa* only. When it is proved that pleasure and pain belong to *Puruṣa*, it is obvious that *Puruṣa* is active, because an inactive entity cannot be subject to pleasure and pain. Moreover, consciousness itself is active, because the term consciousness implies knowledge or intelligence which is active in character.

### **Soul as Enjoyer :**

The fifth characteristic of soul is its direct enjoyment. The Sāṅkhyas maintain that *Puruṣa* is enjoyer in an indirect manner, i.e., through *buddhi*. The Jainas say that material *buddhi* cannot enjoy anything. *Puruṣa* is the *karṭṛ* and *bhokṭṛ* (agent and enjoyer) directly and not through *buddhi*. Enjoyment is the function of a conscious substance. *Puruṣa* is conscious, hence, enjoyment belongs to *Puruṣa* and not to *buddhi* which is unconscious. Moreover, *Puruṣa* cannot be reflected in *buddhi*, because *Puruṣa* is immaterial, while *buddhi* is material, and it is evident that an immaterial substance can never be reflected in a material substance. Hence, the soul is the direct enjoyer of all its actions.

### **Soul as Equal in Extent to its Body :**

The soul is said to be equal in extent to its own body. This characteristic is meant to refute the view of the

Naiyāyikas, the Vaiśeṣikas, the Sāṅkhyas, the Mīmāṃsakas and the like who hold that the soul is omnipresent like ether. They believe in the existence of many souls but do not admit that they are equal in extent to their own bodies. They say that all the souls are all-pervasive, i.e., present everywhere. To admit a soul to be equal in extent to its own body is a unique conception of the Jaina. The doctrine which advocates the *vibhutva of ātman* (a soul is everywhere) is a doctrine which on the face of it, says the Jaina, is contrary to our experience. A thing must be where its quality is found, e.g., a pitcher exists where its form exists and not elsewhere.<sup>1</sup> It may be argued : Do we not smell from a distance ? The answer is : 'No'. The particles which possess the smell fly to our nose and then we smell. But it may be asked : Does magic not work at a distance? The reply comes : 'No'. The presiding deity of the magical formula or practice who resides elsewhere is working there. This view of soul as equal in extent to its own body may be justified by means of the following syllogism : A soul is not all-pervasive, because its qualities are not found everywhere; that thing whose qualities are not found everywhere is not all-pervasive like a pitcher; the soul also is such; therefore, it is not all-pervasive. The heterogeneous example is ether which is all-pervasive, because its qualities are found everywhere. The point is that the measure of a soul is only as much as that of the body it occupies. That is to say, there is no soul outside the body it occupies, for its attributes are found only in that body. To give an illustration, the attributes of a pitcher exist only in a pitcher and not outside it. As an alternative argument it may be said : That is non-existent there where it cannot be realised by any one of the means of knowledge. For example, a piece of cloth does not permeate a pitcher which is separate from it. The soul is not

---

1. *Yatraiva yo dṛṣṭagaṇaḥ sa tatra kumbhādivanniṣprati* —  
Anyayogavyavaccheda-dvātriṃśikā, 9.

realised outside the body. Consequently, it should be taken to be non-existent there.<sup>1</sup>

To refute this conclusion of the Jaina, the Naiyāyika urges in the course of his answer that the *adr̥ṣṭa* (karma) of our *ātman* is supposed to act even at a distance and it cannot be there hanging in the air without an underlying substratum ; consequently, our *ātman* must be supposed to be existing even there. Since *adr̥ṣṭa* works everywhere, the underlying substance, viz., *ātman* must also exist everywhere.

The Jaina gives a counter argument. He denies that *adr̥ṣṭa* is acting there and everywhere. Things, according to him, have their own nature – a fact which is ultimate and does not admit of question or explanation – and that nature is not caused by *adr̥ṣṭa*. Fire burns, because it has got the nature of burning. We cannot say that fire burns, because *adr̥ṣṭa* is there. It burns of itself.

Secondly, to say that the nature of the things are determined by *adr̥ṣṭa* is to leave no room for God.

Thirdly, since they hold that *ātman*s are many, if each of them is *vibhu* (all-pervasive) also, as they believe, what a wonderful clash and interpenetration of *ātman*s would ensue? Moreover, each of them would enter the *ātman* of God Himself, and each would thereby become a creator, for they believe that God is the creator of this universe.

It may be further urged : Unless an *ātman* was *vibhu*, how could it draw to itself the particles of the body in which it has to dwell in the next life ? The Jainas reply that it is not necessary for the *ātman* to be *vibhu* for drawing the particles of the body, because if it is so, our body will be equal in extent to the whole universe, for our *ātman* is all-pervasive. If we accept the argument that to draw the particles of the body the soul must be all-pervasive, our body will be of a horribly vast size, because our soul will draw to itself all the particles of the universe.

---

1. Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1586.

The Naiyāyika gives a further argument : If we believe that the soul is body-sized, as a consequence, it will be *sāvayava*, i.e., with parts, and therefore, a *kārya* (product), just like the body itself. The Jaina, however, is prepared to accept the logical consequence. More accurately he says that *ātman* has *pradeśas*, though not *avayavas*, in an ordinary sense. He believes that *ātman* is *sāvayava*, *pariṇāmin* and changes from time to time, for it is a substance having the qualities of origination, decay and permanence. He does not believe in the absolute changelessness of *ātman*, or for the matter of that, in absolute changelessness of anything whatsoever. He further points out that for some time after a body is cut, its parts continue to throb and retain the *ātman* in them. After that, they rejoin the *ātman* of the body from which they are cut. The particles which are cut retain their connection with the soul as the threads of a lotus-stick remain united even when the stick is cut into two.

It should be noted that Jainism is the only school of Indian philosophy which holds that *ātman* is body-sized. The only other school which holds an analogous, though not the same doctrine, is the school of Rāmānuja, according to which, the *jñāna* of *ātman*, though not the *ātman* itself, undergoes contraction and expansion.

### Varieties of Soul :

Jainism believes that each body possesses a different soul, and hence, there are many souls. It is also held that one body can be occupied by more than one soul but one soul cannot occupy more than one body.

Here a Vedāntin may say that many varieties of soul are unwarranted, for the soul is everywhere the same. Like the sky, it is all-pervasive. On account of illusion, we think that there are different souls in different bodies. Really speaking, it is one.

This view is refuted as follows : As regards the sky, it is all right to hold that it is only one, for the sky, even while

permeating all the corporeal bodies, is seen to be uniform—free from any distinctions. Such is not, however, the case with the soul in question. It is not observed to be uniform, for it differs from body to body (*piṇḍa* to *piṇḍa*). Moreover, the difference in characteristics presupposes the difference in those having the characteristics. Hence, the soul is not one in number.<sup>1</sup>

Here is the illustration : The living beings in this world differ from one another, for there is a difference in their characteristics. As a parallel example, we may mention water-pots etc. Whatever is not different from another object does not differ in characteristics from it. As for example, the sky is everywhere the same. Moreover, if there were only one soul, then there would be nothing like happiness, misery, bondage and emancipation. But they do exist. Therefore, all the souls are different and they are not one but many.<sup>2</sup>

How do the characteristics differ in each body ? The soul has *upayoga* as its characteristic. This *upayoga* has infinite varieties, for it differs from body to body, some having the *utkarṣa*, i.e., the maximum *upayoga*, some having the *apakarṣa*, i.e., the minimum *upayoga*, and some having *upayoga* between these two extremes. Therefore, souls are of infinite kinds owing to the unlimited varieties of *upayoga*.<sup>3</sup>

Furthermore, if the number of soul is only one and not more, the soul cannot be an agent, an enjoyer, a thinker and a mundane being. That which is one in number, is not a doer etc. This fact is corroborated by the example of the sky.

Thus, owing to oneness there is no possibility of happiness, misery, bondage, liberation, enjoyment, thinking etc. So it follows that there are many souls and these souls are equal in extent to the bodies they occupy.

1. Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1581.

2. Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1582.

3. Ibid., 1583.

### Soul as the Possessor of Material Karma :

The soul is said to be the possessor of material karmas. This characteristic is meant to refute a two-fold belief. First, it attacks those philosophers who do not regard karma or *adr̥ṣṭa* as a valid existence. The Cārvākas of Indian thought fall into this category. Secondly, the adjective 'material' is directed against those thinkers who do not regard karma or *adr̥ṣṭa* as material. They are the Naiyāyikas, the Vaiśeṣikas etc.

Lord Mahāvīra says : "O long-lived Agnibhūti ! You entertain a doubt about the existence of karma, which is a multitude of *paramāṇus* (atoms), for you think that its existence cannot be established by any one of the *pramāṇas* (means of knowledge). You argue that karma is not directly perceived, because it is super-sensuous as is the case with the horn on the head of a hare. The other arguments that you advance are the same as mentioned by your brother Indrabhūti in the case of soul.

But these lines of argument are faulty. This karma is certainly *pratyakṣa* to me. Moreover, its existence is such as can be realised by you by means of inference. Hence, it is not justifiable to believe that no *pramāṇa* can establish its existence. The karma is either good or bad. The good karma makes us experience happiness, whereas the bad karma misery."<sup>1</sup>

There is a *kāraṇa* (cause) for experiencing happiness and misery, since it is a *kārya* (effect) as is the case with a sprout. It is no use arguing that since the karma is not *pratyakṣa* to everybody, it should not exist. There is no such rule that what is *pratyakṣa* to one, should be necessarily so to another. A lion is not *pratyakṣa* to all. But on that account, it is not true to say that the lion does not exist. Therefore, the karma does exist, since it is directly perceived by an omniscient being.

---

1. Vṛtti on Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1611.

Moreover, the karma is *pratyakṣa* to the doubter, too, since he realises its *kārya*, as is the case with material atoms, which though not directly realisable, are *pratyakṣa*, since their *kāryas* (effects) like a pitcher etc. are directly perceived.

This point of cause and effect is further explained. Just as a sprout which is a *kārya*, has a seed for it, so happiness and misery, which are well known to every individual, have a cause, because they are *kāryas*. And this cause is nothing but karma and so it exists. A question may be raised : A garland, sandal-paste, a woman and the like are the causes of happiness, whereas a serpent, poison, a thorn etc. are those of misery. All these causes of happiness and misery are seen - are the objects of the sense of sight. So, why should we believe karma to be their cause - the karma which is not seen ? To admit a thing not seen in the place of one that is seen is not justifiable.

This question is out of place owing to *vyabhicāra* (irrelevancy). It is a matter of common experience that persons having the same means for enjoying happiness do not get the same type of happiness. It is the same case with those who have the same or similar means to suffer misery. This difference in each case cannot be without a cause which is not seen. This very unseen cause is karma.

Furthermore, just as the body in youth is preceded by a body in childhood, so is the body in childhood preceded by another body. The body which is prior to that in childhood is karma.<sup>1</sup>

The opponent asks : If on the ground that we can see the body etc., which are the effects, the karma is proved to be their cause, then, on the ground that the effect has a physical form, the karma also will have to be admitted as something having a physical form. The Jaina thinkers reply : Karma has indeed a physical form.

---

1. Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1614.

The following four illustrations are conclusive for the fact that karma has a physical form :

1. Karma has a physical form because of the experience of pleasure, pain etc. That has a physical form in association with which pleasure etc. are experienced, just as the food one eats. There is no experience of pleasure etc. in association with that which is without a physical shape, just as in connection with the ether.

2. That in association with which a burning sensation arises is found to be something having a physical form, just as in association with fire, there is the rise of a burning sensation. So, pain occurs when one is in association with karma. Therefore, it has a form.

3. There is an addition of our strength by means of external objects. Only a physical strength can have an addition by means of the physical substance, just as a pot gets strength by means of oil etc. Such is the case with our strength which is karmic (product of karma) and on account of its being karmic, it can have an addition by means of external objects.

4. Karma has a physical form, because it undergoes change in a way different from soul. The *pariṇāmitva* (change) of karma is inferred from the *pariṇāmitva* of its *kāryas* (effects) like body etc. If the effect is mutable, the mutability of its cause is automatically recognised, just as the mutability of milk is recognised from the *pariṇāma* of its *kārya* (curd) in the form of butter-milk (*takra*).

Now, if we agree that karma is *mūrta*, how could the *mūrta* karma be connected with the *amūrta jīva* (formless soul), by the *samavāya* (inherent relationship) or by the *saṁyoga* (combination) ? As a *mūrta ghaṭa* (pot) is connected with the *amūrta ākāśa* (ether) by means of the *saṁyoga* and an object like finger is connected with *kriyā* (action) like contraction by means of the *samavāya*, so here also karma is connected with *jīva*.



How could the *amūrta* soul be favourably or adversely affected by the *mūrta* karma ? The answer is : It can be affected in the way as *vijñāna* etc. are affected by a drink of wine, medicine etc.

Or, the mundane soul is not absolutely *amūrta*, because it has assumed an alteration in the continuous chain of karma, which has no beginning. Now, since karma is *mūrta* and *ātman* is similar to karma to a certain extent, *ātman* is also *mūrta* to that extent, even though it is *amūrta* by its *svabhāva*. Consequently, the soul can be affected by the *mūrta* karma.

### **Bondage :**

Influx (*āsrava*) precedes bondage (*bandha*). Just as water flows into the lake through streams, so also karmic matter flows into the soul through the channel of activity. This is called influx. It is of two types: psychical and physical. That modification of consciousness by which karma gets into the soul is known as psychical influx. The karmic matter itself which enters the soul, is called physical influx. In other words, psychical influx is nothing but the mental, bodily or vocal activity, whereas physical influx is a peculiar type of matter. The influx of karma is of two kinds: virtuous (*puṇya*) and sinful (*pāpa*). Meritorious activities cause the influx of virtuous karmas, while wicked actions are responsible for the inflow of sinful karmas. Injury, falsehood, stealing, envy etc. are wicked activities. The opposites of these are meritorious ones. How can activity be meritorious or wicked ? That activity which is performed with good intentions is meritorious and that which is performed with evil intentions is wicked. The influx of persons with passions extends transmigration and that of persons free from passions prevents or shortens it.

Bondage is also of two types: psychical and physical. That conscious state by which karma is bound with the soul is called psychical bondage. The interpenetration of the karmic particles and the soul is known as physical bondage.

The cause of bondage is a particular modification of consciousness consisting of passions by which karmas are tied to the soul. In other words, attachment and aversion are the causes of bondage. Wrong belief, negligence etc. are also included in them.

### **Liberation :**

Stoppage (*saṁvara*) and dissociation (*nirjarā*) precede liberation (*mokṣa*). The obstruction of influx, i.e., the prevention of the inflow of karmic matter, is called stoppage. It is also of two kinds: psychical and physical. The cessation of activities that lead to transmigration is psychical stoppage. It can be called 'yoga' in general terminology. When these activities are checked, the inflow of karmic matter is interrupted. This is physical stoppage.

Dissociation is also psychical as well as physical. That modification of consciousness by which karmic matter (bondage) partially disappears is called psychical dissociation. The disappearance itself is known as physical dissociation. Thus, dissociation is regarded as partial destruction of the karmas that are bound with the soul. Dissociation takes place in two ways: (1) Disappearance of karma in proper time after the enjoyment of its fruits and (2) destruction of karmic matter through penance before the arrival of the actual time of the enjoyment of its effects.

The annihilation of all karmas is liberation. That modification of the soul which is the cause of the total destruction of karmas is known as psychical liberation and the actual separation of the karmic matter is called physical liberation. In the state of liberation, i.e., self-attainment, no new karmas flow in owing to the absence of their causes. The soul exists in its pure and perfect state. It attains its natural form and possesses infinite knowledge and infinite bliss. Although the emancipated souls have no physical forms, as they are not possessed of bodies, yet, they have the psychical

forms of their last bodies. The liberated soul does not expand to the extent of the universe, as there is no cause for it. The expansion or contraction of the soul is determined by the physique-making karma. Since there is no physique-making karma in the state of emancipation, there is neither expansion nor contraction in the case of the soul in liberation. The emancipated soul maintains the form of its last physique for ever.

Immediately after attaining release from all karmas, including the body, the soul goes up to the end of the universe, as it is of the nature of darting upwards. If upward motion is of the nature of the liberated soul, why does it not go beyond the end of the universe, i.e., the universe-space ? There is no movement in the non-universe-space, as it has no medium of motion.

Though the liberated souls maintain their own forms and individualities, still in all essential qualities there is perfect equality among them and they do not obstruct one another. Jainism does not believe in God but regards karma as the cause of this world. It accords equal status to all emancipated souls. Emancipation is the consummation of spiritual development. All liberated souls are essentially equal. None of them enjoys any privilege.

●●●

## CHAPTER V

### MATTER

Does matter exist ? It is a very complicated problem in the sphere of philosophy. The Idealists maintain that the universe is a spiritual reality. Matter does not enjoy any separate existence independent of spirit or thought. The Realists do not agree with this view. They explicitly say that the material reality is absolutely independent of the spiritual reality. It is as real as thought itself.

#### **Reality of Matter :**

Jainism, being a school of Realism, certainly believes in an independent and separate existence of matter. When the Idealist perceives various effects of material elements, he entertains a doubt whether material elements (*bhūtas*) exist or not. The Jaina thinkers maintain that the doubt about a non-existent object is totally unjustifiable, as in the case of sky-flower and hare-horn where non-existence is certain. The point is that our doubt is justifiable in the case of existent objects only. We entertain no doubt in regard to an absolutely non-existent object. The doubt is only possible in the case of existent objects like tree and man (*sthāṇu* and *puruṣa*). If we raise any doubt as regards a non-existent object, we will have to raise a doubt in the case of sky-flower and hare-horn also.

To establish the existence of self, we say that 'I think therefore I am' or 'I doubt therefore I exist.' Similarly, what is the harm if we say that 'I doubt about the existence of external objects therefore they exist' or 'all things which are distinctly perceived are true'. As Descartes, the father of modern (Western) philosophy says: 'I think therefore I am' -

'*cogito ergo sum*.' In the same way, 'I perceive all things clearly and distinctly therefore they are true.'

To support the belief that doubt springs up even in absolute non-existence, the opponent may advance an argument like this : Just as in a dream, a poor fellow raises a doubt and questions whether there is an elephant or a mountain before his house, though in fact, nothing like them exists there; so also, at other places, doubt can be raised in spite of the absolute non-existence of objects.

This argument of the opponent is totally baseless. In dreams, doubt arises on account of various reasons. As for example, when an object is seen or experienced formerly, the remembrance of that experience gives rise to doubt. Similarly, it is some past experience which brings a dream into existence and on the basis of that experience we reject the dream. Thus, doubt arises from an existent object and not from absolute negation. If such were not the case, doubt should also have to arise from objects like the sixth element (*ṣaṣṭha bhūta*) etc. which have never been existent so far.

The causes that bring dreams into existence are as follows:<sup>1</sup>

1. *Previous experience* - Certain acts like bathing, taking food etc. that have once been experienced are perceived again in dreams due to some reason.

2. *Observation* - When objects like elephants, horses etc. are perceived in a dream, the dream is said to have been caused by the observed objects.

3. *Attentive consideration* - A dream representing acquisition of a beloved etc. is called the dream of the object which is attentively considered.

4. *Hearing* - When places like heaven and hell, which are only heard of and not seen, are perceived in a dream.

5. *Disturbance of health* - Ill health caused by physical disorders is also one of the causes of dreams.

6. *Deity* - When one beholds a deity adverse or favourable in a dream, the dream can be called deity-caused.

7. *Watery place* - This is also one of the causes when one dreams in the midst of a watery region.

8. *Meritorious act* - A dream is said to be good according to the auspicious actions that may be its cause.

9. *Sinful act* - A dream is called bad according to the inauspicious actions that may be its cause.

According to the neurological theory, a dream is a partial awakening. It is the activity of disconnected cells or neurograms that have remained in a state of relative irritability or readiness to respond. Delage, a French writer on dreams, has summed up his psychological theory of dreams in the statement that the dream is a perseveration of the unadjusted. This means that the dream is the working out of a problem which was unsolved during the working period. According to the psycho-neurological theory of Morton, a dream is an apperceptive trial and error process. This means that a dream is a series of attempts to perceive and interpret a stimulus. These attempts are unsuccessful or only partly successful. The theory advanced by Sigmund Freud may be summed up briefly in the statement that a dream is a symbolical fulfilment of repressed infantile sex-wishes. Freud distinguished between the manifest and the latent contents of dream, and pointed out that the manifest content is symbolical to the latent sexual wishes. These sexual wishes are really of a childish or undeveloped nature. Thus, according to the Freudian theory, a dream is an expression of unsatisfied needs. The theory that a dream represents a mental conflict is suggested by Rivers and others. According to Adler, present problems are responsible for dreams. Jung is of the opinion that we experience our past events in dreams. According to him, dreams are a sort of memory.

All these psychological theories as well as the views expressed by the Jaina thinkers establish firmly that dream is not non-existent. Its contents are past experiences and the like. Thus, when dream itself is existent, how can the opponent

hold the physical world to be non-existent like dream ? Hence, the existence of material objects cannot be unreal. Therefore, matter does exist.

### Meaning of Pudgala :

The Jaina writers have used the term '*pudgala*' exactly in the sense of matter. '*Pudgala*' is one of the six substances recognised by Jainism. How does the Jaina explain the word '*pudgala*'? The word '*pudgala*' has two parts: '*pud*' and '*gala*.' The first part '*pud*' means 'to combine' and the second part '*gala*' means 'to dissociate'. Hence, the etymological meaning of the word '*pudgala*' is : that substance which undergoes modifications by combinations and dissociations. This definition of '*pudgala*' is very significant. It is '*pudgala*' alone which undergoes modifications by combinations and dissociations. This process of combination and dissociation does not occur in the other substances. The selection of the word '*pudgala*' is full of deep meaning. It is worthy of note that the use of this word in the sense of matter is quite peculiar of Jainism.

### Definition of Matter :

Matter has four characteristics associated with it, viz., touch, taste, smell and colour.<sup>1</sup> Each and every element of matter possesses these four characteristics.

*Touch* - Eight kinds of touch are described in the Jaina works : soft (*mṛdu*), hard (*kaṭhina*), heavy (*guru*), light (*laghu*), cold (*śīta*), hot (*uṣṇa*), smooth (*snigdha*) and rough (*rūkṣa*).<sup>2</sup> Modern psychology recognises only four principal kinds of touch : cold, hot, painful and general.

*Taste* - It is of five kinds : bitter (*tikta*), sour (*kaṭuka*), acidic (*āmla*), sweet (*madhura*) and astringent (*kaṣāya*).

*Smell* - Smell is of two kinds : good smell and bad smell (*surabhigandha* and *asurabhigandha*).

1. Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 23.

2. Tattvārtha-rājavārtika, V. 23.7

*Colour* - Five kinds of colour are described : blue (*nīla*), yellow (*pīta*), white (*śukla*), black (*kṛṣṇa*) and red (*lohita*).<sup>1</sup>

Thus, the four characteristics are divided into twenty categories (8 kinds of touch plus 5 kinds of taste plus 2 kinds of smell plus 5 kinds of colour = 20 kinds). That is why it is mentioned that '*pudgala*' is characterised by five kinds of colour, five kinds of taste, two kinds of smell and eight kinds of touch.<sup>2</sup>

It is further mentioned that the foregoing twenty are the principal divisions. Each of these may be further subdivided into numerable, innumerable and infinite kinds.<sup>3</sup>

### **Parts of Matter :**

Matter consists of numerable, innumerable and infinite parts according to its different combinations.<sup>4</sup> The scientific division of matter is like this : concrete matter and invisible matter. The concrete form is called Matter and the invisible form is known as Energy. Matter is further divided into solids, liquids and gases. All the three forms of matter consist of molecules and atoms. Atoms are again an assemblage of indivisible elementary particles as protons, electrons and their combinations.

The Jaina thinkers also regard matter to be of two kinds: concrete or perceptible *skandhas* (molecules) and imperceptible or subtle *aṇus* (atoms). When we say that atoms (*aṇus*) are imperceptible, we only mean that they are imperceptible explicitly. The contact or relation between our sense-organs and atoms is present, but on account of the lack of capability of the sense-organs or nerves to send the message to the brain in an explicit form, we are unable to perceive them distinctly. In other words, there is a sensation

1. Ibid., V. 23.8-10.

2. Bhagavatī-sūtra, XII. 5.450.

3. Sarvārtha-siddhi, V.23.

4. Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 10.



of atoms but we are not aware of it, i.e., we have no perception of atoms.

Matter is said to consist of numerable (*saṅkhyeya*), innumerable (*asaṅkhyeya*) and infinite (*ananta*) parts (*pradeśas*). This statement seems to be contradictory, since the number of the units of the universe-space (*lokākāśa-pradeśas*) is only innumerable, whereas the material units may be infinite. How can an infinite number of material particles be accommodated in innumerable particles of the universe-space ? This question would have been quite valid if all the infinite particles of matter were in a free state. But they are not so. Even an ordinary person has the experience that a tiny piece of fuel on combustion gives rise to an enormous volume of smoke-particles. A scientist knows that a quantity of water when converted into steam occupies a volume about 1700 times greater than the original volume. Therefore, there is no possibility of contradiction between the conception of the particles of the universe-space that are innumerable (*asaṅkhyeya*) and that of infinite (*ananta*) particles of matter.

Now, how can we justify the conception of numerability, innumerability and infiniteness of material particles ? It is said that in one *pradeśa*, i.e., in one unitary cell of space only one atom of matter will find place if it is in a free state, but in an aggregate form any number of atoms can occupy one or more units of space.<sup>1</sup> The same idea can be expressed in a different language : One atom occupies one unit of space, but two atoms in a state of combination may also be accommodated in the same unit. Two free atoms will occupy two units, but two atoms forming a diatomic molecule can cover one as well as two units. Three atoms can be located in a single unit if they are all in a state of condensation; they can occupy two spatial units if two atoms are in a state of condensation and one is free; they occupy three

---

1. Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 14.

spatial particles if they are all free. And this process is to be continued to infinity.<sup>1</sup>

### **Difference between the Vaiśeṣika and the Jaina Conceptions:**

The Vaiśeṣikas regard nine substances as the constituent elements of the universe other than qualities, actions etc. They are : earth, water, fire, air, ether, time, space, soul and mind.

Of these nine substances, earth, water, fire and air are included in the Jaina category of *pudgala* (matter), since *pudgala* is defined as a substance possessing touch, taste, smell and colour as its qualities. The Vaiśeṣikas hold that air is without colour, taste and smell. It has the characteristic of touch only. This conception of the Vaiśeṣikas is not tenable, because even an elementary student of physics knows that air can be converted into a 'bluish liquid' by continuous cooling, just as steam can be converted into water. This is a concrete proof that air has colour. And since it has colour, it must possess both taste and smell.

They regard fire as devoid of taste and smell and possessing touch and colour only. This belief is also blind, for the scientists have clearly demonstrated that fire is a material substance. When the energy of molecular agitation in a substance becomes very acute, its temperature rises and we get the sensation of fire. It is a form of energy and we know that energy and matter are identical. Hence, all the characteristics of matter are associated with fire, because fire is composed of material particles raised to a high temperature.

The exponents of the Vaiśeṣika system regard smell to be existent only in earth. We agree that our nose in general cannot perceive water, fire or air, but on that ground we are not entitled to hold that odour is not associated with all these

---

1. Sarvārtha-siddhi, V. 14.

forms of matter. The human nose is not sensitive enough to detect the smell of these forms. Several cases are known where our olfactory organ fails, for instance, an ant at once smells sugar or a cat smells milk, whereas we cannot perceive these smells so quickly and from such a distance.

In the light of this discussion, we can say that with regard to the conception of matter, the position of the Jainas is sound and scientific. The Jaina thinkers did not regard earth, water, fire and air as separate and independent entities but included all these forms in matter. They held that earth, water etc. are the various combinations and forms of matter. These various combinations should not be regarded as separate substances.

### **Forms of Matter :**

Matter has two chief forms : indivisible elementary particles and their combinations. In the technical terms of Jainism, the indivisible elementary particles are called *aṇu* and the combinations of these particles are known as *skandhas*. We translate *aṇu* as atom and *skandha* as molecule for our present purpose. We will not mind some minute differences between the word atom of modern science and our technical term *aṇu*. *Skandha* (molecule) is defined as an aggregate of atoms. It possesses a gross form and undergoes processes of association and dissociation.

### **Aṇu:**

The last particle of matter, which cannot be further divided by any means whatsoever, is called *aṇu* or *paramāṇu*.<sup>1</sup> In the *Tattvārtha-rājavārtika*, *aṇu* is defined as the smallest material particle. There is nothing smaller than *paramāṇu*.<sup>2</sup> According to the *Pañcāstikāya-sāra*, the substance that has a single taste, a single colour, a single smell and two kinds of touch, which is the cause of sound while itself unsounding,

1. Sarvārtha-siddhi, V. 25.

2. *Tattvārtha-rājavārtika*, V. 11. 2.

which is different from molecules though constituting them, is called atom.<sup>1</sup> It is imperceptible.

Since atoms are real entities, five physical attributes (1 taste plus 1 colour plus 1 smell plus 2 touches) are always associated with them. The properties of hardness and softness, heaviness and lightness are not associated with atoms. As Kundakunda remarks : 'Of the eight kinds of touch, hardness and softness, heaviness and lightness are the qualities of molecules, not of the individual atoms.' In fact, the properties of hardness and softness, heaviness and lightness can be associated only with molecules. These properties are generated by the loose or compact aggregation of atoms, and because all the atoms have the same mass, there arises no question of light and heavy or hard and smooth amongst the elementary particles of matter. The difference of light and heavy or hard and smooth in mass is found only amongst molecules.

We have already mentioned that all atoms are not found in a free state. Some of them are in various forms of molecule and some are found as separate entities, i.e., in a free state. Now, how do the atoms living in the forms of molecule become liable to pass to a free state ? The atoms are produced only by division, not by the process of union or combination.<sup>2</sup>

### **Skandha :**

*Skandha* (molecule) has been already defined as an aggregate of atoms. It possesses a gross form and undergoes processes of association and dissociation, as we have seen. The same idea is expressed more lucidly in the following manner :

Molecules are formed in three different ways.<sup>3</sup>

- 
1. Pañcāstikāya-sāra, 88.
  2. Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 27.
  3. Ibid., V. 26.

1. By division or dissociation (*bheda*).
2. By union or association (*saṅghāta*).
3. By the united process of dissociation and association taking place simultaneously.

1. Dissociation occurs on account of two causes, viz., internal and external.<sup>1</sup> The former cause is in the molecules themselves as the phenomenon of radio-activity and the like. The examples of the latter cause are the dissociation of molecules in solution, the breaking under high temperatures, the breaking under high pressures, the breaking under artificial bombardment and the like.
2. Association is defined as the union of separate entities.<sup>2</sup> The assemblage of atoms to form molecules is an instance of association.
3. The united process of dissociation and association is defined as follows : By simultaneous dissociation and association, molecules occupying two spatial particles etc. are produced. Just when one molecule breaks, the remaining part is associated by another molecule.<sup>3</sup>

Advanced researches in physical chemistry have also revealed three processes of molecule-formation. The following lines will clarify the point :

The question to be answered is, in what ways are atoms united in the molecule ? The electronic theory of valency is able to supply a very satisfactory answer. According to this theory, there are three methods of linking atoms. The linkage may be electrovalent, co-valent or co-ordinate.

Molecules with an electrovalent linkage are ionised even in the solid state, X-ray analysis of the crystal indicating that the elementary particles making up the crystal lattice are ions and not atoms or molecules. Nearly all inorganic salts are electrovalent compounds.

- 
1. Sarvārtha-siddhi, V. 26.
  2. Ibid.
  3. Ibid.

The second arrangement, i.e., co-valent linkage is found in organic compounds. The atoms attain stability by a process of sharing electrons. For instance, in the case of the methane gas  $\text{CH}_4$  the carbon atom attains a stable arrangement by sharing four electrons with the four electrons of the four hydrogen atoms.

The third type of linkage, the co-ordinate linkage, involves the sharing of two electrons but both are supplied by the same atom. The process of the formation of a co-ordinate linkage resembles both transference and sharing. Therefore, the three modern processes are transference, sharing and combined transference and sharing.<sup>1</sup>

### Perceptibility of Molecules :

The Jaina thinkers maintain that not only atoms are imperceptible but certain types of molecules are also imperceptible. As Pūjyapāda says : 'Out of the molecules composed even of an infinite number of elementary particles (*aṇus*), some are visible and some invisible.'<sup>2</sup> The question, therefore, is : How the invisible molecules become visible, i.e., what is the process by which the imperceptible molecules are perceived ? The answer is as under :

'If a molecule breaks and the broken part then attaches itself to another molecule, the resulting combination may be coarse enough to be perceived.'<sup>3</sup> The point is that the imperceptible molecule becomes perceptible by the combined process of division and union, i.e., dissociation and association. For instance, the molecules of hydrogen and chlorine gas are invisible to the eyes but when each of them breaks and then combines to form two molecules of hydrochloric acid, the product becomes visible. Regarding the other sense-perceptions, the same rule can be applied.

1. Cosmology : Old and New, p. 183.

2. Sarvārtha-siddhi, V. 28.

3. Ibid.

### Union of Matter :

Molecules are formed in three different ways, as we have already indicated. Of these three ways, one is purely divisional. The remaining two are not so. Association or union plays an important part in determining their nature. Now, what is this union or association ? How does matter unite ? It is said that 'the *pudgalas* unite by virtue of the properties of '*snigdha*' and '*rūkṣa*' associated with them.'<sup>1</sup> '*Snigdha*' and '*rūkṣa*' are two kinds of touch. The former is known as smooth and the latter as rough.

The *pudgalas* cannot unite in an arbitrary way. There are certain conditions which restrict the freedom of association. They are as follows :

1. The ultimate elementary particles at the lowest energy-level of smoothness or roughness do not unite at all.
2. The ultimate elementary particles with equal degrees of smoothness or roughness and of the same kind cannot unite with an atom of their own kind. In other words, an electron would not combine with another electron or a positron with a positron if both the particles are at the same energy-level, but an electron can unite with a positron or *vice versa* under the same conditions.<sup>2</sup> This is one opinion.<sup>3</sup> According to the other opinion, the *paramāṇus* of opposite kinds cannot unite even if the degrees of smoothness or roughness are equal.<sup>4</sup> Thus, while the latter view denies the possibility of union for all combinations of particles at the same energy-level, the former view recognises such a possibility if the union is between the particles of opposite kinds.

1. Tattvārtha-sūtra, V. 32.

2. Cosmology : Old and New, p. 216.

3. Śvetāmbara view.

4. Digambara view.

Consequently, according to the latter view, a smooth or a rough elementary particle of a higher level combines with another of a similar or a dissimilar type if they differ in their degrees of smoothness or roughness by two units. The former view does not recognise this as a necessary condition for the union of the particles of dissimilar types, nor does it accept the conception of a higher level. According to this view, a smooth or a rough atom combines with another of a similar type if they differ in their degrees of smoothness or roughness by two or more units. With regard to dissimilar types, this difference is not necessary. They can unite in an equal condition except in the case of the lowest type. The following table will show the difference underlying these two views :

*Former View*

<i>Energy-level</i>		<i>Similar</i>	<i>Dissimilar</i>
1. Lowest	Lowest	... No union	... No union
2. Lowest	1"more	... "	... Union
3. Lowest	2"more	... Union	... "
4. Lowest	3" etc.more	... "	... "
5. Higher	equally higher...	... No union	... "
6. Higher	1"more	... "	... "
7. Higher	2"more	... Union	... "
8. Higher	3"etc.more	... "	... "

*Latter View*

<i>Energy-level</i>		<i>Similar</i>	<i>Dissimilar</i>
1. Lowest	Lowest	... No union	... No union
2. Lowest	1"more	... "	... "
3. Lowest	2"more	... "	... "
4. Lowest	3" etc.more	... "	... "
5. Higher	equally higher...	... "	... "
6. Higher	1"more	... "	... "
7. Higher	2"more	... Union	... Union
8. Higher	3"etc.more	... No union	... No union



The latter view can be explained in a different manner also. A smooth elementary particle combines with another similar particle differing in energy-level by two units. A rough elementary particle combines with another rough elementary particle differing again in energy-level by two units. A smooth particle can also unite with a rough particle and *vice versa*. Particles at the lowest energy-level do not unite. The union of the various particles of different energy-levels may form an odd or an even series (as 3,5,7,9,11 etc. or 2,4,6,8,10 etc).<sup>1</sup>

The result of union is that an elementary particle or a molecule in the process of association with a higher degree of smoothness or roughness absorbs the one with a lower degree into itself. In other words, 'in the molecules of numerable, innumerable and infinite atoms, the atoms with greater degrees of smoothness or roughness when uniting, alter the atoms of lesser degree to their own kind.'<sup>2</sup> The union between dissimilar particles of equal degrees of smoothness and roughness produces a neutral effect.

### Sub-Classes of Matter :

Broadly, matter is divided into two classes : atoms and molecules. Matter is divided into six classes also.<sup>3</sup> These classes are not different from atoms and molecules. They are, in other words, their sub-divisions :

1. *Solids* - Earth, stone and the like are the solid forms of matter. This class is called *sthūla-sthūla*.
2. *Liquids*-Butter, water, oil, milk and the like are the liquid forms of matter. They are known as *sthūla*.
3. *Energy*-It manifests itself in the forms of heat, light, electricity and the like. It is called *sthūla-sūkṣma*.
4. *Gases*-Air etc. are the forms of gases. This class is known as *sūkṣma-sthūla*.

---

1. Gommatā-sāra : Jīva-kāṇḍa, 615.

2. Gommatā-sāra : Jīva-kāṇḍa, 619.

3. Niyama-sāra, 21.

5. *Fine Matter*-It is responsible for thought-activities and is beyond sense-perception. This type of matter is called *sūkṣma*.
6. *Extra-fine Matter* - The forms of single elementary particles are composed of extra-fine matter. It is called *sūkṣma-sūkṣma*.

### Matter and Soul :

Does matter influence soul (*jīva*)? The Jaina system admits that matter does influence the worldly soul. How does it influence ? It forms the physical basis of the body, speech, mind and respiration of the worldly soul. The same idea is expressed in the following lines :

Matter is the cause of the making of bodies. One kind of molecules called *āhāra-vargaṇā* forms the first three types of bodies, viz., the organic body of human and animal beings, the body of the beings of heaven and hell and sometimes of human beings and animals also in an extraordinary condition, and a subtle body which is developed by advanced mystics and the respiration. *Tejo-vargaṇā* forms the fourth type, viz., the electric body. Speech and mind are formed by two special types of molecules called *bhāṣā-vargaṇā* and *mano-vargaṇā* respectively. The inner subtle body, i.e., *kārmaṇa-śarīra*, which is the root cause of all mental and physical activities, is constituted by *kārmaṇa-vargaṇā*.<sup>1</sup>

Pleasure, pain, life and death are also experienced through the agency of matter. Moreover, one piece of matter is capable of producing physical and chemical changes in another piece of matter. For instance, bronze is purified by ashes, water is clarified by an organic substance '*kataka*,' and so on. It is needless to say that the whole super-structure of modern science is built upon physical and chemical changes in matter.

---

1. Gommaṭa-sāra : Jīva-kāṇḍa, 606-8.

### Five Kinds of Bodies :

We have stated that bodies are constituted by matter and such bodies are of five kinds :

1. *Audārika* - The body which is gross and physical is called *audārika* body. The organic body of human beings, animal beings and vegetable kingdom is of this type. It is full of blood, bones etc.
2. *Vaikriya* - That which is possessed by the beings of heaven and hell and by human beings as well as animals possessing an extraordinary power (*labdhi*) is called *vaikriya* body. It is invisible and is capable of transformation in different shapes and sizes.
3. *Āhāraka* - The subtle body which is developed by an advanced *yogin* is called *āhāraka* body. It can be projected, i.e., sent to great distances on special occasions.
4. *Taijasa* - It is composed of electric matter and is a necessary link between the *audārika* body and the *kārmaṇa* body. It possesses the power of digesting the food we take.
5. *Kārmaṇa* - The inner subtle body, which is the seed of all mental and physical activities, is called *kārmaṇa* body. It is composed of eight kinds of karmas.

We can perceive only the first of these five kinds with our sense-organs. The remaining bodies are subtle. 'The succeeding body is subtler than the preceding one in order. The *taijasa* and *kārmaṇa* bodies are not obstructed by any material form. They are beyond any kind of check and can travel the whole universe. Both these bodies are associated with a worldly soul from beginningless time. Each and every *jīva* possesses at least these two bodies. At the time of transmigration, only these two bodies are possessed by the souls. The mundane soul can possess four bodies at the most at a time.'<sup>1</sup> The following scheme will clearly indicate the point :

---

1. Tattvārtha-sūtra, II. 38, 41-4.

At least two bodies : *Taijasa* and *kārmaṇa*.

Three bodies : *Taijasa*, *kārmaṇa* and *audārika*

or

*Taijasa*, *kārmaṇa* and *vaikriya*.

Four bodies : *Taijasa*, *kārmaṇa*, *audārika* and *vaikriya*

or

*Taijasa*, *kārmaṇa*, *audārika* and *āhāraka*.

From the above scheme it is evident that no soul possesses five bodies at a time. Of course, alternately, it can possess all the bodies at different times. It is also obvious that a soul cannot have both the *āhāraka* and *vaikriya* bodies at the same time, while the *taijasa* and *kārmaṇa* bodies are always present so long as the soul is in bondage.

### Manifestations of Matter :

Some effects of matter in the forms of body, mind etc. have been mentioned. There remain still some important effects as the manifestations of matter. They are in the forms of sound, union, fineness, grossness, figure, divisibility, darkness, shade, heat and light.

### Sound :

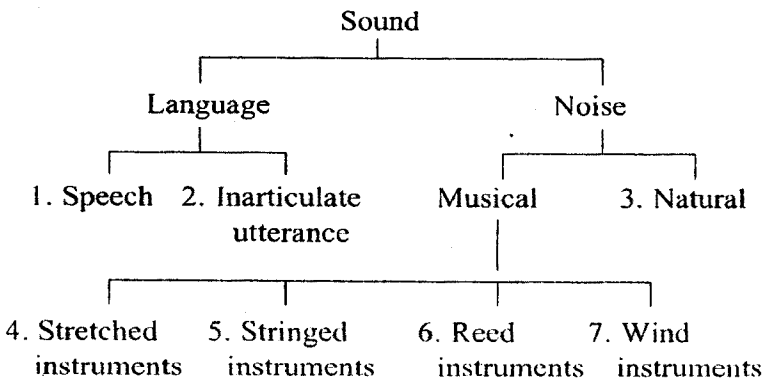
Some Indian systems of thought like the Vaiśeṣika etc. associate sound with ether. Jainism does not accept this view and explains the creation of sound as due to the violent contact of one material object with another. A single molecule in an isolated form cannot produce sound. It is on account of this theory of sound that the system regards an individual atom as unsounding by itself. The atom is defined as having a fine form, the cause of elements like earth, fire, water and air and unsounding. The cause of sound has been pointed out to be the striking of molecules against one another.<sup>1</sup>

---

1. Pañcāstikāya-sāra, 85-6.

The scientist also regards sound as a product of matter. Experiments in the sphere of science have shown that 'sound does not travel in vacuum.' If sound were generated by ether as is supposed by other schools, it should be heard in the vacuous space also, for ether is present everywhere. In the opinion of the scientist, the source of sound is in the state of vibration. For example, the prongs of a tuning-fork, a bell, the strings of a piano and the air in an organ-pipe are all in a state of vibration when they are producing sound.

Sound is classified into two chief divisions : sound incorporated in languages and sound not finding place in any language. The former is further divided into two categories : articulate utterance or speech and sounds made by creatures etc. The latter, i.e., the sound which does not find place in any language, is further classified into two sub-divisions : sounds produced by human beings with the help of musical instruments and natural sounds such as the roar of the thunder, the rippling of water, and the like. Musical sound is further classified into four categories : musical sound of a stretched instrument such as a drum, musical sound of a stringed instrument such as a violin, musical sound of a metallic instrument such as a bell, and sound produced from a wind instrument such as an organ-pipe. The next table will show the scheme of the classification in a lucid manner :

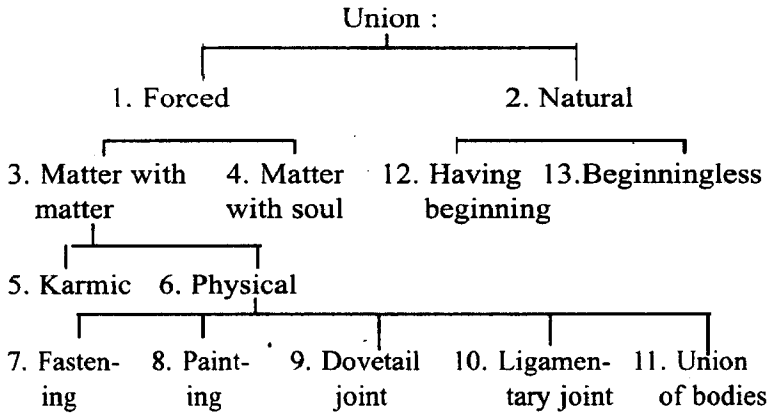


Expressed in the form of the above table, we have seven classes of sound :

1. Speech or articulate utterance.
2. Inarticulate utterance
3. Natural noise.
4. Noise of a stretched musical instrument.
5. Noise of a stringed musical instrument.
6. Noise produced from a metallic instrument of music.
7. Noise produced from a wind instrument of music.

### Union :

It is classified as under :



1. *Forced* - Union produced by the efforts of the body, speech or mind of a person.
2. *Natural* - Union produced without any effort of a person.
3. *Matter with Matter* - Union of one kind of matter with another kind of matter.
4. *Matter with Soul* - Union of matter with spirit.
5. *Karmic* - Union of karmic matter with subtle bodies.
6. *Physical* - Physical combinations.
7. *Fastening* - As the fastening of a chain to a chariot.

8. *Painting* - As the painting over a canvas or mural painting.
9. *Dovetail Joint* - As joints in pieces of timber.
10. *Ligamentary Joint* - Such joints as of a living body.
11. *Union of Bodies* - Union of bodies more than one in number.
12. *Natural Union having Beginning* - That natural union which has a beginning as has resulted from a definite cause, such as the union of different colours in a rainbow, is called natural union having a beginning. Formation of clouds, production of lightning etc. are included in this class.
13. *Beginningless Union* - Eternal union such as the union of the different parts of substances like the medium of motion, the medium of rest, space and the like.

### **Fineness and Grossness :**

Each of these manifestations is of two categories : extreme and relative.<sup>1</sup> The atoms furnish the example of extreme fineness and the universe itself constitutes the example of extreme grossness. There is nothing smaller than an atom and nothing bigger than the universe in the world of matter. Material objects vary relatively to each other in quantity. For instance, a coconut is bigger than an orange and so on.

### **Figure :**

Figure is nothing but the shape of a body. It may be regular, circular, triangular, rectangular and the like; or it may be an irregular body like the shape of clouds.

### **Divisibility :**

It is of six kinds : <sup>2</sup>

1. *Separation* - As sawing a piece of wood.
2. *Grinding* - As making wheat into flour.

---

1. Tattvārtha-rāja-vārtika, V. 24. 14-5.

2. Tattvārtha-rāja-vārtika, V. 24. 18.

3. *Parting* - As the separate parts of a broken pitcher.
4. *Chaffing* - As the separation of chaff from rice or pulses.
5. *Layers* - As the separation of layers in a sheet of mica.
6. *Smithereen* - As a blacksmith smites with his hammer.

### **Darkness :**

It is opposite to light and is generally the cause of invisibility of objects. It is a positive reality existing independent of light. The Naiyāyikas and the Vaiśeṣikas maintain that the existence of darkness should not be regarded as separate from light. They think that darkness is nothing more than the negation of light. In other words, they do not regard darkness as a positive reality. They believe that darkness is nothing but the negation of light. The Jaina thinkers do not agree with this view of the Naiyāyikas and Vaiśeṣikas. They say that darkness has an independent existence. Modern scientists also believe in the existence of 'dark rays.' Without the presence of these 'dark rays' photography in pitch darkness would have been impossible.

### **Shade :**

It is of two kinds : virtual image produced by a plane mirror which shows the object laterally inverted and uninverted image like shadow or image of a modern cinema screen. The obstruction of light is the cause of the production of shadows.<sup>1</sup>

Regarding the formation of shadows, the physicists hold that an opaque obstacle in the path of the rays of light casts a shadow, because the rays are obstructed and are unable to enter the region of the shadow. The images formed by lenses and mirrors are of two kinds called virtual and real. The example of a virtual image is the image seen in a looking glass, whereas the example of the latter is the images on a cinema screen. In the case of a virtual image the rays appear to come from the image, whereas in the case of a real image the rays actually come from it.

---

1. Sarvārtha-siddhi, V. 24.



**Heat and Light :**

Heat is the sunlight, the light of fire, that of the electric lamp and the like. Light is the moonlight, the light of jewels or the light of the glow-worm. The former predominates in heat-rays and the latter in light-rays. Science also regards heat and light as two separate manifestations of energy (matter).



## CHAPTER VI

### KNOWLEDGE

The relation of knowledge with soul in Jainism is not like that in the system of the Naiyāyikas and Vaiśeṣikas, as we have already seen. The Jaina writers have defined knowledge as the essence of soul. Soul has other characteristics also, as we have mentioned, but the Jaina thinkers always emphasised knowledge to be the chief characteristic possessed by soul. Kundakunda has stated that although from the empirical point of view there is difference between soul and knowledge, yet, from the transcendental point of view it is sufficient to say that soul is knower and nothing else.<sup>1</sup> In this way, he apparently amalgamated all the characteristics of soul in the conception of knowledge. He went further and clearly stated that absolute bliss is absolute knowledge. Bliss and knowledge are identical! He further said that there is no difference between the knower and his knowledge.<sup>2</sup> In the Jaina canons also we find such expressions to the effect that from one point of view soul is knowledge and knowledge is soul. Kundakunda further said that from the empirical point of view the omniscient perceives and knows the whole of reality and from the transcendental point of view he perceives and knows the self only! (Here the self includes all the knowledge of reality.) In this way, we conclude that knowledge plays an important part in the conception of soul, emancipation etc. We intend to give a brief account of the Jaina theory of knowledge.

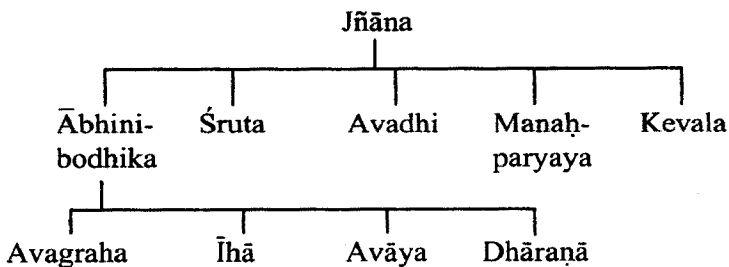
- 
1. Samaya-sāra, 6-7.
  2. Pravacana-sāra, I. 59-60.
  3. Samaya-sāra, 10, II, 433.
  4. Niyama-sāra, 158.

### Knowledge in the Jaina Canons :

Knowledge is divided into five broad categories in the Jaina canons. The conception of five-fold knowledge is very old. We come across some descriptions in the canons which show that the conception of five-fold knowledge is pre-canonical. Even before Lord Mahāvīra this division existed. Keśikumāra, a preceptor following the tradition of Lord Pārśvanātha, the twenty-third *tirthaṅkara* of Jainism, mentioned five kinds of knowledge as *ābhini-bodhika-jñāna*, *śruta-jñāna*, *avadhi-jñāna*, *manahparyaya-jñāna* and *kevala-jñāna*.<sup>1</sup> It clearly shows that Lord Mahāvīra had accepted the tradition of the conception of knowledge as it was in existence before him.

Now, how does this conception develop in the canonical period ? What additions are made ? We find three stages of development in the canons: <sup>2</sup>

1. At the first stage, knowledge is divided into five categories according to the above tradition as under :

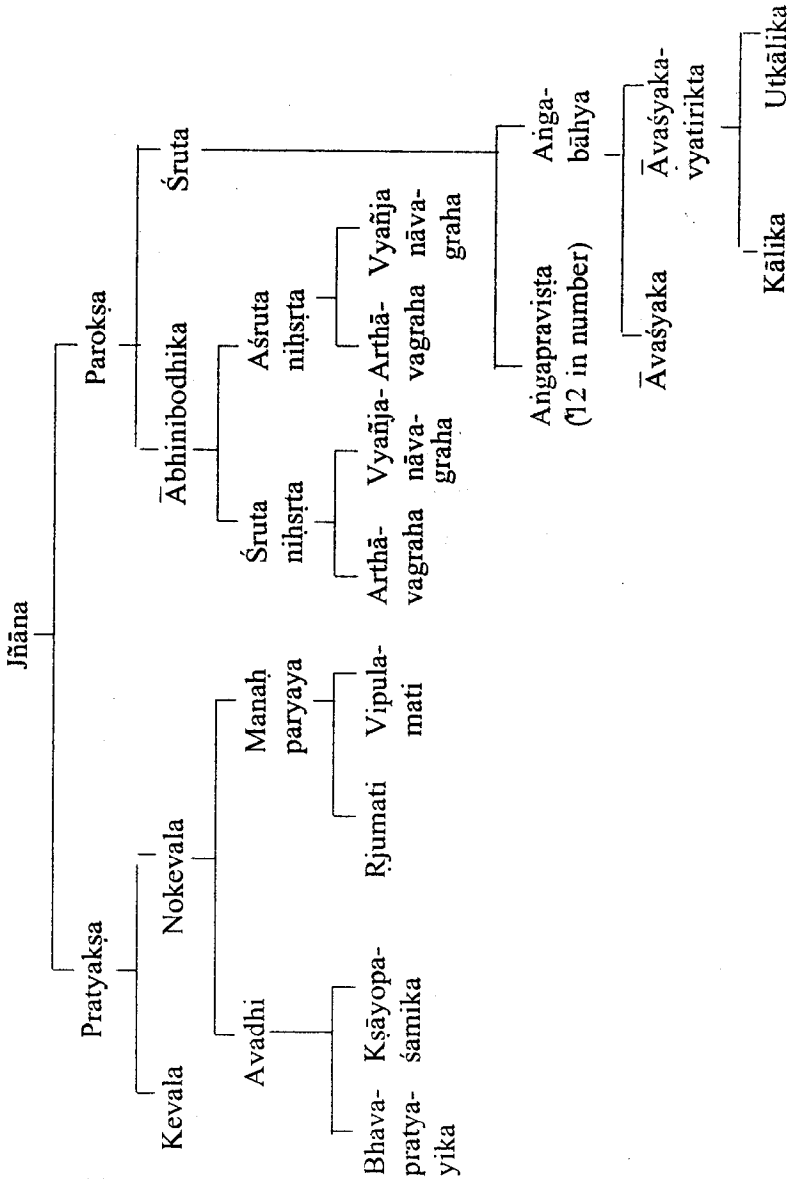


2. The second stage presents two broad divisions of knowledge, viz., *pratyakṣa* and *parokṣa*. These two categories are further divided into various sub-divisions.

The scheme according to the *Sthānāṅga-sūtra* is as follows :

1. Rāja-praśnīya, 165.

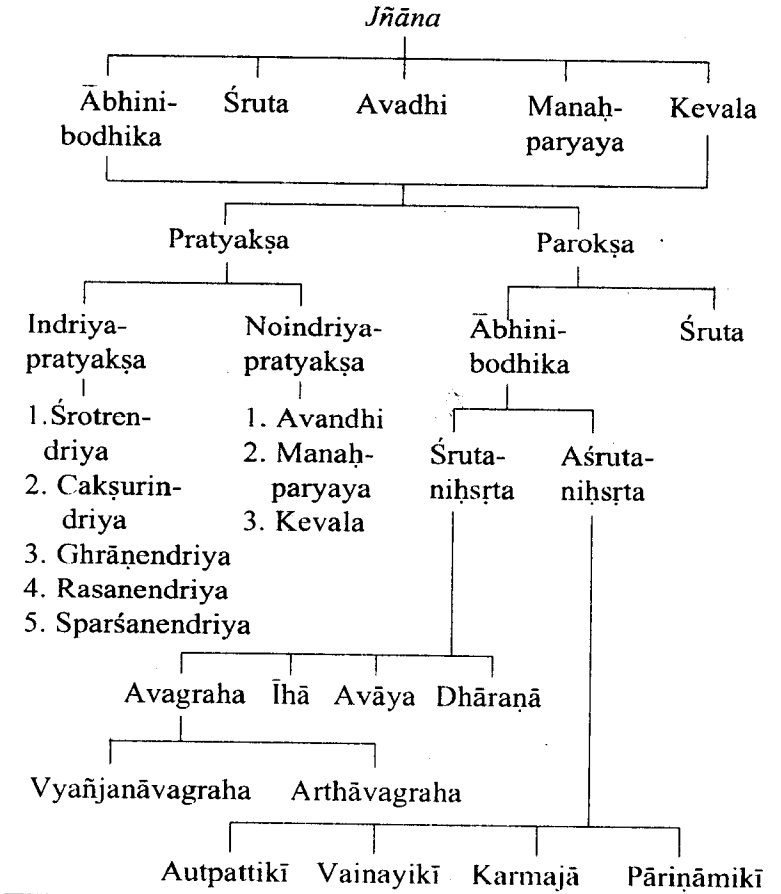
2. Nyāyāvatāra-vārtika-vṛtti : Introduction, p. 58.



This table shows that knowledge is divided into two main categories, not five. This two-fold division is generally

accepted by the Jaina logicians who discussed the theory of knowledge on the ground of logic. In the Tattvārtha-sūtra, first of all knowledge is divided into five categories and then these categories have been included in two categories, viz., *pratyakṣa* and *parokṣa*<sup>1</sup> as the means of valid knowledge. This latter division clearly indicates that Umāsvāti was also influenced by the second stage of development.

3. The third stage is as follows :



1. *Matiśrutāvadhimanahparyayakevalāni jñanam.* 1. 9.  
*Ādye parokṣam,* 1.11. *Pratyakṣamanyat,* 1. 12.

On this stage of development, sensory knowledge has been placed in both categories, viz., direct knowledge and indirect knowledge. On the second stage, sensory knowledge as well as scriptural knowledge was placed in the category of indirect knowledge which, as a matter of fact, is in the true spirit of Jainism. The third stage that has its root in the Nandi-sūtra, seems to be influenced by the general tendency of Indian philosophy which regards sensory knowledge as direct. The later Jaina logicians and philosophers also adopted this view in the name of *laukika pratyakṣa*. The gist of the third stage is:

1. *Avadhi*, *manaḥpariyaya* and *kevala-jñāna* are really direct.
2. *Śruta-jñāna* is always indirect.
3. *Mati-jñāna* produced by the sense-organs is really indirect but is regarded as direct for practical purposes.
4. *Mati-jñāna* produced by the mind is always indirect.

Thus, these three stages of development of the conception of knowledge in the canons show that all the classifications of the logical period as well as the schemes of division of knowledge of the earlier philosophers were rooted in the canons. We shall explain the various categories of knowledge, viz., *avagraha*, *īhā* etc. while dealing with the logical conception of knowledge.

### Means of Cognition in the Jaina Canons :

It is wrong to say that the Jaina canons discuss the categories of knowledge only and not the means of valid knowledge. We come across many references where the means of valid knowledge are independently discussed. In the Bhagavatī-sūtra, Lord Mahāvīra says : There are four means of valid knowledge, viz., perception (*pratyakṣa*), inference (*anumāna*), analogy (*upamāna*) and authority (*āgama*)...<sup>1</sup>

1. Bhagavatī-sūtra, V. 43. 192.

It apparently indicates that the ancient Jaina thinkers certainly believed in the separate and independent discussion of the means of valid knowledge. Their deliberations were not confined to the categories of knowledge only. They discussed the means of valid cognition as well like other systems of philosophy. Generally, such means are four in number, but in some places we find three also. As it is mentioned in the Sthānāṅga-sūtra : Determination is of three kinds, viz., perception, authority and inference.<sup>1</sup>

### Logical Conception of Knowledge :

When we look at the Tattvārtha-sūtra, we come to know that Umāsvāti made no difference between the categories of knowledge and the means of valid knowledge. In other words, he did not differentiate *jñāna* and *pramāṇa*. He observes : *Jñāna* is of five varieties, viz., *mati*, *śruta*, *avadhi*, *manah-paryaya* and *kevala*. All these varieties are *pramāṇa*.<sup>2</sup> He did not mention any particular characteristic except 'rightness' regarding the concept of *pramāṇa*. He took *jñāna* (right knowledge) and *pramāṇa* as identical.

The later philosophers defined *pramāṇa* independently and strictly. They did not conceive knowledge as the means of valid knowledge in a general form but added some specific characteristics to it. Māṇikyanandin says : That *jñāna* is *pramāṇa* which has the determination of itself as well as of the object not known before. It enables us to get the desirable and give up the undesirable. Hence, it can be nothing but knowledge.<sup>3</sup>

Hemacandra writes in his *Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā* : The valid judgment about an object is *pramāṇa*. In another language, a means of knowledge is the authentic definitive cognition of an object.<sup>4</sup> Vālideva says : That *jñāna* is *pramāṇa* which has

1. Sthānāṅga-sūtra, 185.

2. Tattvārtha-sūtra, I. 9-10.

3. Parīkṣā-mukha, I. 1-2.

4. *Samyagarthanirṇayaḥ pramāṇam*, I. 1.2.

the determination of itself as well as of the object. It is able to tell us what is desirable and what is undesirable. Hence, it can be knowledge only.<sup>1</sup>

On the basis of these various definitions of *pramāṇa*, we can understand what type of knowledge is *pramāṇa* and what type of knowledge is not *pramāṇa*. The gist of all these definitions is that it is a right knowledge or a valid judgment which is *pramāṇa*, and not a wrong one. In other words, all *pramāṇa* is *jñāna* but all *jñāna* is not *pramāṇa*. The Buddhists regard indeterminate knowledge as the means of valid cognition. According to the Jainas, indeterminate knowledge is no knowledge at all. It is only an intuition (*darśana*). The determination of knowledge is essential, because if the knowledge itself is not self-conscious, it cannot determine the object. The Jainas believe in the self-illuminating nature of knowledge, therefore, no question of infinite regress arises.

### Validity of Knowledge :

We have seen that knowledge must be valid, if it is to be justified in being called *pramāṇa*. Now, the question is : How can the nature of validity be determined ? The Jaina thinkers say that 'the validity is determined either intrinsically or extrinsically.'<sup>2</sup> They believe in both the types, viz., the intrinsic validity and the extrinsic validity. The determination of validity is in some cases achieved by a cognition by itself. As for instance is the habitual cognition of one's own palm induced by a repeated course of experience or the direct achievements of results such as by the acts of bathing, drinking etc., there occurs cessation of heat, thirst etc., and this alone gives final satisfaction to the subject and a person does not feel an urge for further scrutiny of his cognition. This shows that validity is self-determined, i.e., intrinsic.

On some occasions, the experience of validity is secured by means of an external datum. We may point, for instance, to

1. *Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka*, I. 2-3.

2. *Prāmāṇyāniścayaḥ svataḥ prato vā-Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā*, I. 1. 8.



the primal perceptual cognition unconfirmed by repeated experience. Since such cognition has not as yet been ascertained to stand in unfailing correspondence with the object, its validity is determined (1) by a subsequent confirmatory cognition of the same object, or (2) by a cognition of its pragmatic consequences, or (3) by the cognition of an object invariably or universally concomitant with it. This establishes the fact that validity is determined by other means. It is called extrinsic validity.

### **Classification of the Means of Valid Knowledge :**

The means of valid knowledge are of two kinds. Is this two-fold classification to be understood in the terms of what has been propounded by the Buddhists, viz., perception and inference<sup>1</sup> or in a different way ? The Jaina classification is certainly different. Their two kinds are known as direct and indirect.<sup>2</sup> From the practical point of view they are called perceptual and non-perceptual. According to the Cārvāka, there is no other means of knowledge than perception (*pratyakṣa* or direct knowledge). In order to refute his view, it is said that there is means of valid knowledge other than perception and it is proved by the determination of the validity and invalidity of knowledge, by the knowledge of other men's thoughts, and by negation.<sup>3</sup> The realisation of the distinction between valid and invalid cognitions, of another man's thought, and the negation of what transcends sense-intuition are not possible without the help of other means of valid knowledge such as inference.

Furthermore, the validity of even perceptual cognition can be established only on the evidence of its unfailing correspondence with the fact. Why should the Cārvāka not acknowledge the validity of non-perceptual cognitions, arising

- 
1. Pratyakṣamanumānaṁ ca — Nyāya-bindu, I.3.
  2. Pramāṇaṁ dvidhā. Pratyakṣaṁ parokṣaṁ ca — Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, I. 1. 9-10.
  3. Ibid., I. 1.11.

either from verbal testimony (authority) or from a logical ground (inference) known to be necessarily concomitant with a fact, on the identical ground of unfailing correspondence with the fact ? Hence, non-perceptual cognition is as valid as perceptual cognition.

The Vaiśeṣikas as well as the Sāṅkhya thinkers contend that there are three means of knowledge, viz., perception, inference and authority. The Naiyāyikas accept analogy in addition to the three. The Prābhākaras accept the four and add implication as the fifth. The followers of Bhaṭṭa (Kumārila) accept negation as an additional means and thus assert six such means in all. All these means of valid knowledge except negation are included in the perceptual and non-perceptual cognitions accepted by the Jainas. As regards negation, it is not different from perception. Since reality partakes of the nature of both being and non-being, negation cannot have an object of its own. As a matter of fact, reality is made up of both being and non-being as its constitutive elements, since it has being in respect of its own nature and non-being in respect of the nature of another. It is evident that a perceptual cognition determines, by way of affirmation and negation, its object in the following way : When we say that the jar is not on the ground, we simply mean by it the perception of a surface of the ground and not a perception of the jar. The surface of the ground itself is the negation of the jar. The experience of negation is not additional which compels us to admit an independent means of cognition in the form of negation or non-existence. The position is as follows :

'A positive real that is determined as 'this is exclusively of such and such a character' is not capable of being understood without the concomitant cognisance of the negation of what is different from it.'

---

1. Śloka-vārtika : Abhāva, 15.

The Mīmāṃsakas might contend : Well, let reality be accepted as partaking of the nature of both being and non being, but that does not affect our position in the least, as we, too, have proved this very truth. Our contention is that only the positive element of being with which a sense-organ comes in contact is the field of perceptual cognition and as regards the element of non-being, it cannot be so. The latter is consequently held to be cognised by a separate means, viz., negation. How can then it be maintained that negation would have no separate object ? The Jaina refutes this contention as under :

If the element of non-being be not different from the element of being, why should it not be liable to apprehension by perceptual knowledge ? If, again, it be different, still it has to be admitted that jar and the like are perceived when a surface of land is perceived as in the form of the non-being of jar and the like. It is a universal rule that the non-apprehension of the non-being of anything is necessarily concomitant with the apprehension of its being.

Moreover, this so-called means of valid cognition is of no use being of the nature of mere negation of the five positive means of knowledge. And thus, it is the reverse of cognition and as such how can it function as a means of valid cognition? It follows, therefore, that negation as a means has no object, since there is nothing like pure non-being separate from the double nature of the real. The conclusion, therefore, is that it cannot be an additional means of valid cognition.

"That which is direct or immediate is perceptual cognition."

The directness or immediacy is defined as : consisting in either its independence of the services of another means or in

- 
1. *Viśadaḥ Pratyakṣam* - Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, I. 1. 13.
  - Spastam pratyakṣam*-Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka, II. 2.
  - Viśadam pratyakṣamiti*-Parīkṣā-mukha, II. 3.

apprehension of its content as 'this.'<sup>1</sup>

### Categories of Perception :

The most significant thing to be noted in this connection is that the Jaina philosophers divide perceptual knowledge into two categories.<sup>2</sup> In the first category they put that perceptual cognition which is directly related to soul. This perception is called direct perception, immediate perception, transcendental perception, extra-sensory perception or real perception. The second category is known as empirical perception, pragmatic perception or sensory perception.

### Direct Perception :

'The perfect manifestation of the innate nature of a soul, emerging on the total annihilation of all obstructive veils, is called direct perception.'<sup>3</sup>

The self has consciousness as its essence which is luminous by its very nature. The manifestation of the luminous nature of self, which is nothing but the self as manifested, is styled *pāramārthika pratyakṣa*, i.e., real perception. It is the highest kind of all cognitions. It is characterised as pure and perfect in the scriptures, since it is independent of the services of external instruments such as sense-organs and mind. It emerges on the disappearance of obscuring veils which results from the total purging of all the obstructive karmas. The soul is manifested in its pure nature and perceives the whole of reality in a direct and immediate manner. Hence, it is called omniscience (*kevala-jñāna*).

Omniscience is not the only instance of transcendental

- 
1. *Pramāṇāntarānapekṣedantayā pratibhāso vā vaiśadyam* —  
Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā. I. 1. 14  
*Pratīyantarāvyaavadhānena viśeṣavattayā vā pratibhāsanam*  
*vaiśadyam-Parīkṣā-mukha*, II. 4.
  2. *Tad dvīprakāram sāmvyāvahārikam pāramārthikam ca* —  
Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka, II. 4.
  3. *Tatsarvathāvarānavilaye cetanasya svarūpāvīrbhāvo mukhyam*  
*kevalam-Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā*, I. 1. 15.

knowledge, but there are other varieties also.

'Owing to the variation of the degrees of the destruction of obstructive veils, the transcendental knowledge admits of two varieties, viz., limited direct perception and direct perception of the modes of other minds.'<sup>1</sup> They are nothing but clairvoyance and telepathy.

Pure perception occurs on the complete destruction of all possible veils. But when there is variation in the degrees of the annihilation of the veils, there occur two varieties of extra-sensory perception, viz., *avadhi* and *manahparyaya*. *Avadhi* means 'limit' or 'that which is confined' and so it is said : '*Avadhi* is limited to the objects having form,<sup>2</sup> i.e., colour, taste, smell and touch. It is of two kinds according as it is congenital or acquired by merit. Of these, the first belongs to the denizens of heaven and hell just as movement in the sky belongs to birds. The second variety is possible for man and animals.

The mind is a particular substance and its modes are the different changes of state emerging into acts of thought. And the knowledge of these modes is called *manahparyaya-jñāna*.

### Clairvoyance :

The self, according to Jaina philosophy, has inherent capacity to know all things irrespective of time and space. Temporal and spatial distance is immaterial if the self were in its perfection. To put it in a different language, the self is inherently capable of cognising all things together with all their characteristics irrespective of temporal distinctions, i.e., past, present and future, and spatial differences, i.e., here, there, near, far and the like. It is only because of karmic obstructions that this capacity is obscured. Pure perception occurs on the total destruction of all karmic obstructions. But when there is

- 
1. *Tattāratamyevadhimanahparyāyau ca* — *Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā*, I. 1.18.
  2. *Rūpiṣvavadheh* — *Tattvārtha-sūtra*, I. 28.

variation in degrees of this destruction, there occur different varieties of perception. As regards the occurrence of normal perceptions, they are derived from the senses and mind. Regarding the occurrence of super-normal perceptions, the Jaina holds that they are derived directly from the self. They are not dependent on the senses and mind. Nevertheless, there is variation in degrees of their occurrence. Perfect perception occurs on the complete annihilation of all possible veils. But when there are differences in the subsidence and annihilation of these veils, there occur two varieties of super-normal perception, viz., clairvoyance and telepathy.

Clairvoyance is confined to the objects having form. Only those things which have shape, colour etc. can be perceived through the faculty of clairvoyance. This faculty differs in scope and durability with different persons due to the difference of destruction and subsidence of karmic veils. The highest type of clairvoyance can perceive all the objects having form. With regard to space, it extends over a space that could be occupied by innumerable space-points (*pradeśas*) of the size of the universe. As regards time, it pierces into innumerable cycles of time, both past and future. It cannot perceive all the modes of all the things. It knows only a part of them. The lowest type of clairvoyance can cognise the object occupying a very small fraction of space. In the technical language of the Jaina, it can extend to a very small fraction of an '*aṅgula*' and know the things having form that lie therein. As regards time, it can penetrate only a small part of time which is less than a second. Regarding the modes, it can know only a part of all the modes of its object.<sup>a</sup>

Clairvoyance is of six types : First, a clairvoyance which continues to exist if a person leaves a particular place and goes elsewhere. This type is called *anugāmin*. Second, a

---

1. Nandi-sūtra, 16.

clairvoyance that does not continue to exist in the aforesaid situation. It is opposed to the former. This variety is known as *ananugāmin*. Third, a clairvoyance that increases in its scope and durability as time passes. It is called *vardhamāna*. Fourth, a clairvoyance which embraces deterioration as regards its scope and durability. It is called *hīyamāna*. This type is opposed to the third one. Fifth, a clairvoyance that neither faces growth nor embraces deterioration. This variety is known as *avasthita*. Sixth, a clairvoyance that sometimes increases and sometimes decreases with respect to its scope, durability etc. It is known as *anavasthita*.<sup>1</sup>

### Telepathy :

Let us turn to the nature of telepathy. Mind, according to the Jainas, is a particular material substance. Its modes are different changes of state emerging into acts of thought. Every state of our thought is a particular mode of mind. As our state of thought changes, so also the mind changes. Thus, every states of our thought is reflected in the different modes of our mind. In another language, a state of thought is nothing but a particular mode of mind itself. The direct apprehension of the modes of mind is called telepathy in Jaina philosophy. A person possessing the faculty of telepathy can directly cognise the states of our thought. This cognition of the states of thought is nothing but a direct perception of the modes of the stuff of which the mind is made up.

Telepathy is confined to the abode of human beings. Its emergence is conditioned by a particular capacity possessed by one having a particular mode of right conduct.<sup>2</sup> The faculty of telepathy is not acquired by an ordinary person. It is conditioned by a strict mental and physical discipline.

1. *Anugāmyananugāmivardhamānahīyamānāvasthītānavasthita-bhedāt śaḍvidhaḥ* — Tattvārtha-vārtika, I. 22.4.

2. *Āvaśyaka-niryukti*, 76.

The person possessing the faculty of telepathy is necessarily a homeless ascetic. His character must be of a higher type. Such conditions are not set down in the case of clairvoyance. The faculty of telepathy is far more superior to that of clairvoyance. The Jaina thinkers recognise two varieties of telepathy : *rjumati* and *vipulamati*. The latter is purer and everlasting, i.e., lasts up to the dawn of omniscience, whereas the former is less pure and sometimes trembles too.<sup>1</sup> The latter perceives less number of objects than the former but apprehends them more vividly. It is only he who is at the upward stage of spiritual advancement, is possessed of the latter, whereas the former is possessed by one who is sure to descend the spiritual ladder. The latter is more lucid than the former.

### **Clairvoyance and Telepathy :**

Both clairvoyance and telepathy have reference to material objects. Such being the case, what is the line of demarcation between the two ? The difference of clairvoyance and telepathy consists in the difference of purity, scope, subject and object.<sup>2</sup> The perception of telepathy is more lucid than the perception of clairvoyance. The person possessing the power of clairvoyance also perceives mind, but the person possessing the faculty of telepathy perceives the same more lucidly. The scope of clairvoyance varies from an extremely minute part of an *aṅgula* up to the whole inhabited universe. But the scope of telepathy is limited to the sphere inhabited by human beings only. With regard to the difference of subject, the acquisition of clairvoyance is possible for living beings in all the possible states. But the faculty of telepathy is possible only for a human being possessed of self-restraint and of noble conduct occupying a certain stage of spiritual development. In other words, only those who are

---

1. Tattvārtha-sūtra, I. 25.

2. Ibid., I. 26.



possessed of super-normal powers acquire this type of perception and not any one else, and again it is possible only for a few and not for all of them. As regards the difference in reference to objects, the jurisdiction of clairvoyance is limited to material objects and that again not covering all their modes, but that of telepathy extends to by far the minuter parts.<sup>1</sup>

### **Omniscience :**

Let us turn our attention towards the nature of omniscience. It is the highest type of perception which falls in the category of extra-sensory perception. It is the perfection of the cognising faculty of the self. It is the pure manifestation of the real nature of the conscious principle. The perfect manifestation of the innate nature of the self, arising on the complete annihilation of all obstructive veils, is called omniscience.

The self, as has already been mentioned, possesses consciousness as its essence. It is luminous by its very nature. The manifestation of the luminous nature of the conscious principle is nothing but the self as manifested in the act of knowledge. It occurs on the annihilation of the perception-obscuring veils. The person possessing the super-normal faculty of omniscience perceives all the substances with all their modes.<sup>2</sup> His knowledge is pure and perfect due to the total destruction of all possible obstructions.

Now, there arises a question : If the self is luminous by its very nature, why should it be subject to obscuration ? And if obscuration is possible, it must be subject to obscuration for all time. Though luminous in nature, the moon, the sun and the like are liable to be obscured by a veil of dust, by fog, by a patch of cloud, and so on. The case of the self is exactly parallel to these cases, when it is found to be obscured by different veils of karma. The destruction of the obscurations of

---

1. Commentary on Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, I. 1. 19.

2. Tattvārtha-sūtra, I. 30.

the self is possible by the practice of a particular course of meditation and the like in the same way as the obscuration of the sun, the moon etc. is removed by a blast of wind.

### **Arguments for the Existence of Omniscience :**

The Jaina thinkers advance the following argument to prove the existence of omniscience : "The proof of omniscience follows from the proof of the necessity of the final consummation of the progressive development of cognition."<sup>1</sup> The progressive development of knowledge must reach its completion somewhere, because this is the way of all progression, as seen in the progression of magnitude. Just as heat is subject to varying degrees and consequently reaches the highest limit, so also cognition which is subject to progressive development owing to the various degrees of destruction of the obscuring veil, reaches the highest limit, i.e., omniscience, when the hindrance of the obscuring karma is totally annihilated.

The Mīmāṃsakas are not prepared to accept the possibility of the occurrence of omniscience. To refute the theory of omniscience, the Mīmāṃsaka asks : What does omniscience mean ? Does it mean the cognition of all the objects of the universe ? Or does it mean merely the comprehension of certain principal objects ? As regards the first alternative, does it mean the knowledge of all the objects of the universe in succession or simultaneously ? In the former case, there can be no omniscience, inasmuch as the objects of the world in the shape of past, present and future can never be exhausted. This being the fact, the cognition conditioned by them also can never be complete. Because of the impossibility of the knowledge of all the objects of the world there cannot be omniscience. In the latter case also there can be no omniscience. It is an established fact that all the objects of the world are impossible to be known at one and the same time.

1. *Prajñātiśayaviśrāntyādisiddhestatsiddhiḥ*—Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, I. 1. 16.

How is it possible to comprehend contradictory things like heat and cold at the same time by a single cognition ? Besides, if all the objects are known at one and the same instant by an omniscient soul, in the next moment it would become unconscious having nothing to cognise. And further, the omniscient would be tainted by the attachment etc. of others in cognising them. Consequently, he would cease to be omniscient, since attachment and the like are obstructions to right cognition. Thus, it is established that omniscience does not mean the cognition of all the objects of the universe either successively or simultaneously. On the other hand, it cannot be admitted that omniscience means the cognition of certain principal objects, since only when all the objects of the universe are known, the distinction of principal objects from subordinate objects can be established. Furthermore, it is an impossibility to have the cognition of the past and future which are, really speaking, non-existent. If the omniscient cognises the past and future which are non-existent, his knowledge would be illusory and wrong. If the past and future are known as existent, they are converted into the present. If the past and future are known by the omniscient as present, his knowledge again would be illusory. Hence, logically no existence of omniscience can be established.<sup>1</sup>

All these objections advanced by the Mīmāṃsaka are refuted by the Jaina as follows :<sup>2</sup> Our ordinary perceptions are produced by the sense-organs, and hence, they are incapable of cognising the past, the future and the like. But such is not the case with the omniscient. The perception of an omniscient self is not produced by the sense-organs, hence, it can know supra-sensory objects. It is not produced in succession but simultaneously, and hence, it cognises all the objects of the universe at the same time. It is beyond the limitations of space

---

1. Prameya-kamala-mārtanda, p. 254.

2. Ibid., pp. 260-1.

and time that are the necessary conditions of the perception produced by the senses. As regards the objection that contradictory things like heat and cold cannot be cognised at the same time by a single cognition, the Jaina asks the Mīmāṃsaka : Why contradictory things cannot be cognised by a single cognition ? Is it because they cannot be present at the same time, or because they by their very nature cannot be comprehended by a single cognition, though they are present at the same time ? The former view is not tenable, because contradictory things like heat and cold do exist at the same time. The latter position is also not capable of being defended, because when there is a flash of lightning in the midst of darkness, there occurs a simultaneous perception of two contradictory things, viz., darkness and light. Regarding the objection that if the omniscient knows all the objects of the universe at one instant, in the next moment he would become unconscious having nothing to cognise, the Jaina thinker replies that this type of objection would be valid if both the perception of the omniscient and the whole world were annihilated in the following instant. But, really speaking, both of these are ever-lasting. Hence, it is not an absurdity to hold that the omniscient perceives all the objects of the universe by a single cognition. With respect to the objection that the omniscient would be tainted by the attachment etc. of others in cognising them, and consequently, he would cease to be omniscient, the reply is : Mere knowledge of desires, aversions etc. is not sufficient enough to make a person tainted unless the self is transformed into that very mode. The omniscient self cannot be affected by desires etc. in the least. Hence, it cannot be tainted by the attachment etc. of others by merely knowing them. Besides, desires and aversions are produced by our impure mental states and senses and not by the self which is pure and perfect. The omniscient self is pure and perfect. Hence, it cannot be tainted by the imperfections of sensory cognition. It is

further urged that the omniscient is not capable of perceiving the past and future, inasmuch as they are non-existent. On the other hand, if they are perceived as existent, the perception of the omniscient is illusory. The Jaina says : The past and future are perceived by the omniscient not as present but as past and future. Hence, no question of illusion arises. The past things are as much existent and real in relation to their own time as the present things are existent and real in relation to the present. The same argument can be applied to the future. The omniscient knows the past as existing in the past and the future as existing in the future. Because of the absolute destruction of the obscuring veils of karma, the cognition of an omniscient person is not produced by the senses, but it is produced directly by the self. Hence, the omniscient directly perceives all the objects of the past, present and future. In other words, the limitations of space and time are only for sensory perception. They cannot obstruct the perception of an omniscient person. To summarise, the omniscient directly and immediately perceives all the objects of the universe, past, present and future, subtle and remote, by a single everlasting cognition without the assistance of senses and mind.

### **Empirical Perception :**

Now, we come to empirical perception. 'Empirical perception is conditioned by the senses and mind and is limited.'<sup>1</sup> The perception which has for its condition the senses and mind is called empirical perception, i.e., *sāṁvyavahārika pratyakṣa*. The meaning of the phrase 'conditioned by the senses and mind' is to be understood in both distributive and collective senses. It is said to be conditioned by the senses when the senses play a major part and the mind exerts influence in the generation; and it is said to be conditioned by the mind

---

1. *Indriyānindriyanimittam deśataḥ sāṁvyavahārikamiti* —  
Parīkṣāmukha, II. 5.

when it is generated by the mind alone endowed with a particular kind of purity.

### Senses :

The senses are touch, taste, smell, sight and ear having respectively for their characteristic the capacity of apprehending touch, taste, odour, coloured shape and sound. Each of these again is of two kinds: physical and psychical. The physical sense is of material atoms possessed of definite shape like ear, eye etc. The psychical sense is of two kinds : Attainment (*labdhi*) and conscious activity (*upayoga*). Attainment means acquisition of the capacity of manifestation of the sense-activity. Conscious activity is a particular modification of the self due to attainment.<sup>1</sup>

### Mind :

The mind is the organ of apprehension of all the objects of all the senses.<sup>2</sup> All the objects of our senses are apprehended by the mind and so it is called the organ of apprehension of all the objects.

The mind is also of two kinds : physical and psychical. The physical mind is nothing but the matter transformed into it. The psychical mind is the conscious activity.

An objection is raised here that the statement about the empirical perception 'it is conditioned by the senses and mind' is inadequate. Thus, for example, visual cognition has for its additional conditions the presence of object and light. In answer to this, it is said : 'The object and light are not the conditions of cognition, because of the lack of concomitance in difference (*vyatireka*) between the two.'<sup>3</sup> The meaning is that the external

1. *Sparśarasagandharūpaśabdagrahanalakṣaṇāni sparśanarasana-ghrāṇacakṣuḥśrotrāṇīndriyāṇi dravyabhāvabhedāni. Dravyendriyam niyatākārāḥ pudgalāḥ. Bhāvendriyam labdhyupayogau* — *Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā*, 1. 2. 21-23.
2. *Sarvārthagrahaṇam manah* — *Ibid.*, 1. 2. 24.
3. *Nārthālokau jñānasya nimittamavyatirekāt* — *Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā*, 1. 2. 25.

object and light are not the direct conditions of visual cognition, though we do not deny that they are remote (*vyavahita*) conditions, just as time, space and the like are. Of course, it is admitted that they are of direct service to the cause of removal of the knowledge-obscuring karma and also of direct service by benefiting the sense of vision. The question is : Then why should not they be held to be the direct conditions of visual cognition ? The answer is : Because there is no concomitance in difference between them which is the most essential form of universal relationship. For instance, it is observed that the perception of water takes place in mirage (*marīcikā*) in the desert in spite of the absence of sensation of water in it and the cats and owls have, notwithstanding the absence of light, perceptual cognition of objects in a place steeped in a thick pall of darkness.<sup>1</sup>

### Categories of Empirical Perception :

Sensory as well as mental perception is of four kinds, viz., sensation (*avagraha*), speculation (*ihā*), determinate perception (*avāya*) and retention (*dhāraṇā*).<sup>2</sup>

### Sensation :

Sensation is the cognition of an object, which follows in the wake of indeterminate awareness upon the contact of the sense-organ with it.<sup>3</sup> Sensation is the first stage of knowledge which catches the general feature of an object after the contact of the object with the sense-organ.

### Speculation :

Speculation is inquisitive pursuit for the knowledge of specific details of the perceived datum.<sup>4</sup> On the sensation of

- 
1. *Compare: Tadanvayavyatirekānuvidhānābhāvācca, keṣoṇḍuka-jñānavannaktañcarajñānavacca* — Parikṣā-mukha, II. 7.
  2. *Etaddvīṭayamavagrahehāvāyadhāraṇābhedaśaścaturvikalpakam* — Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka, II. 6.
  3. *Akṣārthayoge darśanānantaramarthagrahaṇamavagrahaḥ* — Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, I. I. 26.
  4. *Avagrhitaviśeṣakāṅkṣaṇamihā* - Ibid., I. I. 27.

an objective datum, for instance, a sound, there arises a doubt whether the sound emanates from a conch (*śaṅkha*) or a horn (*śṛṅga*) and the mind is driven to consider the specific points of agreement and difference in the form of the judgment 'it is perceived as sweet and agreeable which qualities belong to the sound of a conch and not as harsh and shrill which are the qualities of the sound of a horn.' The difference between doubt (*samśaya*) and speculation (*ihā*) lies in the fact that doubt is the antecedent form of speculation, while speculation stands above doubt. In doubt there is uncertainty of a specific object, whereas in speculation there is some sort of certainty that does not fall in the category of doubt.

### **Determinate Perception :**

Determinate perception is the determination of the specific characteristic which was the object of speculation.<sup>1</sup> Determinate perception is the final determination of the specific characteristic regarding the object of speculation as illustrated by the proposition 'the sound must be of a conch and not of a horn.'

### **Retention :**

Retention is the condition of memory.<sup>2</sup> The condition is the causal stuff capable of change into the effect as memory which consists in the recollection of a past event. It is nothing but the latent mental trace left over as a legacy by our previous experience. Now, let us turn to non-perceptual cognition.

### **Non-perceptual Cognition :**

Non-perceptual cognition is what lacks immediacy and lucidity.<sup>3</sup> The sub-divisions of non-perceptual knowledge are as under :

- 
1. *Īhitaviśeṣanirṇayovāyah* — *Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā*, I. 1.28.
  2. *Smṛtiheturdhāraṇā* - *Ibid.*, I. 1.29.
  3. *Aviśadaḥ parokṣam* - *Ibid.*, I. 2.1.  
*Aspaṣṭam parokṣam* — *Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka*, III. 1.



'The varieties of the same are recollection, recognition, inductive reasoning, inference and authority.'<sup>11</sup>

### Recollection :

Recollection is a cognition which has for its condition the stimulation of a memory-impression (retention) and which refers to its content by a form of the pronoun 'that.'<sup>12</sup>

When requisite conditions such as the elimination and subsidence of obstructive veils, observation of similar objects and the like (similarity, contiguity and contrast of modern psychology) are at work to bring it to maturation, recollection occurs. And so the clause 'which has for its condition the stimulation of a memory-impression' has been stated. The phrase 'which refers to its content by a form of the pronoun that' is inserted for setting forth its mode of communication.

It is Jainism alone that regards recollection (*smṛti*) as a valid and independent means of cognition among all the philosophical systems in India. As a consequence, it has to face many objections from the side of opponents. How can recollection be a means of cognition when it is not cognisant of a datum perceived at present, and thus is found to lack an objective basis ? This is an objection. The answer is : It is certainly possessed of an object that has been experienced in the past. The reality of the object, and not its actually felt presence, is the condition of validity of a cognition. If it be contended, on the analogy of perception, that the object must be felt as present in order that the cognition may be valid, one might with equal force contend that perceptual cognition is invalid, since it is found to lack the criterion of referring to a fact that has been experienced in the past. If the opponent thinks that the revelation of the relevant object is the criterion of validity, it is found to be

1. *Smaranapratyabhijñānatarkānumānāgamabhedatastat pañca-prakāram* - Ibid., III. 2.

2. *Vāsanodbodhahetukā tadityākārā smṛtiḥ* - Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, I. 2.3.

equally present in the case of recollection (memory) also. Another objection is that how can a dead object be the generating condition of recollection? The Jaina answers: It is your delusion that makes you think so. For validity of cognition, it is not necessary that the object must be the generating condition. For instance, light which comes into being on the operation of its own conditions reveals the objects jar and the like, though not generated by them, so also does a cognition reveal its object, though it is not produced by the object.

### Recognition :

Recognition is a synthetic judgment born of observation and recollection as typified by such forms as 'that necessarily is it,' 'it is like that,' 'that is dissimilar to that,' 'this is different from that' and the like.<sup>1</sup>

Observation is perceptual cognition. Recollection is an act of memory. These two are the conditions of recognition which is a kind of synthetic judgment. 'This is necessarily that jar' and the like are the cases of judgment of identity. 'This is like that,' e.g., 'the gayal (*gavaḡa*) is like the cow' is the judgment of similarity (analogy). 'This is dissimilar to that,' e.g., 'the buffalo is different from the cow' is the judgment of dissimilarity. 'This is less than, more than, farther than, nearer than' etc. are examples of the judgment of difference. Recognition is neither perception alone nor analogy exclusively.

### Inductive Reasoning :

Inductive reasoning is the knowledge of universal concomitance conditioned by observation (*upalambha*) and non-observation (*anupalambha*).<sup>2</sup>

1. *Darśanasmarāṇasambhavaṃ tadevedaṃ tatsadrśaṃ tadvi-lakṣaṇaṃ tatpratyogityādisāṅkalanāṃ pratyabhijñānaṃ* — Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, I. 2.4.

2. *Upalambhānupalambhanimittaṃ vyāptijñānamūhaḥ* - Ibid., I. 2.5.

'Observation' means the knowledge of existence of the major term (*sādhya*) on the existence of the middle term (*liṅga*). 'Non-observation' stands for the knowledge of non-existence of the middle term where there is no major term.

Now, it should not be maintained that such knowledge of universal concomitance is derived exclusively from perceptual cognition. It is beyond the capacity of perception to derive the knowledge of universal concomitance, since our empirical perception is limited, whereas the knowledge of universal concomitance is unlimited. In other words, perception is not discursive and owes its genesis to the influence exerted by a datum that is present in a limited sense.

Nor can it be maintained that such knowledge is obtained by inference, since inference itself is not possible in the absence of universal concomitance. In other words, the knowledge of universal concomitance has been apprehended as an antecedent condition of inference. Such being the case, how is it possible that the knowledge of universal concomitance, i.e., inductive reasoning can be obtained by inference ? It follows, therefore, that reasoning is a separate means of knowledge which serves to give knowledge of universal concomitance which is not apprehended by any other recognised means. It is known as *tarka* or *ūha*.

Now, what is universal concomitance ? Hemacandra defines it in the following terms : 'Universal concomitance consists in the 'occurrence necessarily' of the determinant concomitant (major term - *vyāpaka*) on the occurrence of the determinate concomitant (middle term - *vyāpya*), or the occurrence of the determinate concomitant 'exclusively in the locus' where the major term occurs.'

The uniform characteristic of both the middle and major terms has been regarded as follows : The major necessarily

---

1. *Vyāptirvyāpakasya vyāpye sati bhāva eva, vyāpyasya vā tatraiva bhāvaḥ* — Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, I. 2. 6.

exists in the locus in which the middle occurs, and as for the middle, it occurs exclusively in a locus where the major exists. If this necessary restriction were reversed, the concomitance between the middle and major terms will not be necessary.

### **Inference :**

Now, we define inference which comes next in order. Inference is the knowledge of the probandum (*sādhyā*) on the strength of the probans (*sādhana*).<sup>1</sup>

The knowledge of the probandum, which is of the nature of authentic cognition of a real fact, and which arises from a probans either observed or expressly stated, is called inference (*anumāna*).

It is of two kinds : for one's own self (subjective) and for others (syllogistic).

### **Subjective Inference :**

Subjective inference consists in the knowledge of the probandum from the probans ascertained by one's own self as having the sole and solitary characteristic of standing in necessary concomitance with the probandum.<sup>2</sup>

Necessary concomitance with the probandum means the impossibility of the probans apart from the probandum. The knowledge of the probandum from such a probans definitely cognised by the arguer himself as having for sole and solitary characteristic of inseparable relation with the probandum is called subjective inference.

Inseparable relationship is further defined as consisting in the universal necessity of synchronous and successive occurrence of simultaneous and successive events.<sup>3</sup>

- 
1. *Sāadhanāt sādhyavijñānāmanumānam* - Ibid., I. 2.7.
  2. *Svārtham svaniścitasādhyāvinābhāvaikalakṣaṇāt sādhanāt sādhyajñānam* — *Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā*, I. 2.9.
  3. *Sahakramabhāvinoḥ sahakramabhāvaniyamovinābhāvaḥ* — Ibid., I. 2. 10.

Synchronous events are those which are the co-products of the same set of causal conditions such as colour and taste of a fruit and the like. Successive events are those which occur in succession, as for instance, the appearance of *Kṛttikā* and *Śakata*; or which are related as effect and cause, e.g., smoke and fire. The necessity of the simultaneity of synchronous events and the necessity of the succession of successive events, is what is meant by inseparable relationship or universal concomitance. The triple characteristic of the Buddhists and the quintuple characteristic of the Naiyāyikas are nothing but an elaboration of universal concomitance.

### Probans :

The probans (*sādhana*) is of five types : essential identity, cause, effect, co-inherent in the same substratum and opposite.<sup>1</sup> Of these, the essential identity is illustrated by the attribute of 'being a product' or 'audible' with regard to the inference of impermanence in a word. Word is impermanent, because it is a product or because it is audible.

The cause is illustrated by the attention of a particular type of cloud with regard to the inference of shower of rain.

The effect is illustrated by such instances as the appearance of a particular type of flood serving as the probans of rainfall, smoke serving as the probans of fire, life serving as the probans of consciousness.

The co-inherent in the same substratum is illustrated by colour and taste belonging to one and the same fruit, by the emergence of *Śakata* and *Kṛttikā*, by the moon-rise and the sea-tide.

As regards the opposite, it is what is opposed to the negatum or to the effect etc. As for example, there is no touch of cold herein, as fire is present; the causal conditions of cold with their powers unfrustrated cannot be present here,

---

1. *Svabhāvah kāraṇam kāryamekārthasamavāyī virodhi ceti pañcadhā sādhanam* – Ibid., 1. 2.12.

as fire is present in this place.

Subjective inference has been defined. Now, we propose to give the definition of syllogistic inference.

### **Syllogistic Inference :**

'Syllogistic inference is definite cognition resulting from a statement of a probans having the characteristic of necessary concomitance with the probandum.'<sup>1</sup> The definite authentic cognition of a fact that arises from a statement of a person having the sole and solitary characteristic of necessary concomitance with probandum, is designated as syllogistic inference. In other words, it is the knowledge of the probandum derived from the communication made by another person.

The syllogistic statement has two different types. The first type is due to the consideration of the logical possibility on the necessary occurrence of the probandum. In other words, when the possibility of the probans is understood to be necessarily dependent on the occurrence of the probandum, the first type is there. The second type arises from the consideration of the impossibility of the probans in the absence of the probandum. Take some concrete example : The hill is on fire, because the logical possibility of its being possessed of smoke is intelligible only on that condition; or, because the fact of its possession of smoke would become logically impossible in the absence of fire. The difference of syllogistic inference is conditioned merely by this difference of form and not a real difference. In other words, the difference between the two is not in respect of ultimate intention but is merely formal. For this very reason, the statement of both the propositions is not necessary.

### **Parts of Syllogism :**

Philosophers of different schools hold different views with regard to the constitution of syllogism. For instance, the

---

1. *Yathoktasādhanābhīdhānaḥ parārtham* — *Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā*, 11. 1. 1.

Sāṅkhyas maintain that a syllogism consists of three parts, viz., thesis, reason and example. The Mīmāṃsakas assert four parts with the addition of application. The Naiyāyikas assert five parts with the addition of conclusion. Such being the case, the question naturally arises : What is the proper form of a syllogism ? The Jaina thinkers answer : 'The thesis and reason constitute a syllogism adequate for a knowledgeable person.'<sup>11</sup> In obligation to the pledge of edification of a pupil or any layman, the syllogism may have five propositions also, viz., thesis, reason, example, application and conclusion. As has been remarked by Bhadrabāhu : 'The syllogism is said to consist of five parts or of ten parts in the alternative. We denounce neither but accept both as legitimate.'<sup>12</sup>

### Thesis :

Now, we set forth the definition of thesis that comes first in order. 'Thesis is the statement of the theme to be proved.'<sup>13</sup> It is called *pratijñā* or *pakṣa*. 'This hill is possessed of fire' is a typical illustration.

### Reason :

The definition of reason is as follows : 'Statement of a probans ending in an inflexion (*vibhakti*) unfolding the character of probans is called reason.'<sup>14</sup> A particular type of statement unfolding the character of probans is known as reason. The inflexion is either the fifth or the third case-ending in Sanskrit and such words as 'because' or 'since' prefixed to it in English. As for instance, (this hill is possessed of fire) 'because it has smoke' or 'smoke is impossible in its absence.' The existence of smoke is logically justifiable

- 
1. *Etāvān prekṣaprayogaḥ* — Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, II. 1.9.
  2. *Katthai pañcāvayavaṃ dasahā vā savvahā na paḍikuttaṃ ti* Daśavaikālika-niryukti, 50.
  3. *Sādhyānirdeśaḥ pratijñā* — Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, II. 1. 11.
  4. *Sādhanatvābhivyañjakavibhaktiyantaṃ sādhanavacanāṃ hetuḥ* — Ibid., II. 1.12.

only on the condition of its positive concomitance with fire or the existence of smoke is logically impossible unless the said concomitance be a fact.

### Example :

Example is the statement of an illustration.<sup>1</sup> It is a statement which sets forth an illustration. It is also of two kinds on account of the difference of illustrations. The statement of an illustration based upon similarity of attribute is called 'homogeneous example' (*sādharmya dr̥ṣṭānta*). 'Whatever is possessed of smoke is possessed of fire, as for example, an oven' is a typical instance. Heterogeneous example (*vaidharmya dr̥ṣṭānta*) is the statement of an illustration in dissimilarity. 'Whatever is possessed of the absence of fire is possessed of the absence of smoke, as for example, a lake' may be cited as a typical case.

### Application :

Application is the act of bringing the probans into connection with the minor term (*dharmin*).<sup>2</sup> The proposition 'it is possessed of smoke' is a typical example of the same.

### Conclusion :

Conclusion is the predication of the probandum.<sup>3</sup> The proposition 'therefore it is possessed of fire' is an illustration.

The complete form of the proposition of syllogism is like this : This hill is possessed of fire, because it has smoke, whatever is possessed of smoke is possessed of fire, as for example an oven', it is possessed of smoke, therefore it is possessed of fire.

### Or

This hill is possessed of fire, because smoke is impossible in its absence, whatever is possessed of the absence of fire is

1. *Dr̥ṣṭāntavacanamudāharaṇam* — Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā, II. 1.13.

2. *Hetoḥ sādhyadharmiṇyupasaṃharaṇamupanayaḥ, yathā dhūmaścātra pradēse* - Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka III. 49-50.

3. *Sādhyadharmasya punarnigamanam, yathā tasmādagriratra* — Ibid., III. 51-2.



possessed of the absence of smoke, as for example, a lake, it is possessed of smoke, therefore it is possessed of fire.

### Authority :

We have dealt with recollection, recognition, inductive reasoning and inference. The fifth division of non-perceptual cognition, viz., authority still remains to be defined. We, now, propose to deal with it.

The knowledge produced by the word of a reliable source is called authority.<sup>1</sup> It is also known as 'verbal testimony' or 'word.' The reliable source is that person who knows the object as it is and describes it as he knows it. He who possesses right knowledge and makes a right judgment is said to be reliable or *āpta*. Such a reliable person cannot tell a lie. His proposition is always true. Hence, he is called authority. His 'word' is also known as testimony. The authority is of two kinds : ordinary and extraordinary, i.e., *laukika* and *alaukika*. The ordinary authority is father etc. The omniscient is an example of the extraordinary authority.

The *āgamika* conception of knowledge can be covered by the logical division of cognition in the following style :

*Avadhi-jñāna* (clairvoyance), *manaḥpariyaya-jñāna* (telepathy) and *kevala-jñāna* (omniscience) are styled as transcendental perception. *Mati-jñāna* (sensory and intellectual knowledge) is occupied by empirical perception, recollection, recognition, inductive reasoning and inference. *Śruta-jñāna* (scriptural knowledge) is called authority, verbal testimony, scriptural testimony or word.

●●●

---

1. Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka, IV. 1.

## CHAPTER VII

### JUDGMENT

According to Jainism, an object has three fundamental characteristics : origination, decay and permanence. Every object that seems to be permanent is liable to both origination and decay. In the same way, everything that seems to originate and perish has an aspect of permanence. All things including the flame of a lamp which is generally believed to be momentary and space that is believed to be permanent are subject to the law of origination, decay and permanence. The Jaina thinkers reject the definition of permanence (*nityatva*) given by other schools. They do not believe in absolute changelessness. According to the Jainas, the permanent is that which continues to exist in spite of origination and decay. They argue what would origination and decay belong to, if nothing continues ? A continuous reality must be posited for the very possibility of origination and decay. Modes, i.e., origination and decay, and essence, i.e., permanence, exist together in a substance. Neither is origination possible without decay and permanence, nor is decay possible in the absence of origination and permanence, nor is permanence tenable without origination and decay. All the three retain their respective existence on the basis of mutual co-operation. They are not heterogeneous elements, as generally supposed, but they possess the nature of homogeneous elements. Jainism differs equally from those who hold that all is absolutely permanent and those who hold that all is absolutely momentary, and also from those who hold that some things are absolutely permanent and some are absolutely momentary. According to Jaina philosophy, reality is both permanent and momentary. This criterion belongs to all things.

Moreover, all objects are interrelated. The individual form of an object cannot be established unless the knowledge of its inter-relations is assumed. When we speak of a human being, the relative knowledge of objects other than the human being springs up of itself. Similarly, when we speak of Europeans, the idea of non-Europeans springs up naturally. When we speak of Indians, the idea of non-Indians spontaneously springs up. The idea of virtue suggests the idea of vice and so on. Thus, the knowledge of one substance or object suggests the relative knowledge of other substances or objects. Lord Mahāvīra, keeping this in view, said that a man who knows only one object with all its properties, knows all objects. He who knows all things with all their properties, knows one thing.<sup>5</sup> Thus, the Jaina philosopher advocates the doctrine of non-absolutism. Every judgment of a Jaina thinker bears the impression of non-absolutism in its heart. He makes no judgment that goes against the spirit of non-absolutism.

### Traces in the Canons :

The theory of non-absolutism is not an innovation of the later philosophers who propounded the sacred teachings of the Great Teacher Lord Mahāvīra. The Lord himself preached this philosophical doctrine and his later followers put it into a more systematic and logical form. While describing the nature of soul (*jīva*), Mahāvīra addressed Gautama : "O Gautama ! from one point of view, the soul is permanent; from another point of view, the soul is not permanent. From the view-point of substance, the soul is permanent; from the view-point of modes, the soul is not permanent."<sup>2</sup>

Lord Mahāvīra emphasised the identity of soul and knowledge from one stand-point. In the Ācārāṅga-sūtra it is

1. *Je egaṃ jāṇai se savvaṃ jāṇai.*

*Je savvaṃ jāṇai se egaṃ jāṇai* — Ācārāṅga-sūtra, I. 3.4. 122.

2. *Goyamā ! jīvā siya sāsaya siva asāsaya. Goyamā ! davvaṭṭhavāe sāsaya bhavaṭṭhavāe asāsaya* — Bhagavati-sūtra, VII. 2. 273.

said : Soul is knowledge and knowledge is soul...<sup>1</sup> From another point of view, he emphasised the difference of various modes and according to these modes the soul was classified. We find in the Bhagavatī-sūtra : "O Lord ! how many kinds of soul are there ?" "O Gautama ! the soul is said to be of eight kinds, viz., *dravya-ātmā* (from the point of view of substance), *kaṣāya-ātmā* (from the point of view of passion)..... .."<sup>2</sup>

Similarly, the medium of motion is said to be one as well as many. From the stand-point of substance (*dravya*), the medium of motion is one and from the view-point of units (*pradeśas*), it is innumerable.<sup>3</sup> The same method can be applied to the medium of rest etc.

### Cause and Effect :

Whether the effect exists in the cause or is it a new outcome ? Those philosophers who admit that the effect is not a new product but that it exists in the cause, are known as '*Satkāryavādins*'. Those thinkers who do not believe in this doctrine but hold that the effect is entirely a new out-come and that it does not exist in the cause, are called '*Asatkāryavādins*.' The schools of Indian philosophy believing in the theory of '*Satkāryavāda*' are *Sāṅkhya*, *Yoga* and *Vedānta*. The *Asatkāryavādins* are *Cārvāka*, *Buddhism*, *Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika* and *Mīmāṃsā* (one sect). Jainism does not regard these views as valid in their absolute forms. According to its doctrine of non-absolutism, the effect is neither absolutely identical with the cause nor absolutely different from it. The cause remains in the effect as the essence and not as a mode. The effect is new in the shape of a mode and not as the essence. In other words, the essential quality remains unchanged, while the mode changes. When we say that the effect is new, we mean that the mode is new. When we admit that the effect is

1. *Je āyā se vinnāyā*.....

2. Bhagavatī-sūtra, XII. 10. 467.

3. Prajñāpanā-sūtra, III. 56.

not new, we mean that the essence is the same. That which exists can never be absolutely non-existent and that which does not exist at all can never come into existence. An existent object cannot be destroyed and a non-existent object cannot be originated. Hence, from one point of view, the effect does not exist in the cause. It is a new outcome. From another point of view, it can be maintained that the effect exists in the cause. Both these stand-points are right so far as they are not absolute. We cannot define the theory of causation in an exclusive manner. Unless it is accepted in the form of '*Sadasatkāryavāda*', it is not possible to have a true picture of reality.

Thus, the so-called opposites such as existence and non-existence, permanence and non-permanence, identity and difference, oneness and maniness etc. can be attributed to an object from various points of view. These opposites should not be taken to be absolutely heterogeneous. They can remain in the same object without contradicting each other. Besides, the object requires these opposites to depict its complete and real picture. In the absence of these opposites, the existence of an object is impossible. When we say that an object exists, we only mean by this statement that in a certain respect it exists. When we make the statement that an object does not exist, we only mean that from a particular point of view, it does not exist. We cannot say that it absolutely exists or it does not exist absolutely. As it is remarked : 'Everything exists in its own individuality and does not exist in the individuality of another. Were it not so, everything would be alike existent, and thus, there would possibly be no individuality at all.'<sup>1</sup>

### **Anekānta, Anekāntavāda and Syādvāda :**

According to Jainism, a particular object can be viewed from different points of view. It can be existent, non-existent,

---

1. *Sarvamasti svarūpeṇa pararūpeṇa nāsti ca.*  
*Anyathā sarvastrvaṃ syāt svarūpasyāpyasambhavaḥ.*

one, many, identical, different and the like. It possesses infinite attributes. These attributes or characteristics (*dharmas*) are not conceptual but they really exist in the object. The term '*anekānta*' indicates the ontological nature of reality, according to which every object possesses infinite aspects. When we speak of a particular aspect, we have to use the word '*syāt*', i.e., from a particular point of view or as related to this aspect, this object is such and not otherwise. As for instance, when we speak of the aspect of existence of a pot, we choose the 'existence' aspect of that pot which possesses many other aspects as well. We make a statement about the aspect of existence, i.e., in relation to the aspect of existence, the pot exists. Take another example : Mohan is a father, brother, uncle etc. according to various relations. He is the father of his son, the brother of his brother and so on. When his son calls him, he uses the word 'father.' Now, Mohan possesses many aspects like those of father, brother etc. In relation to his son, he is father. Thus, Mohan is a father as related to his son, i.e., relatively Mohan is a father. Hence, '*Syādvāda*', i.e., the theory of the relativity of propositions is the theory of the relativity of judgment. When an object, which is *anekāntāt-maka* (possessing many characteristics), is expressed in a particular form of judgment, the expression is known as *Syādvāda*. We can express the characteristics of an object from different points of view and these points of view are expressed by the word '*syāt*'. As it is said : 'The judgment about an object possessing many characteristics is called '*Syādvāda*'.'

The theory of '*Syādvāda*' is also called '*Anekāntavāda*,' because the relativity of judgment is nothing but a relative judgment about an object that possesses infinite aspects or qualities. In other words, the relative judgment is not possible unless the object for which that judgment stands is *anekāntāt-maka*. Hence, the judgment that stands for an object

1. *Anekāntātmakārthakathanam̐ syādvādah* — Laghīyāstraya-ṭikā,  
62.

possessing many characteristics (*anekāntātma*) is also known as *Anekāntavāda*. As it is maintained : 'In the term '*syādvāda*', the word '*syāt*' expresses many aspects of an object, hence, '*Syādvāda*' is called '*Anekāntavāda*'.<sup>1</sup>

Thus, the object itself is *anekānta*, i.e., the substratum of many characteristics. The judgment about the object is '*Syādvāda*', because every characteristic is expressed with the word '*syāt*'. This judgment is also called '*Anekāntavāda*', since it expresses the object that possesses many characteristics.

### Seven-fold Judgment :

The object has been described as the possessor of infinite characteristics. When we select one of the characteristics with its contrary aspect and judge it, this kind of judgment has seven forms, hence, it is called seven-fold judgment.<sup>2</sup> The following are the seven propositions with reference to the concrete illustration of pot :

1. Relatively the pot exist.
2. Relatively the pot does not exist.
3. Relatively the pot exists and does not exist.
4. Relatively the pot is indescribable.
5. Relatively the pot exists and is indescribable.
6. Relatively the pot does not exist and is indescribable.
7. Relatively the pot exist, does not exist and is indescribable.

In these propositions, the word 'relatively' is most significant. Every judgment bears the stamp of relativity, by which the notion of absolutism is refuted. All our judgments are relative, i.e., non-absolutistic. The proposition 'relatively the pot exists' shows that from a particular point of view the pot exists. This particular point of view is determined by four factors. These factors are the substance, place, time and mode as related to the pot. The explanation of these determining factors is as follows :

- 
1. *Anyā-yoga-vyavaccheda-dvātriṃśikā*, 5.
  2. *Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka*, IV. 14.

- (a) The substance of the pot is the clay of which it is made. Viewed from the point of view of this particular substance, the pot exists.
- (b) The place of the pot points to the locality where it is lying. Viewed from the point of view of a particular room, the pot exists.
- (c) The time of the existence of the pot is the present time in which it exists. Viewed from the point of view of eight o'clock, the pot exists.
- (d) The mode of the pot points to its form or shape. Viewed from the point of view of a particular form, such as its contracted neck, the pot exists. To be more clear, the proposition 'relatively the pot exists' means that the pot exists so far as its own individual form is concerned by reason of its substance, place, time and mode. Its substance points to the clay of which it is made, its place is the locality in which it stands, its time is the present time in which it exists and its mode points to its particular form such as its contracted neck.

The proposition 'relatively the pot does not exist' means that the pot does not exist if looked at from the point of view of the absence of the characteristics of its substance, place, time and mode. To elucidate, the pot does not exist with reference to another substance, such as gold etc.; with reference to another place, such as some other room etc.; with reference to the time preceding its manufacture or succeeding its destruction, i. e., the past and future times; with reference to other modes, such as a broad neck etc. In this proposition the pot is looked at from the point of view of the absence of the four determining factors that are ascribed to the aspect of existence. But it is not a proposition contradictory to the first proposition. It does not deny the existence of the pot in so far as its specific properties are concerned but denies its existence when other properties that are not positively present in it are taken into consideration. This proposition stands



from the point of view of the predominance of the aspect of non-existence.

The third proposition 'relatively the pot exists and does not exist' is maintained on the ground that the pot exists in reference to its own substance and does not exist with reference to the substance of other things. It exists in its own place and does not exist in other places. It exists in the present time and does not exist in the time preceding its manufacture or succeeding its destruction. i. e., the past and the future. The pot exist in reference to its own form or mode and does not exist in reference to the modes or forms of other things. According to this proposition, the first part of the judgment is true from the point of view of the existence of the individual properties of the pot and the second part is true from the point of view of the non-existence of other properties in it. It means that the pot exists from the stand-point of its individual properties and that it does not exist from the view-point of the absence of other qualities in it.

The fourth proposition 'relatively the pot is indescribable' is true if both the points of view of the previous propositions are assumed simultaneously. When both the views of existence and non-existence are taken at the same time, it becomes indescribable.

The fifth proposition 'relatively the pot exists and is indescribable' means that the pot exists in regard to its existent form but it becomes indescribable if both its existent and non-existent forms are considered simultaneously. It is indescribable, yet, it exists.

The sixth proposition 'relatively the pot does not exist and is indescribable' means that the pot does not exist in regard to its non-existent aspects but looked at from the point of view of its existent and non-existent forms simultaneously, it becomes indescribable. Here the point of view refers to the combination of indescribability and non-existence.

The seventh proposition 'relatively the pot exists, does not exist and is indescribable' means that the pot exists with regard to its own properties, does not exist in regard to its non-existent characteristics and is indescribable if both the points of view are assumed simultaneously. Here the point of view is dominated by the combination of indescribability, existence and non-existence.

The point is that when the truth of a particular aspect of a thing is to be ascertained, it should not be examined only from one point of view. The Jainas hold that every aspect of an object can be viewed from seven stand-points, every one of which is true but the whole truth about that aspect lies in the combination of all these seven views. This seven-fold declaration of judgment in regard to everything is a peculiar and unique method of the Jaina dialectic. Just as existence is applied to everything, so also the terms permanent and impermanent, one and many, describable and indescribable and the like can be applied to it. The propositions will be the same with the change of these words. For instance relatively the pot is eternal (in view of its substance), relatively the pot is not eternal (in view of its changing forms) and so on.

The gist of the seven-fold judgment of the Jaina dialectic is as under :

1. Thesis (positive).
2. Anti-thesis (negative).
3. Aggregate (both positive and negative successively).
4. Synthesis (both positive and negative simultaneously).
5. Thesis and synthesis (positive and both positive and negative simultaneously).
6. Anti-thesis and synthesis (negative and both positive and negative simultaneously).
7. Aggregate and synthesis (both positive and negative successively and both positive and negative simultaneously).

Or

1. Existence.
2. Non-existence.
3. Existence and non-existence.
4. Indescribability.
5. Existence and indescribability.
6. Non-existence and indescribability.
7. Existence, non-existence and indescribability.

First of all we take 'existence.' Then we come to 'non-existence.' After it we put both 'existence' and 'non-existence' together successively. Then we put both 'existence' and 'non-existence' together simultaneously. We cannot describe both 'existence' and 'non-existence' simultaneously, since our proposition will necessarily have either of the two first. Hence, we call it indescribable. These four propositions are fundamental. When we add the first proposition to the fourth, the fifth proposition is there. Adding the second to the fourth, we derive the sixth one. Similarly, when we add the third proposition to the fourth, we have the seventh category. The scheme is as under :

1. Existence.
2. Non-existence.
3. Existence and non-existence.
4. Indescribability.
- 1 + 4 = 5. Existence and indescribability.
- 2 + 4 = 6. Non-existence and indescribability.
- 3 + 4 = 7. Existence, non-existence and indescribability.

This is the general view of the method of the Jaina dialectic. This dialectical method follows the theory of relativity of judgment, i. e., *Syādvāda*. In other words, *Syādvāda* can be represented only by this type of dialectical method. *Syādvāda* is said to be the foundation of Jaina philosophy. It is so important that the Jaina thinkers did not hesitate to put it on the equal status with omniscience (*kevala-jñāna*). As it is said: 'Both *Syādvāda* and *kevala-jñāna*

illuminate the whole reality. The difference between them is only this much that while the former illuminates the objects indirectly, the later illuminates them directly.<sup>1</sup>

Every proposition of the dialectical seven-fold judgment is of two kinds : complete (*sakalādeśa*) and incomplete (*vikalādeśa*).<sup>2</sup>

### Complete Judgment :

We know that an object possesses infinite characteristics but it is not possible for us to describe all of them. To overcome this difficulty, we use only one word that describes one characteristic of that object and holds the remaining characteristics to be identical with it. By this method we can describe all the characteristics of an object by the description of a particular aspect only. This type of proposition is called complete judgment. The identity of all other aspects with a single aspect is proved by the identity of time etc.

The word 'existence' in the proposition 'relatively the pot exists' includes all other aspects of the pot through the identity of time, quality, substratum, relation, contributory part, residence of substance, association and word.<sup>3</sup>

- (1) *Time (kāla)*-Time indicates that at the time when the quality of existence is predicated of the pot, the qualities of redness, hardness etc. can as well be predicated of it. In other words, the pot has many qualities or characteristics at the same time. Therefore, from the view-point of time, all the qualities of the pot are inseparable from one another. Thus, time bridges the difference existing among the various qualities and takes 'existence' as identical with all other qualities.
- (2) *Quality (ātma-rūpa)*-Just as existence is a quality of the pot, so also redness, hardness etc. are its qualities. Hence,

1. Āpta-mīmāṃsā, 105.

2. Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka, IV.43.

3. Sādvāda-ratnākara, IV.44.

with regard to qualities, existence is not different from redness, hardness etc. in the case of the pot.

- (3) *Substratum (artha)* - In the same substratum where the characteristic of existence resides, the other qualities also reside. Hence, with reference to substratum, all other qualities are identical with existence.
- (4) *Relation (sambandha)* - Just as the quality of existence is related to the pot, so also the other qualities are related to it. Hence, from the view-point of relation, all other qualities are not different from existence.
- (5) *Contributory Part (upkāra)* - The part which the quality of existence plays in regard to the pot, is also played by the other qualities of the pot. Thus, so far as the contributory part is concerned, there is no difference between existence and all other qualities.
- (6) *Residence of Substance (guṇi-deśa)* - In that place where the pot exists, the quality of existence resides. In the same place the other qualities also reside. Hence, with reference to the residence of substance, the quality of existence is identical with all other qualities.
- (7) *Association (saṁsarga)* - Just as the quality of existence is associated with the pot inseparably, so are all other qualities. Hence, from the point of view of association, there is identity in all different qualities. This is the identity of association.
- (8) *Word (śabda)* - Just as the quality of existence is signified by the word 'is', so are the other qualities signified by it. Just as we propose the judgment 'relatively the pot is existent', so also we propose another judgment 'relatively the pot is red, hard etc.' Here, just as the quality of 'existence' is signified by the word 'is', so are other qualities signified by it. This is the identity from the stand-point of word.

All these eight stand-points can be applied to the other qualities also in the same manner as they are applied to the quality of existence of the pot. This kind of judgment is called complete judgment. It is also known as '*pramāṇa-saptabhaṅgī*', i. e., the seven-fold judgment of *pramāṇa*.<sup>1</sup>

### **Incomplete Judgment :**

While describing the nature of complete judgment we saw that all qualities are identical with one quality of an object. In the case of incomplete judgment the order is reversed.<sup>2</sup> Every judgment presupposes some difference in every aspect or quality. In regard to a complete judgment time, quality etc. establish identity among various qualities, whereas with regard to an incomplete judgment time, quality etc. prepare the ground for difference among various qualities. This kind of judgment is called '*naya-saptabhaṅgī*'.

### **Definition of Naya :**

*Pramāṇa* or complete judgment describes an object with all its qualities. *Naya* or incomplete judgment holds any one of the qualities of that object and leaves the rest untouched. This does not mean that it rejects all other qualities except one. The point is that a particular *naya* (view-point) selects one of the infinite qualities for its purpose, not rejecting the other ones but leaving them for the other view-points (*nayas*). A judgment which accepts only one quality and rejects the remaining ones is fallacious (*nayābhāsa*).

If we look at an object from infinite points of view, we can say that there are infinite kinds of *naya*, because the object is composed of infinite characteristics and one *naya* knows only one characteristic. Looking at it from a specific point of view, it is maintained that *naya* is of two kinds : *dravyāstika* (dealing with generality) and *pariyāyāstika* (dealing with particularity).<sup>3</sup> *Dravyāstika* is the view of looking at the identity

1. Ratnākarāvatārikā, IV. 44.

2. Tadviparīstastu vikalādeśaḥ-Pramāṇa-naya-tattvālōka, IV.45.

3. Sanmati-tarka-prakarāṇa. 1.3.

of things (*abheda*), while *paryāyāstika* is the view which looks at the difference of things. Man speaks of something either from the stand-point of identity or from that of difference. Statements of things from the former point of view are put under the head of *dravyāstika*. Propositions of objects from the stand-point of difference fall under the category of *paryāyāstika*. Many minor classifications of things ranging between general (*dravyāstika*) and particular (*paryāyāstika*) view-points are also possible. But briefly speaking, there can be only two groups of statements. The view-point of identity, upon which are founded the statements of generalisation, is called *dravyāstika naya*, while the view-point of difference, upon which are founded the statements of particularisation, is called *paryāyāstika naya*. The *dravyāstika naya* is further divided into three categories : *naigama*, *saṅgraha* and *vyavahāra*. The sub-divisions of the *paryāyāstika naya* are four : *ṛjusūtra*, *śabda*, *samabhirūḍha* and *evambhūta*.<sup>1</sup>

### **Naigama Naya :**

It views an object as possessing both the general and particular properties, because no object is possessed of a general property unaccompanied with some particular property, nor even of a specific property unaccompanied with the general one common to its class.<sup>2</sup> As for example, 'I am conscious' is a statement of the *naigama naya*. Here the property 'consciousness' is a general quality that exists in all living beings, whereas 'I' indicates my particular nature, i. e., individuality.

### **Saṅgraha Naya :**

It deals with the general property of an object.<sup>3</sup> As for instance, 'reality is one because it exists' is a proposition of the *saṅgraha naya*. It does not look at the particular properties of reality but regards the general property as its subject-matter.

1. Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka, VII. 6; VII. 27.

2. Naya-karṇikā, 5.

3. Ibid., 6.

In its pure form, it is only concerned with the simple statement 'it is', that is to say, when the thing is mentioned divested of all its particular attributes or modifications.

### **Vyavahāra Naya :**

It takes into consideration a general object as possessing specific properties. <sup>1</sup> It does not deal with generality in the sense as the *saṅgraha naya* deals with it. Its subject-matter is only a part of the object of the *saṅgraha*. In other words, it classifies the subject-matter of the *saṅgraha* in a particular fashion. 'Existence is either substance or modification' is an instance of the *vyavahāra naya*.<sup>2</sup> Here 'existence' is classified into two, viz., substance and modification.

### **Rjusūtra Naya :**

It does not trouble itself with the past or the future aspect of a thing; it is only confined to the present aspect of a thing, because that alone is useful for the moment.<sup>3</sup> The argument underlying the *rjusūtra* view-point is that of immediate utility which naturally must be grounded upon the present aspect of a thing. As for instance, 'I am happy at this moment' is a proposition dealing with the present state of my happiness.

### **Śabda Naya :**

It treats synonymous words as all having the same sense, for instance '*kumbha*,' '*kalaśa*,' '*ghaṭa*' are all expressive of one and the same object, viz., a jar.<sup>4</sup> The meaning is that the *śabda naya* does not concern itself with the difference of synonymous words but simply deals with them as if they were pure equivalents of one another.

### **Samabhirūḍha Naya :**

It holds that with the difference of the words expressing the object, the significance of the object also differs; just as a jar and a piece of cloth are different, so also a jar (*kumbha*),

1. Ibid., 8.

2. Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka, VII. 23-4.

3. Ibid., VII. 28.

4. Naya-karṇikā, 14.



a pitcher (*kalāṣa*) and a pot (*ghaṭa*) signify different things according to their meanings.<sup>1</sup> The point is that while the *śabda* would treat synonyms as equivalent words, the *samabhirūḍha* would distinguish them from one another on etymological grounds.

### Evambhūta Naya :

It recognises an object denoted by a word only when the object is in the actual state of performing its own natural function as suggested by the derivative meaning of that word.<sup>2</sup> The argument is that if a thing is not in the state of performing its function, as expressed by the term at the moment of recognition, and still it be recognised as that thing, then even a jar can be called a cloth, though it is not in the state of discharging the function of a cloth. Etymologically, *evambhūta* means 'true in its entirety to the word and the sense.' As for instance, 'go' (cow) means that which goes.<sup>3</sup> If a cow is not going but sitting, she would not be called 'go' (cow) at that time. She is cow only when she goes.

### Province of Naya :

The *dravyāstika naya* and the *pariyāyāstika naya* are not absolutely different. The *dravyāstika* includes in itself all those statements in which there is some sort of generality. In all such statements, there is an overlapping of the *pariyāyāstika* also. Only that statement where there is no further possibility of particularisation falls under the strict purview of pure *pariyāyāstika*.<sup>4</sup> The point is that as a rule, every statement that deals with some sort of universality is the legitimate province of the *dravyāstika*. Except the ultimate statement where there is indivisible particularisation, all other statements gradually culminating in the statement of the highest universality fall

1. Ibid., 15.

2. Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka, VII. 40.

3. 'Gacchatīti gauḥ'.

4. Sanmati-tarka-prakaraṇa, I. 8.

under the purview of the *dravyāstika*. But, at the same time, all these statements, except the statement of the highest universality, become the subject-matter of the *pariyāyāstika* as well. In other words, only one statement dealing with the highest entity without a single attribute, is covered by the *dravyāstika* only. Only that statement which deals with ultimate particularisation beyond which there is no possibility of further particularisation, falls under the range of the *pariyāyāstika* only. All the intermediary statements are covered by the *pariyāyāstika* as well as the *dravyāstika*, for in every such intermediary statement there is some kind of generalisation as well as some sort of particularisation. That very object which is viewed by the *dravyāstika* from the view-point of generalisation, is viewed by the *pariyāyāstika* from the stand-point of particularisation. 'This being the case, it is impossible to find a *dravyāstika* in its pure form, that is to say, absolutely unmixed with the *pariyāyāstika*. Similarly, it is equally impossible to find a *pariyāyāstika* in its pure form totally unmixed with the *dravyāstika*. Hence, assigning a particular statement to a particular *naya* depends upon the volition of the speaker.'

The distinction between the proper provinces of these *nyayas* is that the *dravyāstika* takes its stand excluding the positive assertion of the *pariyāyāstika* as its legitimate subject, while the *pariyāyāstika* views the same object exclusively from the stand-point of particularisation. Here, each does not consider the assertion of its rival *naya* as its property. Herein lies the true distinction between them and their spheres when applied to one and the same thing. The same fact is expressed in the following words : 'From the stand-point of the *pariyāyāstika*, all things are necessarily born and perish; the *dravyāstika*, on the other hand, holds that all things exist eternally without birth and decay. There cannot be a thing which is devoid of its modifications of birth and decay. On the other hand, modifications cannot exist without an abiding

1. Ibid., I. 9.

or eternal something, i.e., a permanent substance, for birth, decay and permanence constitute the characteristic of a substance.' How these *nayas* become wrong in their absolutely exclusive assertion, is shown in the following statement : 'These three characteristics of origination, decay and permanence must dwell together in harmony to make a real definition of a thing in its integral form. Each *naya*, therefore, if taken independently, isolated from the other, can never yield an adequate idea of 'sat.' Both these, therefore, divorced from each other, are wrong (fallacious). As these two *nayas* when taken in their exclusiveness are false *nayas*, all other *nayas* (as *naigama*, *śabda* etc.) are also wrong when taken in their isolated stand-points, for the subsequent *nayas* occupy themselves in viewing the different aspects of the thing which is the subject of these two principal *nayas*. Just as emerald and other jewels of rare quality and of excellent kind do not acquire the designation of a necklace of jewels, even though all of them be precious jewels, on account of their lying unconnected with or disunited with each other, similarly every *naya* in its own sphere is right, but if all of them arrogate to themselves the whole truth and disregard the views of the rival *nayas*, then they do not attain the status of a right view.'<sup>2</sup>

### Fallacy of Naya :

The *nayas* taking their own view-points in an absolute form and rejecting or disregarding the stand-points of others are called fallacious *nayas* (*nayābhāsas*). There are the following seven fallacies according to the seven *nayas* :

1. *Fallacy of Naigama Naya* - It consists in making an absolute separation between the general and particular properties

---

1. *Uppajjamtiviyamti ya bhāva niyameṇa pajjavāṇayassa.*  
*Davvaṭṭhiyassa savvaṃ sayā aṇuppannamavinatṭham.*  
*Davvaṃ pajjavaviuyam davvaviuttā ya pajjavā ṇatthi.*  
*Uppāvaṭṭhii-bhaṅgā haṃdi daviyalakkhaṇam eyaṃ.*  
 -Sanmati-tarka-prakarāṇa, I. 11-2.

2. *Ibid.*, I. 13; 1.22-3.

of things. As for instance, if a proposition establishes a separation between the individual self and consciousness as if they could be separated from each other, it is the fallacy of the *naigama naya*.

2. *Fallacy of Saṅgraha Naya* - The fallacy of the *saṅgraha* occurs when we consider the general property alone as constituting a thing. This kind of fallacious proposition gives rise to confusion of thought, because the general qualities alone can never constitute an actual object. For instance, the general qualities of a tree only give us the idea of treeness, never an actual tree. The latter will have to be some particular kind of tree – an oak, a mango or the like and will, therefore, possess its own special qualities along with those of a tree in general.
3. *Fallacy of Vyavahāra Naya* - This type of fallacy lies in wrong selection of species, as for instance, is the case with the Materialists (Cārvākas) who select only four primary elements as real.
4. *Fallacy of Rjusūtra Naya* - It occurs when the permanence of things is altogether denied. In this fallacy, every object is taken to be momentary without having any kind of permanent or general feature.
5. *Fallacy of Śabda Naya* - This kind of fallacy occurs when we ignore the distinguishing features of the *śabda naya* and deal with synonymous words as absolutely having the same meaning.
6. *Fallacy of Samabhirūḍha Naya* - This type of fallacy consists in treating the synonymous words as having absolutely different meanings.
7. *Fallacy of Evambhūta Naya* - It lies in making the existence of a thing absolutely dependent on the performance of the special function with reference to which a particular name has been awarded to it, e.g., to say that a teacher outside the class-room is absolutely a

non-teacher, because he does not teach at that time, is fallacious.

### Refutation of Some Objections :

The opponent who does not regard reality as the synthesis of identity and difference, and makes an absolute judgment about reality rejecting the relativity of propositions, raises the following objections : The exponents of the doctrine of the relativity of judgment or non-absolutism affirming the multiple nature of things reject the view that substance (essence) and mode are either absolutely different or absolutely identical and think that they are identical and different both. But this position cannot be legitimate, inasmuch as it is vitiated by contradiction and other defects as under :<sup>1</sup>

1. Affirmation and negation cannot co-exist in one substratum like blue and not-blue owing to their mutual opposition. Therefore, it is contradictory to say that the same object is different as well as identical.

The answer is : There is no occasion for contradiction in a thing which is cognised as such. One thing is supposed to be the opposite of another when in the presence of one the other is not perceived. But in a perceived datum, no question of contradiction arises. As regards blue and not-blue, if they were perceived in one locus, there would be no contradiction in the situation, and thus, the Buddhists do not acknowledge the contradiction between blue and not-blue in the unitary cognition of a variegated canvas. And as regards the Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika philosopher, he admits the reality of multiform colour. Further, when one single piece of linen is found to possess in harmony the apparently opposed attributes of being mobile and immobile, red and not-red, covered and not-covered, what then is the ground for doubt ?

2. If difference is affirmed in respect of one aspect and identity in respect of another, the result will be that the

---

1. Critique of Organ of Knowledge, p. 73.

difference will have one locus and the identity another and thus, there will be a split in the integrity of the locus.

This kind of objection is not tenable because in conformity with the principle mentioned above, they have all been proved to be perceived in the same locus. The same cloth is mobile and immobile and the like.

3. The aspect in which difference is posited will have difference and identity both as its traits, and likewise the aspect in which identity is asserted will have identity and difference as its predicates, and this means confusion (*sañkara*) which consists in the incidence of opposite attributes in the same substratum.

As regards the charge of confusion, it is easily parried by the instance of the cognition of the multiform colour and the instance of the synthesis of universal and particular in all reals.

4. The aspect which embodies difference will embody identity also and the aspect which embodies identity will embody difference too, and this, thus, gives rise to the fallacy of transfusion (the exchange of modes and attributes).

This charge is easily met by the same example of the cognition of the multiform colour and the synthesis of universal and particular.

5. A real being both identical and different will not lend itself to be determined in a definite reference, and this would create doubt.

6. The consequence will be the absence of determination.

7. This will result in the impossibility of determination of objective reality.

As regards these objections, there is no logical justification for the emergence of doubt in a matter which has been definitely established. Doubt is a kind of cognition in which the mind wavers between two conflicting alternatives. It is absolutely out of the question when the cognition is found

to be unwavering. The establishment of knowledge proves that there is no justification for the charge of lack of knowledge, and consequently for the impossibility of such a multiform real. The conclusion follows that the conception of reality as the synthesis of mode and attribute is not incompatible with the verdict of experience and the interest of truth. Our judgment with regard to reality as the synthesis of mode and attribute has no other alternative than to be relative. Hence, the relativity of judgment and reality as the synthesis of identity and difference are co-related.



## CHAPTER VIII

### KARMA

All phenomena of the universe are linked together in the universal chain of cause and effect. No event can occur without having a definite cause behind it. To find out the cause and condition under which an effect is produced has always been the aim of the various branches of science and philosophy. Almost all branches of science and philosophy in the world unanimously declare that the law of cause and effect is the most universal of all laws. It is the only law which governs all phenomena however gross or fine they may be. All the forces of nature, physical and psychical, obey this law. Every action of our body, speech or mind is the result of some force or power which is its cause. At the same time, that which is the effect of some cause becomes in turn the cause of some other effect, and thus, the chain goes on extending its sphere.

Under the sway of the all pervading law of causation, there is no room left for chance or accident. What we generally regard as an accidental event is really the product of some definite cause which is not known to us on account of our limited knowledge. In other words, accidents are not fortuitous but they have some definite cause behind them, although we are not always aware of it on account of the limitations of our knowledge. In ancient times, when the scope of knowledge of people was extremely limited, they used to explain accidental events by attributing them to some supernatural powers. Such accidental effects of unknown causes were called Providential. Really speaking, all accidents have their definite causes whether we know them or not. That which appears to be



supernatural or Providential to an unscientific mind, is natural or causal and not supernatural or accidental to a scientific mind.

### **Meaning of Karma :**

The Jaina thinkers do not regard this universe as the mere aggregate of the six substances set together by some supernatural authority. They hold that it is a system in itself, subject to some definite laws inherent in its own constitution. Certain phenomena occur regularly in certain circumstances and not otherwise. There is a universal law of causation operating in the universe. The phenomena of life and consciousness are not similar to the phenomena of matter or energy. In pure material activity, there is growth by addition in dead objects which is a product of chemical law only, whereas a conscious being takes to itself particles foreign to those that are already in the body and changes their nature and assimilates them with its own body. Moreover, living beings reproduce themselves in their species. These characteristics are not possessed by dead matter. Jainism regards souls to be real and infinite in number. Each soul possesses some individual characteristics different from others. The doctrine that gives us some explanation of our individual characteristics, i.e., some satisfactory answer to the factors of our individuality which we have at present and tells us how these factors were produced as the result of the forces generated in the past, is known as the doctrine of karma.

According to Jaina philosophy, every individual soul possesses infinite intuition, infinite knowledge, infinite power and infinite bliss. All these attributes belong by nature to every soul in its perfection. Mundane souls are not perfect, because their knowledge, energy etc. are found to be restricted. They are not perfectly free to enjoy complete knowledge and unrestricted bliss. Why is it so ? What restricts their innate faculty of knowing etc.? The answer is : They are infected by

something foreign which veils their natural faculties. This foreign element is known as karma. Jainism does not mean by karma 'work or deed'. According to the Jaina conception, karma is an aggregate of material particles which are very fine and are imperceptible to the senses. It enters into the soul and produces changes in it. It is a form of matter which produces certain conditions in the mundane souls that are suffering from the shackles of birth and death from beginningless time.

The entire cosmos is full of that kind of fine matter which can become karma. Through the actions of body, mind and speech, karmic matter gets into the soul and is tied to it according to the modifications of consciousness consisting of *kaṣāyas*, i.e., anger, pride, deceit and greed. Thus, first of all there is influx of karmic particles and then there occur certain activities of mind which are responsible for the actual bondage. In the state of bondage, soul and karma are more intimate than milk and water. The bondage is of four kinds: according to its nature, duration, intensity and quantity. The activities of thought, speech and body are responsible for the nature and quantity. The duration and intensity result from attachment and aversion. Karma may remain latent in the soul for certain period without emerging into appearance. When the moment for its enjoyment arrives, it becomes apparent and releases itself.

As has already been mentioned, the soul has been eternally infected by matter, i.e., its association with karma has no beginning. Moreover, it is gathering new matter every moment. The liberation of soul from matter is possible by certain means. The soul must stop the influx of new karmas and eliminate the acquired ones. Through this twofold method, it can attain the ultimate goal, i.e., emancipation. All obstacles which impede the manifestation of its true nature are then automatically overcome, because it is released from the foreign domination of karma. This being the situation, when liberation

is attained, the soul can undisturbedly make manifest its own innate nature, i.e., infinite knowledge etc.

#### **Four Kinds of Bondage :**

The atoms that have become karma can be contemplated from four points of view :

1. According to their nature (*prakṛti*).
2. According to their duration (*sthiti*).
3. According to their intensity (*rasa* or *anubhāga*).
4. According to their quantity (*pradeśas*).<sup>1</sup>

#### **Nature :**

It has eight fundamental species (*mūla-prakṛtis*):<sup>2</sup>

1. Knowledge-obscuring (*jñānāvaraṇīya*) karma.
2. Intuition-obscuring (*darśanāvaraṇīya*) karma.
3. Feeling-producing (*vedanīya*) karma.
4. Deluding (*mohanīya*) karma.
5. Age-determining (*āyus*) karma.
6. Physique-making (*nāman*) karma.
7. Heredity-determining (*gotra*) karma.
8. Power-hindering (*antarāya*) karma.

Each of these eight species is divided into a number of sub-species (*uttara-prakṛtis*). The latter can be further classified into yet smaller sub-divisions, so that the entire number of karmas is exceedingly large. For our present purpose, only the eight chief species and the 158 sub-species are of importance.

#### **Knowledge-obscuring Karma :**

That karma which obscures the knowing faculty of soul is known as knowledge-obscuring, i.e., *jñānāvaraṇīya* karma. It is divided into five sub-species (*uttara-prakṛtis*) according to the five kinds of knowledge :<sup>3</sup>

1. Karma-grantha, I. 2.
2. Ibid., I. 3.
3. Karma-grantha, I.4; I. 9.

1. *Mati-jñānāvaraṇīya* karma - It causes the obscuration of the knowledge acquired through the media of senses and mind.
2. *Śruta-jñānāvaraṇīya* karma - It produces the obscuration of the knowledge acquired by reading or hearing scriptures or by the words of an authority.
3. *Avadhi-jñānāvaraṇīya* karma - It hinders direct knowledge of material objects.
4. *Manahparyāya-jñānāvaraṇīya* karma - It obscures direct knowledge of the thoughts of others.
5. *Kevala-jñānāvaraṇīya* karma - It hinders the faculty of omniscience inherent in soul by natural disposition.

### **Intuition-obscuring Karma :**

This kind of karma is called *darśanāvaraṇīya* karma. In Jaina philosophy, the word '*darśana*' is used to signify two meanings. Firstly, it means belief, opinion or faith. Secondly, it has also the meaning of the awareness of an object or the cognition of a thing in its general form. It is the first stage of knowledge which is known as indistinct knowledge. In *darśanāvaraṇīya* karma, the word '*darśana*' is meant to signify the second meaning. It can be translated as intuition, indeterminate perception, indistinct knowledge, undifferentiated cognition or perception in the sense of general cognition. That karma which obscures the faculty of intuition is called intuition-obscuring karma. It is of nine sub-species according to the four species of intuition and five kinds of sleep:<sup>1</sup>

1. *Cakṣurdarśanāvaraṇīya* karma - It obscures the intuition conditional upon the eye.
2. *Acakṣurdarśanāvaraṇīya* karma - This species obstructs the intuition conditional upon the four senses (other than the eye) and mind.
3. *Avadhi-darśanāvaraṇīya* karma - It hinders the faculty of direct intuition of material things.

---

1. Karma-grantha, IV. 10-12.

4. *Kevala-darśanāvaranīya* karma - It obstructs the faculty of complete intuition.
5. *Nidrā*-karma - This type of karma causes a light and pleasant sleep, out of which the sleeper is aroused by the clicking of fingernails or by a slight call.
6. *Nidrānidrā*-karma - This type of karma produces a deep sleep, out of which the sleeper can be awakened by being shaken violently.
7. *Pracalā*-karma - It causes a slumber which overtakes a person while sitting or standing.
8. *Pracalāpracalā*-karma - This species of karma causes an intensive sleep that overcomes a person while walking.
9. *Styāngrddhi*-karma - It produces somnambulism. This kind of sleep is also called '*styānarddhi*.' The person possessing this kind of slumber acts in the state of sleeping but forgets what he did when he wakes.

### Feeling-producing Karma :

The feeling of pleasure and pain is caused by this species of karma known as *vedanīya* karma. It has, therefore, two sub-species:<sup>1</sup>

1. *Sātā-vedanīya* karma - It causes a feeling of pleasure, as for instance, we have the feeling of pleasure by licking something sweet like honey etc.
2. *Asātā-vedanīya* karma - It produces a feeling of pain, as for example, pain is produced if one is hurt by a sword.

The *sātā-vedanīya* is predominant with gods and human beings, although pain can be produced with the former at the time of the downfall from the heavenly world and with the latter through cold and heat, death and accident and the like. Animal beings and the beings of hell experience chiefly the *asātā-vedanīya*, although on some occasions, they also experience a feeling of pleasure.<sup>2</sup>

1. Ibid, I. 12.

2. Commentary on Karma-grantha, I. 13.

### Deluding Karma :

This kind of karma obstructs true faith and right conduct. It is called *mohanīya* karma. It has two chief division : obstruction of belief and obstruction of conduct, i.e., *darśana-mohanīya* and *cāritra-mohanīya*.

(a) *Darśana-mohanīya* karma - It obstructs the true faith. The obstruction is further divided into three sub-species :

1. *Mithyātva-mohanīya* - It produces complete wrong belief or heterodoxy. The soul possessing this kind of *mohanīya* karma does not believe in the truths as proclaimed by a true authority but believes false prophets who enjoin false doctrines to be truths.
2. *Samyaktva-mohanīya* - It induces correct belief. It is not the right faith in its completeness but only in a preliminary degree. The true belief in its completeness is obtained only when the *samyaktva-mohanīya* karma is entirely destroyed, as for instance, the sun which is covered by white clouds only shines perfectly after the clouds have been removed.
3. *Miśra-mohanīya* - It produces a mixed belief having some degree of truth and some of falsity. In other words, it causes a kind of indifference between true faith and false belief. It is a mixture of both the *samyaktva-mohanīya* and the *mithyātva-mohanīya*. That is why it is also called *samyak-mithyātva-mohanīya*.

(b) *Cāritra-mohanīya* karma - This kind of *mohanīya* karma obscures right conduct which is the innate property of soul. It obstructs the soul from acting according to the right prescriptions of scriptures or any authoritative sources. The obstruction is produced through sixteen passions (*kaṣāyas*) and nine *quasi*-passions (*no-kaṣāyas*) :

(i) *Kaṣāya* - There are four chief *kaṣāyas* : anger (*krodha*), pride (*māna*), deceit (*māyā*) and greed (*lobha*).

Each of these is again classified into four sub-divisions according to the intensity of their nature. The four sub-divisions are :

1. *Anantānubandhin* - It completely hinders right belief and conduct. The soul possessing the *anantānubandhin* anger etc. can never have right belief and conduct. It lasts for the whole of life.
2. *Apratyākhyānāvaraṇa* - It hinders partial self-discipline but allows the existence of true belief. It lasts for one year.
3. *Pratyākhyānāvaraṇa* - It obstructs the beginning of complete self-discipline or renunciation but does not prevent the existence of right belief and partial self-discipline. It lasts for four months.
4. *Sañjvalana* - It hinders the attainment of complete right conduct (*yathākhyāta cāritra*). Its effect lasts for one fortnight.

(ii) *No-kaṣāya* - *Quasi*-passions are divided into nine categories :

1. *Hāsya* - Laughing and joking fall under this category.
2. *Rati* - Proper or improper liking for a certain object is called *rati*.
3. *Arati* - Proper or improper disliking for a particular thing is named *arati*.
4. *Śoka* - Sorrow for an object is known as *śoka*.
5. *Bhaya* - Fear is caused by the *bhaya*-karma.
6. *Jugupsā* - It is a kind of disgust.
7. *Puruṣa-veda* - Through this, in the male the desire for union with the female is produced.
8. *Strī-veda* - Through this, in the female the desire for union with the male is caused.

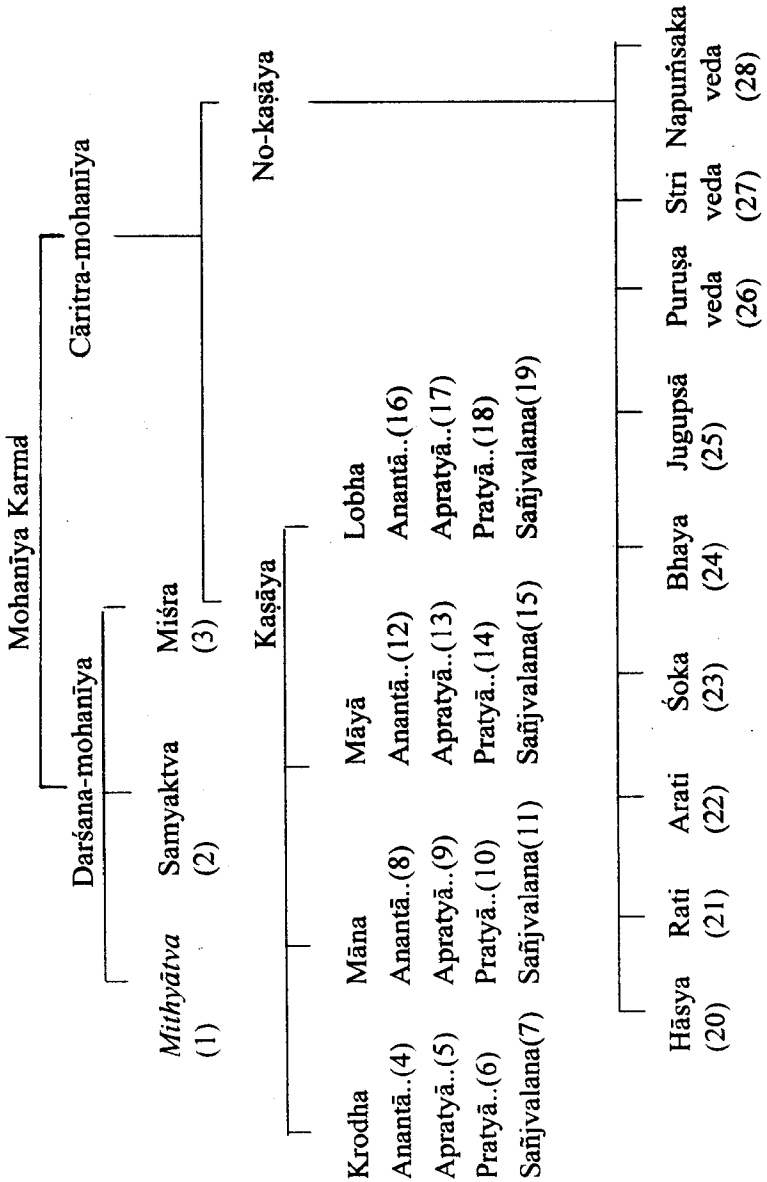
9. *Napumsaka-veda* - The third sex is produced by this karma. The sexual urge with this is exceedingly strong, since it is directed towards male and female both.<sup>1</sup>

The *cāritra-mohanīya* karma has accordingly twenty-five sub-species. Adding the three sub-species of the *darśana-mohanīya* to it, we have in all twenty-eight sub-species of the deluding (*mohanīya*) karma. The following table will show these sub-species :

---

1. Commentary on Karma-grantha, I. 14-9; I. 21-2.





### Age-determining Karma :

It confers on a being a certain quantum of life in any one of the four states of existence. The following are the four sub-species of the *āyus* karma :

1. *Deva-āyus* - It determines the celestial age.
2. *Manuṣya-āyus* - The human age is determined by it.
3. *Tiryag-āyus* - It determines the age of animal life.
4. *Naraka-āyus* - The age of hellish beings is determined by it.

### Physique-making Karma :

It causes physical diversities. It is known as *nāma* karma. The number of its sub-species is 103. These sub-species are mostly quoted in a fixed succession in four groups : *piṇḍa-prakṛtis*, *pratyeka-prakṛtis*, *trasa-daśaka* and *sthāvara-daśaka*.<sup>1</sup> The names of the causes of these sub-species are according to the names of the sub-species.

(a) *Piṇḍa-prakṛtis* - There are seventy-five sub-species in this group :

- 4 *States of Existence* - Celestial state of existence, human state of existence, animal state of existence and hellish state of existence.
- 5 *Classes of Beings* - Beings with one sense, two senses, three senses, four senses and five senses.
- 5 *Bodies* - Gross body of animals (including vegetable kingdom) and human beings, transformable body of fine matter, projectable body of pure matter, electric body and karmic body.
- 3 *Chief and Secondary Parts of Bodies* - Chief and secondary parts of gross body, of transformable body and of projectable body. Electric body and karmic body have no parts.

---

1. Doctrine of Karman in Jain Philosophy, p. 11.

### 15 Bindings :

1. Binding of gross body with previous gross body.
2. Binding of gross body with electric body.
3. Binding of gross body with karmic body.
4. Binding of gross body with electric and karmic bodies.
5. Binding of transformable body with previous transformable body.
6. Binding of transformable body with electric body.
7. Binding of transformable body with karmic body.
8. Binding of transformable body with electric and karmic bodies.
9. Binding of projectable body with previous projectable body.
10. Binding of projectable body with electric body.
11. Binding of projectable body with karmic body.
12. Binding of projectable body with electric and karmic bodies.
13. Binding of electric body with previous electric body.
14. Binding of electric body with karmic body.
15. Binding of karmic body with previous karmic body.

Certain types of bodies are not bound with some particular types of bodies, as for instance, gross body has no binding with transformable body and so on. Hence, the bindings are only fifteen in number.

**5 Saṅghātanas - Saṅghātana** is a type of scraping as a rake gathers together the grass that has scattered about. According to the five bodies there are five *saṅghātana-nāma* karmas: scraping of the matter of gross body, of transformable body, of projectable body, of electric body and of karmic body.

**6 Firmnesses of Joints of Gross Body - Vajra-ṛṣabha-nārāca-saṁhanana** is an excellent joining in which two bones are hooked into one another, *ṛṣabha-nārāca-saṁhanana* is not so firm, *nārāca-saṁhanana* is still

weaker, *ardha-nārāca-samhanana* is a joining which is on one side like the preceding one, while on the other, the bones are simply pressed together and nailed, *kālika-samhanana* is a weak joining by which the bones are merely pressed together and nailed and *sevārta-samhanana* is quite a weak joining in which the ends of the bones only touch one another.

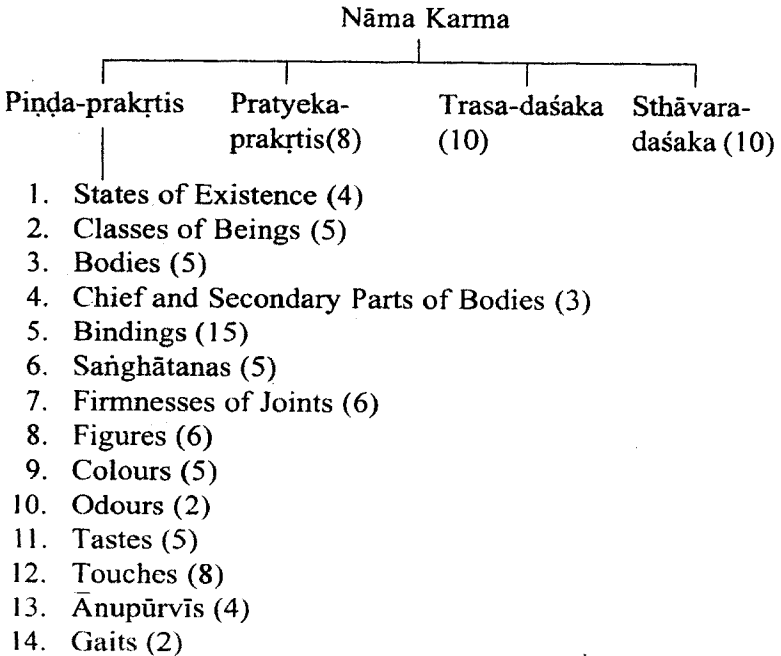
- 6 *Figures* - The *samsthāna-nāma* karma determines the figure of a body. Six types of figures have been discussed in the Jaina doctrine of karma : the entire body to be symmetrical, the upper part of the body to be symmetrical and not the lower one, the body below the navel to be symmetrical and above it unsymmetrical, the body to be hunch-backed, the body to be dwarf-like and the entire body to be unsymmetrical.
- 5 *Colours* - Black, blue, red, yellow and white. Other colours are produced by mixing only.
- 2 *Odours* - Pleasant odour and unpleasant odour or good smell and bad smell.
- 5 *Tastes* - Bitter, sour, acidic, sweet and astringent.
- 8 *Touches* - Soft, hard, light, heavy, cold, hot, smooth and rough.
- 4 *Ānupūrvīs* - When one existence of a soul is finished and it goes from the place of death to the place of its new birth, this state is called *ānupūrvī*. There are four *ānupūrvīs* according to the four states of existence (*gati*) : celestial, human, animal and infernal.
2. *Gaits* - To move in a pleasant manner as oxen, elephants etc. do and to move in an ugly manner as camels, asses etc. do.
- (b) *Pratyeka-prakṛtis* - This group consists of eight sub-species: superiority over others, capability of breathing, hot body of the sun etc., cold body of the moon etc., a body that is neither

heavy nor light, the body of a Founder of the Holy Order (*tīrthankara*), normal formation of the body and abnormal formation of the body.

(c) *Trasa-daśaka* - There are ten sub-species in this group : a body possessing more than one sense, gross body, developed body, individual body, firm body, beautiful and lovely parts of the body, gaining of sympathy without any obligation, sweet voice, suggestive speech and honour and glory-winning personality.

(d) *Sthāvara-daśaka* - This group also consists of ten sub-species : a body possessing one sense only, subtle body, undeveloped body, a body in common, a body without firmness, ugly parts of the body, no gaining of sympathy, ill-sounding voice, unsuggestive speech and dishonour and shame-giving personality.

The scheme of the sub-species of the physique-making karma is as under :



### Heredity-determining Karma :

It destines the hereditary characters possessed by a person. This species is called *gotra* karma. It is divided into two sub-species:<sup>1</sup>

1. *Uccairgotra* karma destines superior heredity.
2. *Nicairgotra* karma determines inferior heredity.

### Power-hindering Karma :

It hinders the power (*vīrya*) of the soul. It is known as *antarāya* karma. The power is hindered in a five-fold manner:<sup>2</sup>

1. *Dāna-antarāya* karma - It hinders dispensing alms etc.
2. *Lābha-antarāya* karma - This kind of *antarāya* karma hinders receiving.

3. *Bhoga-antarāya* karma - It hinders the enjoyment of something which can be enjoyed once, such as food etc.

4. *Upabhoga-antarāya* karma - It hinders the enjoyment of something that can be repeatedly enjoyed, such as clothes etc.

5. *Vīrya-antarāya* karma - It hinders the freedom of will-power.

The total number of the sub-species of the eight karmas is as follows :

1. Knowledge-obscuring karma	...	...	5
2. Intuition-obscuring karma	...	...	9
3. Feeling-producing karma	...	...	2
4. Deluding karma	...	...	28
5. Age-determining karma	...	...	4
6. Physique-making karma	...	...	103
7. Heredity-determining karma	...	...	2
8. Power-hindering karma	...	...	5
		Total	158

1. Karma-grantha, I. 52.

2. Ibid.

**Bandha, Udaya, Udīraṇā and Sattā :**

Taking into consideration the existence in *potentia* (*sattā*), all the sub-species can exist in a soul. So far as their realisation (*udaya*) is concerned, the entire number amounts only to 122. If the bondage (*bandha*) of new sub-species is taken into consideration, the total number is assumed to be 120. If the premature realisation (*udīraṇā*) is considered, the entire number amounts to 122 as in realisation.<sup>1</sup> The following table will indicate the number of the sub-species existing in different states :

	Bandha	Udaya	Udīraṇā	Sattā
Knowledge-obscuring	5	5	5	5
Intuition-obscuring	9	9	9	9
Feeling-producing	2	2	2	2
Deluding	26	28	28	28
Age-determining	4	4	4	4
Physique-making	67	67	67	103
Heredity-determining	2	2	2	2
Power-hindering	5	5	5	5
Total	120	122	122	158

In *sattā* all the *prakṛtis* exist. In *udaya* the number is only 122, because the fifteen bindings and the five *saṅghātanās* are not included as they are then thought to exist implicitly in the five bodies. The colours, odours, tastes and touches are only reckoned as four instead of twenty. In *udīraṇā* also the same sub-species are counted. In *bandha* the number is 120, since the two *mohanīya* karmas, viz., *samyaktva* and *miśra*

1. Karma-vipāka, p. 111.

cannot be bound separately, because they are purified conditions of *mithyātva*. Therefore, they must be subtracted from the 122 sub-species of *udaya* and *udīraṇā*, so that the total number in *bandha* is 120.

#### Duration :

After having considered the nature of karmas we, now, proceed to their duration. First, let us understand the scheme of the division of time as conceived by the Jainas. The lowest unit of time is a *samaya*. Innumerable *samayas* form an *āvalikā*. 16,777,216 *āvalikās* make a *muhūrta* (48 minutes of modern time.) Thirty *muhūrtas* make an *ahorātra* ( a day and night). Out of *ahorātras* are formed fortnights, months, years etc. Years can be expressed in words up to a number containing 77 cyphers. Beyond that, it is *asaṅkhyeya* (innumerable). An innumerable quantity of years makes a *palyopamā*, 10 *koṭākoṭi* (1,000,000,000,000,000) *palyopamas* make a *sāgaropama*, 10 *koṭākoṭi sāgaropamas* form an *utsarpiṇī* (ascending peiod), the same number of *sāgaropamas* forms an *avasarpiṇī* (descending period).<sup>1</sup>

The following table will give the highest as well as the lowest duration of each chief species of karma :<sup>2</sup>

	<i>Maximum</i>	<i>Minimum</i>
1. Knowledge-obscuring	30 <i>koṭākoṭi sāgaropamas</i>	Within one <i>muhūrta</i>
2. Intuitionobscuring	" "	" "
3. Feeling-producing	" "	12 <i>muhūrtas</i>
4. Deluding	70 " "	Within one <i>muhūrta</i>
5. Age-determining	33 <i>sāgaropamas</i>	" "
6. Physique-making	20 <i>koṭākoṭi sāgaropamas</i>	8 <i>muhūrtas</i>
7. Heredity-determining	" "	" "
8. Power-hindering	30 " "	Within one <i>muhūrta</i>

1. Doctrine of Karman in Jain Philosophy, p.20.

2. Tattvārtha-sūtra, VIII. 15-21.



### Intensity :

The intensity of the effect of karma depends upon the weakness or strength of the passions (*kaṣāyas*). In accordance with the four degrees of the passions, four degrees of the strength of karma have been recognised by Jainism. The more sinful a person is, the duration of his bad karmas is longer. The stronger the effect of his badness, the weaker the effect of his good species. With an increased purity the duration as well as the intensity of the bad species decreases, while the intensity of the good species grows. With the bad species, the fourth degree of intensity is produced by the most violent passions, i.e., the *anantānubandhi kaṣāyas*. The third degree is caused by the *apratyākhyānāvaraṇa kaṣāyas*, the second by the *pratyākhyānāvaraṇa kaṣāyas* and the first by the *sañjvalana kaṣāyas*. With regard to the good species, the *sañjvalanas* produce the fourth, *pratyākhyānāvaraṇas* the third and the *apratyākhyānāvaraṇas* the second. The intensity of the first degree does not exist with the good species.<sup>1</sup>

### Quantity :

The soul assimilates only that karmic matter which is within its own *pradeśas*, and not that lying outside, just as fire seizes only that inflammable material which is lying within its reach. The matter assimilated by the soul is divided into the eight species of karma. The shares which fall to the eight species differ from one another. The age-determining species (*āyus*) receives the smallest part, a greater portion goes to the physique-making (*nāman*) and heredity-determining (*gotra*) species which both obtain equal portions. More than that goes to the knowledge-obscuring (*jñānāvaraṇīya*), intuition-obscuring (*darśanāvaraṇīya*) and power-hindering (*antarāya*) species, each of which gets an equal portion. Still a larger part than these falls to the deluding (*mohanīya*) species and the greatest of all goes to the feeling-producing (*vedanīya*) species.

1. Doctrine of Karman in Jain Philosophy, p.24.

These shares are further divided among the sub-species.<sup>1</sup>

### **Causes of Bondage :**

The theory of causation explains each and every event of life in the strict form of cause and effect. No effect can be produced in the absence of its cause. This universal law is applied to the doctrine of karma also, as we have already mentioned. Each of the karma-species can only be bound so far as its cause of bondage is in existence. The following activities constitute the causes of the different species. Although all the species are bound by activities and passions in general, yet, every species has some special causes constituted by some particular activities. They are as follows:<sup>2</sup>

### **Causes of Knowledge, Intuition-obscuring Karmas :**

1. Hostility against knowledge, knower and the means of knowledge.
2. Denial, annihilation and hindrance of these three.
3. Disregard of a true doctrine and its commandments.
4. Rebelliousness and lack of discipline towards teachers.
5. Complete destruction of books and other means of knowledge.
6. Indifferent or opposite attitude towards knower and knowledge.

### **Causes of Feeling-producing Karma :**

Pleasure :

1. Respects for parents, teachers etc.
2. To have pity on miserable beings.
3. Keeping of vows of the house-holder or monk.
4. Honourable conduct.
5. Overcoming of passions.
6. Giving of alms or some other kind of help.
7. Fidelity in belief.

---

1. Ibid., p. 26.

2. Karma-grantha, I. 54-61.

8. Interest in spiritual activities.

The contrary causes produce pain.

### **Causes of Belief-obstructing Karma :**

1. Teaching of a false faith.
2. Denial of the path of liberation.
3. Pollution of sacred objects.
4. Blasphemy of liberated souls.
5. Blasphemy of monks and saints.
6. Blasphemy of gods.
7. Disregard of the Holy Order.

### **Causes of Conduct-obstructing Karma :**

1. The actions produced by the outbreak of passions cause the binding of the *kaṣāya-mohanīya* karma.

2. The *no-kaṣāya-mohanīya* karma is bound by the mind which is confused through joking, liking, disliking, sorrow, fear, disgust etc.

3. Slight passionate desire, conjugal fidelity, inclination for right conduct etc. cause the binding of the *puruṣa-veda* (male sex) karma.

4. Jealousy, deceit, great sensuality, adultery etc. cause the binding of the *strī-veda* (femal sex) karma.

5. Violent love of pleasure and strong passions directed towards sexual intercourse with the male and female cause the binding of the *napuṃsaka-veda* (third sex) karma.

### **Causes of Age-determining Karma :**

1. The hellish age is bound by the actions of one who tortures and kills other beings and strives in an extraordinary manner after passions.

2. The deceitful and fraudulent person binds the animal age.

3. The humble and sincere one, whose passions are slight, binds the human life.

4. One who possesses right belief but who only partially or not at all practises self-discipline, whose passions are slight,

who is chaste, who endures troubles etc., binds the celestial life.

### **Causes of Physique-making Karma :**

Honesty, gentleness, absence of desire, purity etc. are the causes of the binding of the good physique-making karma, while the contrary causes produce the bad physique-making karma.

### **Causes of Heredity-determining Karma :**

The recognition of the excellence of others, modesty, reverence towards teachers and the desire to learn and to teach are some of the causes of the binding of the superior heredity, whereas the contrary causes are responsible for the binding of the inferior heredity.

### **Causes of Power-hindering Karma :**

The withholding of food, drink, lodging, clothing and the like causes the binding of the power-hindering karma.

### **Prevention and Destruction of Karma :**

The binding of new karma can be prevented through the means of control of the activity of body, speech and mind (*gupti*); carefulness in walking, speaking, lifting up and laying down a thing etc. (*samiti*); moral virtues (*dharma*); reflection (*anupreksā*); patient endurance of troubles (*parīśahajaya*) and conduct (*cāritra*).<sup>1</sup>

The acquired karmas can be annihilated through suitable measures of fasting, reduction of food, restriction to certain kinds of food, renunciation of delicacies, a lonely resting place, mortification of the body, expiation, modesty, service, study, renunciation of egoism and meditation.<sup>2</sup>

### **Stages of Spiritual Development :**

According to Jaina philosophy, there are fourteen stages of development through which the soul gradually delivers itself

1. Tattvārtha-sūtra, IX. 2.

2. Ibid., IX. 3; IX. 19-20.

from the state of complete dependence upon karma to the state of complete dissociation from it. These stages are known as the 'states of virtue', i.e., *guṇasthānas*. Here the word 'virtue' does not mean an ordinary moral quality but stands for the nature of soul, i.e., knowledge, belief and conduct.<sup>1</sup>

Through these fourteen stages of development, the soul gradually frees itself, firstly from the worst, then from the less bad and finally from all kinds of karma, and manifests the innate qualities of knowledge, belief and conduct in a more and more perfect form. The owners of these stages are the following :<sup>2</sup>

1. Wrong believer (*mithyādr̥ṣṭi*).
2. One who has slight taste of right belief (*sāsvādāna samyagdr̥ṣṭi*).
3. One who has a mixed belief (*miśradr̥ṣṭi*).
4. One who has true belief but has not yet self-discipline (*avirata samyagdr̥ṣṭi*).
5. One who has partial self-control (*deśavirata*).
6. One who has complete self-discipline, although sometimes brought into wavering through negligence (*pramatta samyata*).
7. One who has self-control without negligence (*apramatta samyata*).
8. One who practises the process called '*apūrva karaṇa*' and in whom, however, the passions are still occurring in a gross form (*nivṛtti bādara samparāya*).
9. One who practises the process called '*anivṛtti karaṇa*' and in whom, however the passions are still occurring (*anivṛtti bādara samparāya*).
10. One in whom the passions occur in a subtle form (*sūkṣma samparāya*).

---

1. *Tatra guṇāḥ jñānadarśanacāritrarūpāḥ jīvasvabhāvaviśeṣāḥ—Karma-grantha, II. 2 (commentary).*

2. *Ibid.*

11. One who has suppressed every passion but does not yet possess omniscience (*upaśānta kaṣāya vītarāga chadmastha*).

12. One who has annihilated every passion but does not yet possess omniscience (*kṣīṇa kaṣāya vītarāga chadmastha*).

13. One who possesses omniscience and engages himself in activities (*sayogi kevalin*).

14. One who is omniscient and does not perform any activity (*ayogi kevalin*).

The whole scheme of *guṇasthānas* is devised in a logical order according to the principle of decreasing sinfulness and increasing purity. At the first stage, all the causes of binding, viz., wrong belief, lack of self-discipline, passions and activity are operating. From the second to the fifth, only three causes are in operation, i.e., wrong belief is absent. From the sixth to the tenth, only passions and activity exercise their influence. From the eleventh to the thirteenth, only activity is present. On the last stage, there is no activity, and hence, no binding of karma.

### **Mithyādr̥ṣṭi :**

The chief characteristic of this *guṇasthāna* is wrong belief. The '*abhavyas*' (not capable of salvation) as well as the '*bhavyas*' (capable of salvation) are on this stage. The difference between their conditions is that all the '*abhavyas*' are eternally in this *guṇasthāna*, whereas only those *bhavyas* who by reason of certain unfavourable conditions do not reach salvation, do so for a certain period. With the other '*bhavyas*' this stage has no beginning but an end which comes sooner or later. With a being who fell from a higher stage and sank into wrong belief, it has a beginning as well as an end.

### **Sāsvādāna Samyagdr̥ṣṭi :**

It is of very short duration lasting in the minimum one '*samaya*' and in the maximum six '*āvalikās*'. Those beings that possessed right belief produced by the suppression of wrong

belief during the period within a '*muhūrta*' but who had lost it again on account of the breaking out of passions, are said to enjoy this *guṇasthāna*. After the lapse of the settled period, the being necessarily sinks back into the first *guṇasthāna*.

### **Miśradr̥ṣṭi :**

The fundamental characteristic of this stage is indifference which lasts only during the period within forty-eight minutes (*muhūrta*). It is a mixed belief produced by the mingling of truth and falsity. After the lapse of the time of the stay on this stage, the being attains wrong or right belief, according to the circumstances.

### **Avirata Samyagdr̥ṣṭi :**

To this stage belong those beings who possess right belief and have the knowledge of truth and falsity but on account of the realisation of the *apratyākhyānāvaraṇa kaṣāyas* are not capable of practising self-discipline. The duration of this stage is in the minimum within a *muhūrta* and in the maximum somewhat more than thirty-three *sāgaropamas*.

### **Deśavirata :**

In this state of virtue, partial self-discipline exists. The duration is in the minimum within a *muhūrta* and in the maximum somewhat less than a *pūrvakoṭi*.

### **Pramatta Samyata :**

The being belonging to this *guṇasthāna* attains complete self-discipline, although he is disturbed through negligence produced by the realisation of the *sañjvalana* passions. This state lasts in the minimum one *samaya* and in the maximum within a *muhūrta*. If the person belonging to this stage degrades after one *samaya*, he becomes an *avirata* (4th stage); if the degradation is after *antarmuhūrta*, he becomes a *deśavirata* (5th stage). If the *antarmuhūrta*, however, has passed without any incident, he goes to the seventh stage. If he has ascended no series, he comes back to the sixth stage and the operation

begins anew. This wavering between the sixth and seventh *guṇasthānas* lasts in the maximum somewhat less than a *pūrvakoṭi*. If the *upaśama* or *kṣapaka* series is ascended, such a wavering does not take place.

#### **Apramatta Saṁyata :**

In this state of virtue, complete self-discipline without negligence exists. It lasts one *samaya* till *antarmuhūrta*.

#### **Nivṛtti Bādara Samparāya :**

Like the following stages, this stage is accessible only to those beings who are on a *śreṇi* (series). A special process known as *apūrvakarāṇa* is performed at this stage. The being who is on the *upaśama śreṇi* remains on this stage in the minimum one *samaya* and in the maximum *antarmuhūrta*; the one who is on the *kṣapaka śreṇi* altogether *antarmuhūrta*.

#### **Anivṛtti Bādara Samparāya :**

One who is on the *upaśama* or *kṣapaka śreṇi* and performs the process called *anivṛttikarāṇa* belongs to this stage. The former remains on it in the minimum one *samaya* and in the maximum *antarmuhūrta*; the latter *antarmuhūrta* altogether. The passions still occur on this stage.

#### **Sūkṣma Samparāya :**

On this stage passions only occur in the most subtle form in order to be then totally suppressed or annihilated. It lasts with the *upaśama śreṇi* one *samaya* in the minimum and *antarmuhūrta* in the maximum; with the *kṣapaka śreṇi* altogether *antarmuhūrta*.

#### **Upaśanta Kaṣāya Vītarāga Chā dmadastha :**

It is the highest stage that can be reached on the *upaśama śreṇi*. The passions on this stage are totally suppressed. It lasts in the minimum one *samaya* and in the maximum *antarmuhūrta*. After ending this stage, the being belonging to it falls from the *upaśama śreṇi* and sinks into one of the lower states.



### **Kṣīṇa Kaṣāya Vītarāga Chadmastha :**

In the last *samaya* of the tenth stage when the last particle of greed has been annihilated, the being who is on the *kṣapaka śreṇi* becomes a *kṣīṇa-kaṣāya* (one with annihilated passions). He remains *antarmuhūrta* on this stage and then becomes omniscient without fail.

### **Sayogi Kevalin :**

When the karmas obscuring the knowledge, intuition, bliss and power of the soul have completely been annihilated, the person becomes a *sayogi kevalin*. He possesses omniscience and omnipotence. He still possesses certain activities conditional upon matter. Certain karmas are still rising, but as soon as his '*āyus*' (age) is exhausted, he annihilates them also in order to be emancipated. This state of virtue lasts in the minimum *antarmuhūrta* and in the maximum somewhat less than a *pūrvakoṭi*.

### **Ayogi Kevalin :**

This highest state of virtue is a transitory state which lasts *antarmuhūrta* and leads to the complete emancipation from karma. With the complete annihilation of every action, the omniscient enters the *śailesī* state - a state of pure meditation which only lasts as long as is necessary to pronounce the five short syllables (a,i,u, ṛ,l). When the remaining karmas are completely annihilated, the liberated soul goes to the end of the universe which is called *siddha-śilā*. It dwells there without visible shape. It possesses an immaterial dimension of two-thirds of that which it had during its last existence (*gati*). There it enjoys infinite, incomparable, indestructible, supernatural happiness of salvation. A soul in its perfect nature is God. Every being has got the innate nature of Godliness. Through its right belief, right knowledge and right conduct, it can attain that state. It is the individual effort - the personal endeavour that constitutes the path to the state of God. There the soul perfectly shines with infinite knowledge,

infinite intuition, infinite bliss and infinite power. The liberated soul does not lose its individuality. Its individual existence is retained in that state as well.

### Upaśama Śreṇi :

At the end of the seventh stage of development, the soul ascends either *upaśama śreṇi* or *kṣapaka śreṇi*.<sup>1</sup> That *śreṇi* (series) in which the heaped-up species of *mohanīya* karma are suppressed so that they cannot manifest themselves, is called *upaśama śreṇi*. The species are not totally eradicated. They exist in a latent state and can break out again occasionally. If the suppression takes place in a regular and systematic way in a certain succession, the *upaśama śreṇi* ends in a complete suppression of all the deluding karmas. This series reaches its end in the *upaśānta moha guṇasthāna* (11th stage), as then the suppressed passions break out again and the *jīva* descends from the series. The different stages of the development of the *upaśama śreṇi* consist in the following procedure :<sup>2</sup>

Firstly, the being suppresses the life-long passions. Thereupon he suppresses the three sub-species of the belief-obscuring karma and through that reaches *aupaśamika samyaktva* (right belief acquired through suppression). When this has happened, the being proceeds to the suppression of the still remaining *mohanīya karmas*. For this purpose he performs three processes : *yathāpravṛttikaraṇa*, *apūrvakaraṇa* and *anivṛttikaraṇa*. If a calculable part of the *anivṛttikaraṇa* has passed, the *jīva* performs an *antarakaraṇa* of the twenty-one remaining *mohanīya karmas*. Then he successively suppresses, within the fraction of a *muhūrta*, the third sex-passion, then the female sex-passion, then joking, liking, disliking, sorrow, fear and disgust, then the male sex-passion, then simultaneously the *apratyākhyānāvaraṇa* and *pratyākhyānāvaraṇa* types of anger, then the *sañjvalana* anger. This

1. Some writers start from the fourth stage also. See Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1291.

2. Karma-grantha, V. 98.

process occurs in man. The succession in woman is : third sex-passion, male sex-passion, joking etc.; in *napuṃsaka* is : female sex-passion, male sex-passion, joking etc.<sup>1</sup> Thereupon follows the suppression of the second and third kinds of deceit and of the *sañjvalana* deceit, and then that of the second and third kinds of greed. After that the *sañjvalana* greed becomes divided into three parts : the first two of these, the being suppresses simultaneously, the third again is divided into a measurable number of pieces, which are suppressed gradually piece by piece. Through this long process he becomes a *sūkṣma samparāya* (10th stage). When the last piece of greed is suppressed, he is an *upaśānta moha* (11th stage). On this stage, the *jīva* remains, in the maximum for *antarmuhūrta* and in the minimum for one *samaya*. No sooner has this time passed than he falls down from this stage and sinks into even the second *guṇasthāna* under certain circumstances.

### **Kṣapaka Śreṇi :**

The *kṣapaka śreṇi* leads to the destruction of karmas. The person who has ascended it, annihilates successively the different species of karma that exist in *potentia*, becomes in the end quite free from karma, and thereby achieves the highest goal – salvation.

A person exceeding eight years of age and possessing the best firmness of the joints is capable of ascending this series. First of all, he annihilates the four life-long passions, then the three species of belief-obscuring karma. If he has bound *āyus* (age) and dies before wrong belief is completely annihilated, in his new existence he can eventually bind anew the four life-long passions, since wrong belief, which is their germ, still exists. If, however, wrong belief is destroyed, this is impossible. If he has bound *āyus* but does not die immediately after the annihilation of the seven *mohanīya* karmas, he is satisfied with what he has attained, and for the moment does not undertake any endeavour to annihilate the

1. Āvaśyaka-niryukti, 116; Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya, 1288.

other karmas. He experiences still three or four births before he attains liberation. If he reaches the series without having bound *āyus*, he proceeds immediately to the destruction of the still remaining conduct-obscuring karmas. For this purpose, he performs three processes of which the first falls into the seventh stage, the second into the eighth stage and the third into the ninth stage. During the second process (*apūrvakaraṇa*) he begins simultaneously with the annihilation of the four *apratyākhyānāvaraṇa* and *pratyākhyānāvaraṇa* passions. When these have half disappeared, he meanwhile destroys three intuition-obscuring karmas and thirteen physique-making karmas. Then he annihilates what still remains of the two species of passions. Thereupon follows the annihilation of the third and female sex-passions, of joking, liking, disliking, sorrow, fear, disgust, male sex-passion, and of the *sañjvalana* anger, pride and deceit.<sup>1</sup> After this he leaves the ninth stage and sinks into the *sūkṣma samparāya guṇasthāna* where he successively annihilates the *sañjvalana* greed divided into pieces. As soon as the last piece of greed disappears, all the passions are destroyed and the highest stage of the series is reached. The *jīva* is now a *kṣīṇa kaṣāya* (12th stage). Then he annihilates two kinds of sleep (*nidrā and pracalā*), thereupon the five veilings of knowledge, the four veilings of intuition and the five species of the power-hindering karma. Then he becomes a *sayogi kevalin* (13th stage)<sup>2</sup> who still wanders for some time on the earth and thereafter attains salvation.



- 
1. This process is for man. For woman and third sex — the same change as in the *upaśama śreṇi*.
  2. Karma-grantha, V.99..



## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### JAINA WORKS :

*Anuyoga-dvāra-sūtra.*

*Āpta-mīmāṃsā* - Samantabhadra.

*Aṣṭa-sahasrī* - Vidyānandī.

*Āvaśyaka-niryukti* - Bhadrabāhu.

*Bhagavati-sūtra.*

*Cosmology : Old and New* - Jain, G.R.

*Critique of Organ of Knowledge (Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā)* -  
Trans. Mookerjee and Tatia.

*Daśavaikālika-sūtra-niryukti* - Bhadrabāhu.

*Doctrine of Karman in Jain Philosophy* - Glasenapp, H.V.

*Dravya-saṅgraha* - Nemicandra.

*Jaina Philosophy of Non-Absolutism* - Mookerjee, S.K.

*Jainism* - Herbert Warren.

*Jñānā-bindu-prakarāṇa* - Yaśovijaya.

*Karmagrantha I,II,III,IV* - Devendrasūri.

*Karma Philosophy* - Gandhi, V.R.

*Karma Vipāka* - Pt. Sukhlal.

*Laghīyastraya-ṭikā* - Akalaṅka.

*Nandi-sūtra.*

*Naya-karṇikā* - Vinayavijaya.

*Niyama-sāra* - Kundakunda.

*Nyāyāvatāra* - Siddhasena

*Nyāyāvatāra-vārtika-vṛtti* - Edit. Dalsukh Malvania.

*Pañcāstikāya-sāra* - Kundakunda.

*Parīkṣā-mukha* - Māṅikyanandī.

*Prajñāpanā-sūtra.*

- Pramāṇa-mīmāṃsā* - Hemacandra.  
*Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka* - Vādideva.  
*Prameya-kamala-mārtaṇḍa* - Prabhācandra.  
*Pravacana-sāra* - Kundakunda.  
*Rāja-praśnīya-sūtra*.  
*Ratnākarāvātārikā* (Commentary on *Pramāṇa-naya-tattvāloka*) -  
 Ratnaprabhasūri.  
*Ṣaḍ-darśana-sammuccaya* (with *Guṇaratna's Commentary*) -  
 Haribhadra.  
*Samayasāra* - Kundakunda.  
*Sanmati-tarka-prakarāṇa* - Siddhasena.  
*Sarvārtha-siddhi* - Pūjyapāda.  
*Śāstra-vārtā-samuccaya* - Haribhadra.  
*Sthānāṅga-sūtra*  
*Studies in Jaina Philosophy* - Tatia, N. M.  
*Syādvāda-mañjarī* (on *Anyayoga-vyavacoheda-dvātrimśikā*)  
 - Edit. Dhruva, A.B.  
*Syādvāda-ratnākara* - Vādideva.  
*Tattvārtha-bhāṣya* - Umāsvāti.  
*Tattvārtha-rāja-vārtika* - Akalaṅka.  
*Tattvārtha-sāra* - Amṛtacandra.  
*Tattvārtha-śloka-vārtika* - Vidyānandī.  
*Tattvārtha-sūtra* - Umāsvāti.  
*Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya* - Jinabhadra.

### NON-JAINA WORKS :

- Chāndogya-upaniṣad*.  
*Conception of Matter* - Umesh Mishra.  
*Contemporary Philosophy* - Bosanquet.  
*Critique of Pure Reason* - Kant.  
*Doctrine of Karma* - Abhedanand.

- History of Indian Logic* - Satish Chandra Vidyabhusan.  
*History of Western Philosophy* - Russell.  
*Idea of God* - Pattison, A. S. P.  
*Indian Philosophy* - Radhakrishnan, S.  
*Indian Philosophy* - Sharma, C. D.  
*Lankāvatāra-sūtra*.  
*Life and Philosophy in Contemporary British Philosophy, First Series* - Bosanquet.  
*Mādhyamika-kārikā* - Nāgārjuna.  
*Mīmāṃsā-sūtra-Śābara-bhāṣya* - Śābarasvāmī.  
*Muktāvali* - Viśvanātha.  
*Nature of the World* - Stace.  
*Nyāya-bindu* - Dharmakīrti.  
*Nyāya-sūtra* - Akṣapāda.  
*Present Philosophical Tendencies* - Perry.  
*Principles of Philosophy* - Bhattacharya, H.M.  
*Prolegomena to an Idealistic Theory of Knowledge* - Smith, N. K.  
*Śāṅkara-bhāṣya on Brahma-sūtra* - Śāṅkarācārya.  
*Sāṅkhya-kārikā* - Īśvarakṛṣṇa.  
*Sarva-darśana-saṅgraha* - Mādhavācārya.  
*Self, Thought and Reality* - Mukerji, A. C.  
*Śloka-vārtika* - Kumārila.  
*Structure of Molecules* : Science Progress, London, April 1935.  
*Tarkasaṅgraha* - Annambhaṭṭa.  
*Tattva-traya* - Lokācārya.  
*Trimśikā* - Vasubandhu.  
*Vaiśeṣika-sūtra* - Kaṇāda.  
*Vedānta-siddhānta-muktāvali* - Prakāśānanda.  
*Vimśatikā* - Vasubandhu.  
*Works* - Green, T. H.







## INDEX

A		<i>Ajīva</i>	
<i>Abhāva</i>	209	<i>Ājīvaka</i>	9
<i>Abhayadevasūri</i>	27	<i>Akalaṅka</i>	30, 91
<i>Ābhinibodhika</i>	134	<i>Ākāśa</i>	73
<i>Acakṣurdarśana</i>	90	<i>Ākāśāstikāya</i>	64, 73
<i>Acakṣurdarśanāvaraṇīya</i>	191	<i>Alokākāśa</i>	73
<i>Ācārāṅga</i>	18	<i>Analogy</i>	137, 141
<i>Ācārāṅga-sūtra</i>	166	<i>Ananta-catuṣṭaya</i>	86
<i>Acelaka</i>	8, 14	<i>Anantānubandhin</i>	194
<i>Addhāsamaya</i>	64, 74	<i>Anavasthita</i>	146
<i>Adharmāstikāya</i>	64, 72	<i>Anaxagoras</i>	50
<i>Adhyātma-mata-parikṣā</i>	34	<i>Anaximander</i>	50
<i>Adhyātma-sāra</i>	34	<i>Anaximenes</i>	50
<i>Ādhyātmika-mata-khaṇḍana</i>	34	<i>Andhakavṛṣṇi</i>	5
		<i>Andhakavṛṣṇidaśā</i>	23
<i>Adhyātmopaniṣad</i>	34	<i>Andhra</i>	12
<i>Adler</i>	113	<i>Ānekānta</i>	168
<i>Adrṣṭa</i>	102, 105	<i>Anekāntajayapatākā</i>	31
<i>Affirmation</i>	184	<i>Ānekāntavāda</i>	168
<i>Āgama</i>	137	<i>Anekāntavādapraveśa</i>	31
<i>Age-determining Karma</i>	197	<i>Anekānta-vyavasthā</i>	33
<i>Aggregate</i>	173	<i>Aṅga</i>	17, 18
<i>Agnibhūti</i>	105	<i>Aṅga-bāhya</i>	17, 18
<i>Agrāyaṇīya Pūrva</i>	21	<i>Aṅga-praviṣṭa</i>	17
<i>Āhāraka</i>	126	<i>Anger</i>	193
<i>Āhāra-vargaṇā</i>	125	<i>Animism</i>	3
<i>Ahorātra</i>	203	<i>Anivṛtti-bādara-samparāya,</i>	
<i>Air</i>	70, 117		208, 211
<i>Ajātaśatru</i>	10	<i>Anivṛttikaraṇa</i>	208, 211

Antakṛddaśā	19	Association	176
<i>Antarāya</i>	201	Aṣṭasahasrī	31
Anti-thesis	173	Aṣṭaśatī	30
<i>Aṇu</i>	70, 71, 115, 118	<i>Astikāya</i>	65
<i>Anubhāga</i>	190	Aśvasena	4
<i>Anugāmin</i>	145, 146	<i>Ātman</i>	96
<i>Anumāna</i>	137, 159	<i>Ātmapravāda Pūrva</i>	21
<i>Anuprekṣā</i>	207	<i>Ātma-rūpa</i>	175
<i>Ānupūrvī</i>	199	Atom	70, 71, 115, 118, 119
Anuttaraupapātikadaśā	19	Attainment	153
Anuyoga	20	<i>Āturapratyākhyāna</i>	25
Anuyogadvāra	25	<i>Audārika</i>	126
<i>Apkāya</i>	70	Aupapātika	22
Application	163	Authority	137, 141, 164
<i>Apramatta-samyata</i>	208, 211	<i>Avadhi</i>	91, 134, 144
<i>Apratyākhyānāvaraṇa</i>	194	<i>Avadhi-darśana</i>	90
<i>Āpta</i>	164	<i>Avadhi-darśanāvaraṇīya</i>	191
<i>Āptamīmāṃsā</i>	30	<i>Avadhi-jñāna</i>	88
<i>Āptaparikṣā</i>	31	<i>Avadhi-jñānāvaraṇīya</i>	191
<i>Apūrvakarāṇa</i>	208, 211	<i>Avagraha</i>	134, 154
<i>Arati</i>	194	<i>Āvalikā</i>	203
Ardhamāgadhī	10	<i>Avasarpinī</i>	203
<i>Ardha-nārāca-saṃhanana</i>	199	<i>Avasthita</i>	146
Ariṣṭanemi	5	<i>Āvaśyaka</i>	23
Aristotle	50	<i>Avāya</i>	134, 154
<i>Artha</i>	58, 176	<i>Avirata samyagdr̥ṣṭi</i>	208, 210
<i>Arūpin</i>	64	<i>Ayogi kevalin</i>	209, 212
<i>Āśādhara</i>	33	<i>Āyus</i>	197
<i>Asātā-vedanīya</i>	192	<b>B</b>	
Ascending period	203	<i>Bandha</i>	75, 77, 108, 202
Aśoka	12	<i>Bandhaśataka</i>	21
<i>Āsrava</i>	75, 77, 108	Being	197

Berkeley	39	<i>Cakṣurdarśana</i>	89
Bhadrabāhu	10, 17, 26	<i>Cakṣurdarśanāvaraṇīya</i>	191
Bhagavatī	19	<i>Cālukya</i>	14
Bhagavati-sutra	137, 167	<i>Cāmuṇḍarāya</i>	31
Bhaktaparijñā	25	<i>Candanā</i>	10
Bhāṣā-rahasya	34	<i>Candragupta</i>	6,12
<i>Bhāṣā-vargaṇā</i>	125	<i>Candrakavedhya</i>	25
Bhāṣya	26	<i>Candraprabhā</i>	9
Bhaṭṭa	141	<i>Candraprajñapti</i>	22
Ḥhaṭṭa	55	<i>Candrarṣi</i>	29
<i>Bhavya</i>	209	<i>Candravedhyaka</i>	25
<i>Bhaya</i>	194	<i>Canon</i>	17
<i>Bheda</i>	120	<i>Cāritra</i>	207
<i>Bhoga-antarāya</i>	201	<i>Cāritra-mohanīya</i>	193
<i>Bhūta</i>	84	<i>Cārvāka</i>	57,95,105,140,167
Bhūtabali	27	<i>Catuḥśaraṇa</i>	25
Bimbisāra	10	<i>Cāturvyāma</i>	4
Binding	198	<i>Causation</i>	187
Bīsapanthī	15	<i>Cause</i>	167,205
Bliss	86	<i>Cellaṇā</i>	10
<i>Bodha</i>	68	<i>Cetanā</i>	85
Body	125, 126, 197	<i>Chedasūtra</i>	24
Bondage	77, 108, 190, 202, 205	<i>Clairvoyance</i>	144
Bosanquet	42	<i>Colour</i>	115, 117, 199
Bradley	41	<i>Complete Judgment</i>	175
<i>Brahman</i>	45	<i>Conclusion</i>	163
Bṛhatkalpa	21, 24	<i>Conduct</i>	207
Buddha	4, 5	<i>Conscious</i>	64
Buddhism	3, 167	<i>Consciousness</i>	60,68,84,85, 86, 95
Buddhist	139, 140, 160, 184	<i>Contributory Part</i>	176
<b>C</b>		<i>Co-ordinate</i>	120
<i>Caitanya</i>	96		

Co-valent	120	Dharmabindu	31
Cūlikā	20	Dharmāmṛta	33
Cūlikāsūtra	25	Dharmasaṅgrahaṇī	31
Cūrṇi	27	<i>Dharmāstikāya</i>	64, 72
		<i>Dhāraṇā</i>	154
		Dhavalā	28
		Dhūrtākhyāna	31
		Difference	62, 184
		Digambara	11, 14
		Dīgha-nikāya	4
		Diṅnāga	31
		Direct	137, 140
		Directness	143
		Direct Perception	143
		Disgust	194
		Disliking	194
		Dissociation	109, 120
		Divisibility	130
		Division	120
		Doubt	155
		Dramila	12
		<i>Dravya</i>	59
		Dravyasaṅgraha	32
		<i>Dravyāstika naya</i>	178, 180
		Dream	112
		Droṇācārya	27
		Dṛṣṭivāda	11, 17, 20
		Duration	190, 203
		Dvādaśāranayacakra	30
		Dvārakā	5
		Dvātrīṃśikā	29, 33
		Dvijavadanacapeṭā	31
<b>D</b>			
<i>Dāna-antarāya</i>	201		
Darkness	131		
<i>Darśana</i>	86, 191		
<i>Darśana-mohanīya</i>	193		
<i>Darśana-upayoga</i>	89		
<i>Darśanāvaraṇīya</i>	191		
Daśāśrutaskandha	21, 24		
Daśavaikālika	21, 23		
Death	125		
Decay	60, 165		
Deceit	193		
Delage	113		
Deluding Karma	193		
Democritus	51		
Determination	155		
<i>Deśavirata</i>	208, 210		
Descartes	50, 111		
Descending period	203		
Destruction	207		
Determinate Perception	155		
Determination	138		
<i>Deva-āyus</i>	197		
Devadharmā-parīkṣā	34		
Devāgamastotra	30		
Devardhigaṇi	17, 18		
Devendrastava	26		
<i>Dharma</i>	207		

<b>E</b>		Formless	64
Earth	117	Freud	113
Effect	167	<b>G</b>	
Electron	115	Gait	199
Electrovalent	120	Gaṇadhara	17
Elephant Cave	13	Gaṅga	14
Empedocles	50	Gaṇavidyā	26
Empirical Perception	152	Gardabhillā	13
Energy	115, 124	Gas	115, 124
Ether	117	Gautama	4, 6
<i>Evambhūta naya</i>	180	Girnar	5
Example	163	God	102, 110, 212
Existence	59, 60, 174, 197	Gommaṭasāra	32
Existence in <i>potentia</i>	202	Gośāla	9
Experience	59	<i>Gotra</i>	201
Extrinsic Validity	139	Greed	193
<b>F</b>		Grossness	130
Fallacy of <i>Evambhūta Naya</i>	183	Gujarat	14
Fallacy of <i>Naigama Naya</i>	182	Guṇadhara	28
Fallacy of <i>Naya</i>	182	Guṇaratna	31
Fallacy of <i>Rjusūtra Naya</i>	183	<i>Guṇasthāna</i>	208
Fallacy of <i>Śabda Naya</i>	183	<i>Guṇi-deśa</i>	176
Fallacy of <i>Samabhirūḍha Naya</i>	183	<i>Gupti</i>	207
Fallacy of <i>Saṅgraha Naya</i>	183	Gurutattvavinirṇaya	34
Fallacy of <i>Vyavahāra Naya</i>	183	<b>H</b>	
Fear	194	Hamilton	52
Feeling-producing Karma	192	Haribhadra	30
Figure	130, 199	Haribhadrasūri	27
Fineness	130	<i>Hāsya</i>	194
Fire	70, 117	Hāthīgumphā	13
Firmness	198	Heat	132
		Hegel	40

Heraclitus	50	<b>J</b>	
Heredity-determining		Jaina	6
Karma	201	Jaina-tarka-bhāṣā	33
Heterogeneous example	163	Jainism	3,58
Hemacandra	6,14,27,32,138, 158	Jambū	10
Hinduism	3	Jambūdvīpaprajñapti	22
<i>Hīyamāna</i>	146	Jayadhavalā	28
Homogeneous example	163	Jinabhadra	26,92
Hoysala	14	Jinadāsagaṇi	27
		Jinasena	28
	<b>I</b>	Jītakalpa	24
Idealism	35	<i>Jīva</i>	63, 68, 80, 125
Identity	62,184	Jīvābhigama	22
<i>Īhā</i>	134,154	Jīvājīvābhigama	22
Illustration	163	<i>Jīvāstikāya</i>	64,68
Immediacy	143	<i>Jīvatva</i>	85
Implication	141	<i>Jñāna</i>	86,96,134,138
Incomplete Judgment	177	Jñānabindu	33
Indescribability	174	Jñānapravāda Pūrva	21
Indirect	137,140	Jñāna-sāra	34
Indrabhūti	6,10	<i>Jñāna-upayoga</i>	88
Inductive Reasoning	157	<i>Jñānāvaraṇīya</i>	190
Indus	13	Jñātādharmakathā	19
Inference	137,141,159	Jñātr	8
Infiniteness	116	Jñātrkhaṇḍa	9
Influx	108	Joking	194
Innumerability	116	Jṛmbhikagrāma	10
Intensity	190, 204	Judgment	165
Intrinsic Validity	139	<i>Jugupsā</i>	194
Intuition	86, 89, 90	Jung	113
Intuition-obscuring Karma	191		

	<b>K</b>	Knowlege	68, 86, 88, 90, 133, 167
<i>Kāla</i>	64,74,175	Knowledge-obscuring Karma	190
<i>Kālakācārya</i>	13	Kośala	10
<i>Kalikālasarvajña</i>	14	Koṣṭhaka	7
<i>Kaliṅga</i>	13	<i>Krodha</i>	193
<i>Kalpāvataṁsikā</i>	22	Kṛṣṇa	5
<i>Kalpikā</i>	22	<i>Kṣapaka śreṇi</i>	214
<i>Kaṅkālī-Tilā</i>	13	<i>Kṣapaṇāsāra</i>	32
<i>Kant</i>	39, 51	<i>Kṣemakīrti</i>	27
<i>Karma</i>	105, 187, 189	<i>Ksīṇa kaṣāya vītarāga</i>	
<i>Kārmaṇa</i>	126	<i>chadmastha</i>	209, 212
<i>Kārmaṇa-vargaṇā</i>	125	<i>Kumāra</i>	28
<i>Karmaprābhṛta</i>	21, 27	<i>Kumārila</i>	141
<i>Karmaprakṛti</i>	21, 29	<i>Kumārapāla</i>	14
<i>Karmaprakṛtiprābhṛta</i>	21	<i>Kuṇḍagrāma</i>	8
<i>Karmapravāda Pūrva</i>	21	<i>Kundakunda</i>	28, 91, 133
<i>Kārttikeya</i>	28	<i>Kuṇḍapura</i>	8
<i>Kārttikeyānuprekṣā</i>	28	<i>Kūṅika</i>	10
<i>Kaṣāya</i>	193		
<i>Kaṣāyaprābhṛta</i>	21, 28	<b>L</b>	
<i>Kāśi</i>	10	<i>Labdhi</i>	153
<i>Keśi</i>	4, 6	<i>Labdhisāra</i>	32
<i>Keśikumāra</i>	134	<i>Lābha-antarāya</i>	201
<i>Kevala</i>	134	<i>Lāḍha</i>	9
<i>Kevala-darśana</i>	90	<i>Laghīyastraya</i>	30
<i>Kevala-darśanāvaraṇīya</i>	192	<i>Language</i>	128
<i>Kevala-jñāna</i>	88,143	<i>Laughing</i>	194
<i>Kevala-jñānāvaraṇīya</i>	191	<i>Lecchaki</i>	10
<i>Khaṇḍagiri</i>	13	<i>Liberation</i>	79,109
<i>Khāravēla</i>	13	<i>Light</i>	132,153
<i>Kīlika-saṁhanana</i>	199	<i>Liking</i>	194



<i>Liṅga</i>	158	Matter	60,65,70,111,114
Liquid	115,124	<i>Māyā</i>	193
<i>Lobha</i>	193	Medium of Motion	65,72
Locke	50	Medium of Rest	65,72
<i>Loka</i>	73	Memory	155,156
<i>Lokākāśa</i>	73	Middle term	158
Lokatattvanimaya	31	Mīmāṃsā	55,167
	<b>M</b>	Mīmāṃsaka	101,142,149,162
Mādhyamika	44	Mind	117,125,153
<i>Mahābhūta</i>	84	<i>Miśradrṣṭi</i>	208,210
Mahānīśītha	24	<i>Miśra-mohanīya</i>	193
Mahāpratyākhyāna	26	<i>Mithyādrṣṭi</i>	208-210
Mahāvīra	3,4,5,8,134	<i>Mithyātva-mohanīya</i>	193
Major term	158	<i>Mohanīya</i>	193
Maladhārī	27	<i>Mokṣa</i>	75,79,109
Malayagiri	27	Molecule	71,119
Mallaki	10	Morton	113
Mallavādin	30	<i>Muhūrta</i>	203
Malliṣeṇa	33	Mūlācāra	28
<i>Māna</i>	193	Mūlasūtra	23
<i>Manahparyāya</i>	91, 134, 144	Mūrtipūjaka	15
<i>Manah-paryāya-jñāna</i>	88		<b>N</b>
<i>Manahparyāya-jñānāvaraṇīya</i>		Nāgārjunasūri	18
	191	<i>Naigama naya</i>	178
Māṇikyanandin	32, 138	Naiyāyika	96,101,105,131,
<i>Mano-vargaṇā</i>	125		133,141,160,162
<i>Manuṣya-āyus</i>	197	Nālandā	9
Mathurā	13, 18	Nāma	197
<i>Mati</i>	91	Nandī	25
<i>Mati-ajñāna</i>	88	<i>Napuṃsaka-veda</i>	195
<i>Mati-jñāna</i>	88	<i>Nārāca-saṃhanana</i>	198
<i>Mati-jñānāvaraṇīya</i>	191	<i>Naraka-āyus</i>	197

Nātaputta	6	<i>No-kaṣāya</i>	194
Nature	190	Non-absolutism	166, 184
Naturalism	52	Non-conscious	64
<i>Naya</i>	177	Non-existence	174
<i>Nayābhāsa</i>	182	Non-perceptual Cognition	155
Nayacakra	30	Numerability	116
Naya-pradīpa	33	Nyāya-khaṇḍa-khādyā	34
Naya-rahasya	34	Nyāyakumudacandra	32
<i>Naya-saptabhaṅgī</i>	177	Nyāyāloka	34
Nayopadeśa	33	Nyāyapraveśa	31
Negation	141, 184	Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika	56, 95, 167, 184
Nemicandra	31		
Neminātha	5	Nyāyāvatāra	29
Neo-Realism	52	Nyāyaviniścaya	30
Nepal	11, 17		
<i>Nīcairgotra</i>	201	<b>O</b>	
<i>Nidrā</i>	192	Object	153, 165
<i>Nidrānidrā</i>	192	Odour	199
Nigaṅṭha	6	Oghaniryukti	23
Nigaṅṭha Nātaputta	3	Omniscience	93, 143, 148
Nihilism	44	Omniscient	90
Nilagiri	13	Order	10
<i>Nirākāra-upayoga</i>	87	Origination	60, 165
Nirayāvalikā	22		
Nirgrantha	4	<b>P</b>	
<i>Nirjarā</i>	75, 78, 109	<i>Padārtha</i>	58
Niryukti	26	Pain	125, 192
Niśītha	21, 24	<i>Pakṣa</i>	162
<i>Nivṛtti bādara samparāya</i>	208, 211	<i>Palyopama</i>	203
Niyamasāra	28	Pañcakalpa	24
Noise	128	Pañcaprakaraṇa	31
		Pañcasangraha	21, 29
		Pañcāstikāyasāra	28

<i>Pañcayāma</i>	4	Pragmatism	51
<i>Pāpa</i>	75,76,108	Prajñāpanā	22
<i>Pāpā</i>	10	Prakīrṇaka	25
Paralokasiddhi	31	<i>Prakṛti</i>	55, 99, 190
<i>Paramāṇu</i>	118	<i>Pramāṇa</i>	138
Parasnath Hills	4	Pramāṇamīmāṃsā	33, 138
Parikarma	20	Pramāṇaparīkṣā	31
Parīkṣāmukha	32	Pramāṇa-rahasya	34
<i>Parīśahajaya</i>	207	Pramāṇasaṅgraha	30
<i>Parokṣa</i>	135	<i>Pramāṇa-saptabhaṅgī</i>	177
<i>Pārśva</i>	3,4,6	<i>Pramatta-samyata</i>	208, 210
<i>Pārśvanātha</i>	134	Prameyakamalamārtaṇḍa	32
<i>Paryāyāstika naya</i>	178,180	Praśnavyākaraṇa	19
Passion	193	Prathamānuyoga	20
<i>Pāṭaliputra</i>	17	<i>Pratijñā</i>	162
Patna	17	Pratyākhyāna Pūrva	21
Patraparīkṣā	31	<i>Pratyakṣa</i>	135,137,140,143
<i>Pāvā</i>	6	<i>Pratyeka-prakṛti</i>	199
<i>Pāvāpurī</i>	10	Pravacanasāra	28
Perception	137, 140, 141, 143	Prāyaścitta	30
Permanence	60, 165	Premature realisation	202
Physique-making karma	197	Prevention	207
<i>Piṇḍaniryukti</i>	23	Preyodveṣaprābhṛta	21
<i>Piṇḍa-prakṛti</i>	197	Pride	193
Plato	38, 50	Probans	159, 160
Pleasure	125 192	Probandum	159
Power	86	Proton	115
Prabhācandra	32	<i>Prthvikāya</i>	70
Prābhākara	55, 141	<i>Pudgala</i>	63,70,114
<i>Pracalāpracalā</i>	192	<i>Pudgalāstikāya</i>	64, 70
<i>Pradeśa</i>	65, 190	Pūjyapāda	91
Pradyota	10	<i>Puṇya</i>	75, 76, 108

<i>Puruṣa</i>	55, 98	Relativity	184
<i>Puruṣa-veda</i>	194	Residence of Substance	176
Pūrva	11, 20	Respiration	125
Pūrvagata	20	Retention	155
Puṣpacūlikā	23	Rivers	113
Puṣpadanta	27	<i>Rjumati</i>	147
Puṣpikā	22	Rjupālikā	10
		<i>Rjusūtra naya</i>	179
		<i>Rṣabha</i>	5
		<i>Rṣabha-nārāca-samhanana</i>	198
		<i>Rūpin</i>	64
Q			
Quality	175		
Quantity	190, 204		
Quasi-passion	194		
R			
Radhakrishnan	63	<i>Śabda</i>	176
Raivata	5	<i>Śabda naya</i>	179
Rājagṛha	9	<i>Sacelaka</i>	8, 14
Rājaprasnīya	22	Ṣaddarśanasamuccaya	31
Rājīmatī	5	<i>Sādhana</i>	159
Rāmānuja	56, 103	<i>Sādhya</i>	158, 159
<i>Rasa</i>	190	<i>Sāgaropama</i>	203
Rāṣtrakūṭa	14	<i>Sakalādeśa</i>	175
<i>Rati</i>	194	Śaka	13
Ratnakaraṇḍaka-śrāvākācāra	30	<i>Sākāra-upayoga</i>	87
Realisation	202	Śāla	10
Realism	47	<i>Samabhirūḍha naya</i>	179
Reality	35, 58, 165	Sāmaññaphala-sutta	4
Reason	162	Samantabhadra	29
Reasoning	157	Samarādityakathā	31
Recognition	157	Samavāyāṅga	19
Recollection	156	<i>Samaya</i>	74, 203
Reflection	207	Samayasāra	28
Relation	176	<i>Samandha</i>	176
		<i>Samhanuna</i>	198
S			

<i>Samiti</i>	207	Śataka	21
<i>Sammeta</i>	4	<i>Sātā-vedanīya</i>	192
<i>Samprati</i>	12	<i>Sattā</i>	202
<i>Saṃsarga</i>	176	Satyapavāda Pūrva	21
<i>Saṃśaya</i>	155	Satyaśāsanaparīkṣā	31
<i>Samstāraka</i>	25	Sauryapura	5
<i>Samsthāna</i>	199	Sautrāntika	57
<i>Samudravijaya</i>	5	<i>Sayogi kevalin</i>	209, 212
<i>Samvara</i>	75,78,109	Scriptural Knowledge	164
<i>Samavāya</i>	96	Sensation	154
<i>Samyak-mithyātva-mohanīya</i>		Sense	153
	193	<i>Sevārta-saṃhanana</i>	199
<i>Samyaktva-mohanīya</i>	193	Seven-fold Judgment	170
<i>Saṅgha</i>	10	Shade	131
<i>Saṅghadāsagaṇi</i>	26	Shadow	131
<i>Saṅghāta</i>	120	Siddharāja Jayasirṃha	14
<i>Saṅghātana</i>	198	Siddhārtha	8
<i>Saṅgraha naya</i>	178	Siddhārthapura	9
<i>Saṅjvalana</i>	194	Siddhasena	29, 93
Śāṅkara	45	<i>Siddha-silā</i>	212
Śāṅkha	10	Siddhiviniścaya	30
Sāṅkhya	55,98,101,140, 162, 167	Śīlāṅkasūri	27
		Simhasūri	30
<i>Sanmatitarka</i>	29	Śivaśarmasūri	29
Śāntiācārya	27	<i>Skandha</i>	71, 115, 119
<i>Saptatikā</i>	21	Skandila	18
Sarasvatī	13	Sleep	192
<i>Sarvajñasiddhi</i>	31	Smell	114, 117
Śāstravārtāsamuccaya	31	<i>Smṛti</i>	156
<i>Sāsvādana-samyagdr̥ṣṭi</i>	208, 209	Ṣoḍaśaka	31
		Śoka	194
<i>Sat</i>	58	Solid	115, 124

Somnambulism	192	Substance	59, 63, 64
Sorrow	194	Sūstratum	176
Soul	69,80,95,117,125, 133,167,188	Sudharman	10
Sound	127	Suhastin	12
Space	65, 73, 117	Sūkṣma samparāya	208, 211
Speculation	154	Sulasā	10
Speech	125, 128	Śūnya	44
Spiritual Development	207	Sūryaprajñapti	22
Śramaṇa	8	Sūtra	20
Śravaṇa Belgolā	12	Sūtrakṛtāṅga	19
Śrāvastī	6	Svabhāva-darsana	89
Śreṇika	10	Svabhāva-jñāna	88
Śrīpura-Pārśvanātha-stotra	31	Svayambhūstotra	30
Śruta	91, 134	Śvetāmbara	11, 14
Śruta-ajñāna	88, 164	Syādvāda	168
Śruta-jñānāvaraṇīya	191	Syādvādamañjarī	33
Śrutakevalin	11, 20	Syllogism	161
Sthānakavāsī	15	Śyāmāka	10
Sthānāṅga	19	Synthesis	173
Sthānāṅga-sūtra	138		
Sthāvara	69	<b>T</b>	
Sthāvara-daśaka	17	Taijasa	126
Sthavira	200	Tandulavaicārika	25
Sthiti	190	Tāraṇapanthī	15
Sthūlabhadra	10,17	Tarka	158
Strī-veda	194	Taste	114,117,199
Stūpa	13	Tattva	58
Styānagrddhi	192	Tattvārtha	29,58
Styānarddhi	192	Tattvārthādhigama	29
Śubhrabhūmi	9	Tattvārtharājavārttika	30
Subjective Inference	159	Tattvārthaślokovārttika	31
		Tattvārtha-sūtra	136,138
		Tejaskāya	70

<i>Tejo-varganā</i>	125	Universe	58, 73
Telepathy	146	<i>Upabhoga-antarāya</i>	201
Terahapanthī	15	Upadeśa-rahasya	34
Terāpanthī	15	<i>Upakāra</i>	176
Thales	50	<i>Upamāna</i>	137
Thesis	162, 173	Upāṅga	21
Time	65,74,117,175,203	Upāsakadaśā	19
Tinduka	6	<i>Upāsama śreṇi</i>	213
<i>Tirtha</i>	10	<i>Upāsānta kaṣāya vītarāga</i>	
<i>Tīrthankara</i>	10	<i>chadmastha</i>	209, 211
<i>Tiryag-āyus</i>	197	<i>Upayoga</i>	68, 153
Touch	114,111,199	<i>Utsarpiṇī</i>	203
Transcendental knowledge	144	Uttarādhyayana	23
Transcendental perception	164	Uttarādhyayana-sūtra	4,6
<i>Trasa</i>	69	<b>V</b>	
<i>Trasa-daśaka</i>	200	Vādideva	138
Trilokasāra	32	Vaibhāṣika	57
Triśalā	8	<i>Vaikriya</i>	126
<b>U</b>		Vaiśālī	8
<i>Uccairgotra</i>	201	Vaiśeṣika	96,101,105,117,
<i>Udaya</i>	202		127,131,133,141
Udayagiri	13	Vajrabhūmi	9
Udāyana	10	<i>Vajra-rṣabha-nārāca-saṁhanana</i>	
<i>Udīranā</i>	202		198
Ugrasena	5	Valabhī	18
<i>Ūha</i>	158	Validity	139
Ujjain	12, 13	Vāmā	4
Umāsvāmin	29	<i>Vanaspatikāya</i>	70
Umāsvāti	29, 91, 136, 138	Varanasi	4
Union	120, 122, 129	Vardhamāna	7,8,146
Universal concomitance	157,	Vaṭṭakera	28
	158	<i>Vāyukāya</i>	70

<i>Vedanīya</i>	192	Vītarāgastotra	32
Vedānta	167	Vṛṣṇi	23
Vedāntin	103	Vṛṣṇidaśā	23
Vegetable	70	Vṛtti	27
Verbal testimony	164	Vyākhyāprajñapti	19
<i>Vibhaṅga-jñāna</i>	88	<i>Vyāpaka</i>	158
<i>Vibhāva-darśana</i>	89	<i>Vyāpya</i>	158
<i>Vibhāva-jñāna</i>	88	Vyavahāra	21, 24
Vidyānanda	31	<i>Vyavahāra naya</i>	179
Vidyānandamahodaya	31	<b>W</b>	
Vidyānandī	91	Water	70, 117
Vidyānandin	31	Word	164, 176
<i>Vikalādeśa</i>	175	<b>Y</b>	
Vikramāditya	13	Yaśovijaya	33
Vipākaśruta	20	Yoga	109, 167
<i>Vipulamati</i>	147	Yogabindu	31
Vīrasena	28	Yogācāra	44
Vīrastava	26	Yogadr̥ṣṭisamuccaya	31
Virtue	208	Yogaśāstra	33
<i>Vīrya</i>	201	Yogaśataka	31
<i>Vīrya-antarāya</i>	201	Yogaviṃśikā	31
Viśeṣaṇa-vati	92	Yuktyanuśāsana	30
Viśeṣāvaśyaka-bhāṣya	92	Yuktyanuśāsanāṅkāra	31







# **JAINA TECHNICAL TERMS**

**Dr. Mohan Lal Mehta**



## JAINA TECHNICAL TERMS

A

**Akarmabhūmi** A region of inaction, a land of enjoyment.

**Akarmabhūmija** A person born in a land of inaction.

**Akarmavīrya** Power coupled with wisdom.

**Akalevara** A liberated soul.

**Akalpasthita** An ascetic having no restrictions of scriptural rules.

**Akalpika** Improper, forbidden.

**Akalpya** Improper for an ascetic, unacceptable.

**Akāmamarāṇa** Involuntary or unwise death.

**Akāmanirjarā** To destroy karmas by endurance of hunger etc. involuntarily.

**Akāya** A liberated soul.

**Akāyika** An emancipated soul.

**Akiñcana** One having no possession.

**Akṛta** Not specially prepared for ascetics.

**Akṛtāgama** Experiencing the fruits of sin etc. without committing them.

**Akriyātman** A philosopher

holding that the soul is not active.

**Akriyāvādin** One who does not believe in the efficacy of action.

**Akṣaṇa** Non-injury.

**Akṣaṇayoga** Activity involving no injury.

**Akṣanikura** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Akṣanikurāṅgas**.

**Akṣanikurāṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Nalinas**.

**Akṣaraśruta** A kind of scriptural knowledge arising from articulate utterance.

**Akṣiṇaparibhogin** One who takes food having life.

**Akṣiṇamahānasika** A person with such a spiritual attainment that thousands of people can be fed from a small quantity of food.

**Akhedajña** Unsympathetic towards the sufferings of others.

**Agamika** A scripture having dissimilar passages.

**Agārin** A householder.

**Agitārtha** Ignorant of scriptures.

**Agupta** Not free from sin arising from mind, speech and body.

**Agurulaghu** Anything neither heavy nor light; a variety of body-making karma by the rise of which the soul acquires a body which is neither heavy nor light.

**Agnikāya** Fire-bodied souls.

**Agnija** A disease by which all the food one takes is burnt away without appeasing hunger.

**Agrantha** An ascetic having no possession.

**Agrapinda** A portion of food set apart for mendicants etc.

**Aghātikarman** A kind of karma which does not obstruct the qualities of soul.

**Aṅkuśa** A fault of obeisance.

**Aṅga** A basic canonical text.

**Aṅgapraviṣṭa** Canonical texts included in the **Aṅga** group.

**Aṅgabāhya** Canonical texts excluding the **Aṅga** works.

**Aṅgavidyā** A science predicting events from the throbbing etc. of limbs.

**Aṅgāra** A fault incurred by

an ascetic by praising the deliciousness of food.

**Aṅgārakarman** Livelihood from charcoal.

**Aṅgula** A measure equal to the twelfth part of a span.

**Aṅgulaprthaktva** A measure from two to nine **Aṅgulas**.

**Aṅgopāṅga** A species of body-making karma by the rise of which are produced limbs and sub-limbs.

**Acakṣurdarśana** : Apprehension by the mind as well as the sense-organs other than the eye.

**Acakṣurdarśanāvaraṇa** A kind of apprehension-obscuring karma by the rise of which one cannot have apprehension derived through the mind as well as the sense-organs other than the eye.

**Acara** Immobile beings.

**Acitta** An inanimate thing.

**Acittāhāra** Food without life.

**Acetana** Lifeless, inanimate, insentient.

**Acela** Same as **Acelaka**.

**Acelaka** one wearing no garments.

**Acaurya** Non-stealing, non-theft.

**Acchanda** Dependent on others.

**Acchavi** An ascetic who stops the activities of body.

**Ajara** A liberated soul.

**Ajarāmara** A liberated soul which is free from decay and death.

**Ajīva** An inanimate or insentient substance, a non-soul.

**Ajīvakāya** Inanimate or insentient extensive substance, an extensive non-soul.

**Ajñātapiṇḍa** Alms from an unknown family.

**Ajñātaiṣin** An ascetic begging alms etc. from families ignorant of his scholarship etc.

**Ajñāna** Ignorance; wrong knowledge.

**Ajñānavādin** One who does not believe in the efficacy of knowledge, a philosopher establishing the superiority of ignorance.

**Ajñānin**, Ignorant; devoid of right knowledge, professing the doctrine of nescience.

**Aṭaṭa** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Aṭaṭāṅgas**.

**Aṭaṭāṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Truṭitas**.

**Aṇu** Little, small; an atom.

**Aṇuvrata** A small vow, a partial vow.

**Aṇuvratin** A lay-votary who observes small vows.

**Aṇḍaja** The creature born out of an egg.

**Atathājñāna** Possessed of false knowledge.

**Atara** A period equal to a **Sāgaropama**.

**Atikrama** An inclination to violate a vow.

**Aticāra** Transgression, violation of a vow.

**Atithi** A guest, an ascetic whose date of arrival is not fixed.

**Atithipūjā** Hospitality.

**Atithisamvibhāga** Sharing with the guest or ascetic.

**Atipāta** Destruction, injury, killing, violence.

**Atiprasaṅga** Unwarranted extension.

**Atibhārāropana** Loading excessive burden.

**Atisāya** A supernatural power or thing.

**Atiśeṣa** An extraordinary occurrence.

**Atīndriya** Super-sensuous.

**Atīrtha** The time preceding the establishment or succeeding the break-down of a religious order.

**Atyakṣara** Speaking more words than are actually contained in a text.

**Atyarthatva** Power of uttering words bearing profound meaning.

**Athākhyāta** Perfect conduct, pure conduct, passionless conduct, faultless conduct.

**Adaṇḍa** Absence of sins like killing etc., sinless activities of mind, speech and body.

**Adattahara** A thief, one who takes away without being given.

**Adattādāna** Taking anything which is not given, stealing, theft.

**Adattādānaviramaṇa** Abstinence from taking things not given, non-stealing.

**Adrṣṭa** Karmas of the past life.

**Addhā** Time.

**Addhākāla** Time marked by the motion of the sun.

**Addhāpalyopama** The time

required to empty a pit which is one *Yojana* in length, breadth as well as depth and is filled with the finest points of hair and from which after every hundred years one point of hair is taken out.

**Addhāsamaya** The smallest, i.e. indivisible part of time; a substance which is the auxiliary cause of change.

**Addhāsāgaropama** A period consisting of ten *Koṭākoṭi* **Addhāpalyopamas**.

**Adharma** Medium of rest.

**Adharmāstikāya** An extensive substance in the form of medium of rest.

**Adhikaraṇa** Quarrel, implements of injury, killing etc.

**Adholoka** Lower world, infernal world.

**Adhyayana** A chapter of a scripture; study; a meaningful word.

**Adhyavapūraka** A sin incurred by increasing the quantity of food prepared for self in order to oblige an ascetic in the middle of the cooking process.

**Adhyavasāna** Mental state, thought-activity.

**Adhyavasāya** Mental modification, thought-condition.

**Anakṣaraśruta** A kind of scriptural knowledge arising from inarticulate utterance.

**Anagāra** A homeless ascetic.

**Anagāradharma** Duties of an ascetic.

**Anagāravādin** A hypocritical ascetic.

**Anagārita** Asceticism.

**Anagna** A wish-fulfilling tree supplying garments.

**Anaṅga** Parts of the body other than the sexual organ; an artificial means of sexual intercourse; canonical texts other than the **Aṅgas**.

**Anaṅgakriḍā** Unnatural sexual act.

**Anaṅgapraviṣṭa** Canonical texts not included in the **Aṅgas**.

**Anaṅgāra** Free from the fault of **Aṅgāra**.

**Anadhigata** Not conversant with scriptures.

**Anadhyavasāya** Inattention.

**Ananugāmin** A kind of clairvoyance that does not accompany the person when he leaves a particular place.

**Ananta** Infinite, unlimited, endless.

**Anantaka** Endless, infinite.

**Anantakāya** Vegetables containing infinite lives.

**Anantaguṇa** Infinitely multiplied.

**Anantajīva** Vegetables with infinite lives.

**Anantabhāga** Infinitesimal part.

**Anantara** Without intervening space or time.

**Anantarāgama** Scriptures directly heard by the **Gaṇadharas** from a **Tīrthaṅkara**.

**Anantavarga** Infinite multiplied by infinite.

**Anantahita** Salvation.

**Anantānanta** Infinite multiplied by infinite.

**Anantānubandhin** A group of passions which leads to endless worldly life.

**Anapavartyāyuṣ** One whose life-term cannot be reduced.

**Anarthadaṇḍa** Purposeless sin.

**Anarthadaṇḍaviraṃaṇa** Abstinence from purposeless sin.

**Anarpitanaya** A standpoint having generality for its



consideration.

**Anavadagra** Endless, infinite.

**Anavadya** Sinless.

**Anavama** Free from fault, perfect.

**Anavasthā** Infinite regress.

**Anavasthāpya** Temporary expulsion.

**Anavasthita** Unsteady.

**Anaśana** Fasting, giving up food and water for some time or for ever.

**Anākāropayoga** Indeterminate knowledge.

**Anākuṭṭi** Non-injury or non-killing.

**Anācāra** Discarding a vow; lack of right conduct, i.e., misconduct.

**Anācīrṇa** Unworthy of being practised by an ascetic.

**Anātmavādin** One who does not believe in the existence of soul.

**Anādinidhana** Having neither beginning nor end, eternal.

**Anādeyanāman** A variety of body-making karma by the rise of which a person possesses unsuggestive speech.

**Anāpāta** A place

unfrequented by human beings.

**Anābhoga** Ignorance; forgetfulness.

**Anābhogapratiśevanā** Incurring a sin unknowingly.

**Anāyatana** A place unworthy of an ascetic to live in.

**Anārambha** Giving no pain to living beings, freedom from sinful actions.

**Anārambhajīvin** An ascetic who is free from all sinful actions.

**Anārya** Barbarous, uncivilized, cruel, uncultured, sinful.

**Anāloka** Ignorance or wrong knowledge.

**Anālocita** one who has confessed his faults.

**Anāvila** Free from passions.

**Anāhāraka** A soul living without food.

**Anāhūta** An ascetic who goes to take food uninvited.

**Aniketa** A homeless ascetic.

**Anigraha** One who has not restrained his senses.

**Anitthamīstha** One in an extraordinary or unusual condition of existence.

**Anitya** Impermanent, transitory, transient.

- Anidāna** Observing penance etc. without worldly desires.
- Anidānabhūta** Devoid of sinful conduct.
- Anindriya** An emancipated soul as well as an omniscient person who is free from sensory perception; mind.
- Aniyatacārin** An ascetic with unrestricted movements.
- Anirhārima** Observing **Samlekhanā** in a place where there would be no one to cremate the dead body.
- Anivṛttikaraṇa** A process which leads the soul to the verge of the dawn of the first enlightenment.
- Anivṛttibādarasamparāya** A stage of spiritual development in which gross passions can also attack.
- Aniśrita** Not needing help from any quarter; free from attachment etc.
- Aniśritopadhāna** Penance observed without the help of others or without worldly desires.
- Aniśṛṣṭa** A sin incurred by giving food etc. to an ascetic without the permission of all the partners.
- Anukampā** Compassion, mercy, pity.
- Anugāmin** A variety of clairvoyance that accompanies the person from place to place.
- Anutkaṣāyin** One with scanty passions.
- Anuttara** The best, the highest.
- Anuttaragati** Emancipation, salvation.
- Anuttarajñāna** Omniscience.
- Anudghātika** Severe expiation, unmitigated severity of expiation.
- Anupayukta** Careless, negligent, inattentive.
- Anuparata** Not free from sinful activity.
- Anupasthāna** Temporary expulsion.
- Anupasthāpana** Same as **Anupasthāna**.
- Anuprekṣā** Reflection, contemplation.
- Anubhāga** Intensity of karmic fruition.
- Anubhāgabandha** Bondage of the intensity of karmic fruition.
- Anubhāva** Same as **Anubhāga**.
- Anumāna** Inference.

- Anumānanirākṛta** Refuted by inference.
- Anumodanā** Approval, support.
- Anuyoga** Exposition, explanation.
- Anuśāsana** Instruction, exhortation; punishment, admonition.
- Anuśāsti** Exhortation, instruction.
- Anuśiṣṭi** Same as *Anuśāsti*.
- Anuśreni** Following a straight line in space.
- Anuṣṭhāna** Practice, conduct.
- Anṛta** Falsehood.
- Anekavādin** A philosopher who does not recognise identity in things from any point of view but maintains absolute difference among them.
- Anekānta** non-absolute, having many properties, relative.
- Anekāntavāda** Non-absoluteism, relativism.
- Aneṣaṇā** Lack of carefulness in searching for food etc.
- Aneṣaṇīya** Not fit to be accepted by an ascetic.
- Anaikāntikahetu** Doubtful probans.
- Antakula** A low family.
- Antakṛta** One who has attained liberation.
- Antacārin** An ascetic who has taken a vow to beg remnants of food taken by householders.
- Antapāla** One who guards the boundaries of a country.
- Antarātman** Interior self.
- Antarāya** An obstruction; power-obstructing karma.
- Antarāla** Intermediate space etc.
- Antardvīpa** An intermediate island.
- Antardvīpaka** A person living in an intermediate island.
- Antarmukha** Introvert.
- Antarmuhūrta** A measure of time shorter than forty-eight minutes.
- Antarvyāpti** Internal concomitance.
- Andhakavahni** Subtle fire.
- Andharūpa** One having a body devoid of limbs.
- Annapuṇya** A virtue acquired by giving food out of compassion.
- Anyatīrthika** A person belonging to another order.

- Anyatva** Distinctness, differentiation.
- Anyathānupapatti** One's impossibility in the absence of the other.
- Anyadṛṣṭi** One holding an alien view.
- Anyayūthika** One belonging to a different creed.
- Anvaya** Concomitance in agreement.
- Apagataveda** Having no sexual desire.
- Apada** A liberated soul.
- Apanayana** Act of forbidding or prohibiting.
- Aparasāṅgraha** The non-ultimate generic view-point.
- Aparādha** Fault, sin, offence, violation.
- Aparigrhītāgamana** To enjoy a woman who is not one's own wife.
- Aparigraha** Possessionlessness, non-possessiveness, non-possession.
- Aparicāra** Free from sexual intercourse.
- Apariṇata** A fault of the ascetic caused by accepting food not rendered perfectly free from life.
- Aparihārika** A tainted ascetic.
- Aparyavasita** Endless, infinite.
- Aparyāptaka** Undeveloped living being.
- Aparyāptanāman** A kind of body-making karma by the rise of which the living being gets an undeveloped body.
- Apavartanā** Lessening the duration and intensity of karma.
- Apavartyāyuṣ** One whose life-term can be reduced.
- Apāścimamāraṇāntikasārilekhanā** The last penance practised at the approach of death consisting in giving up passions and abandoning food and water.
- Apasiddhānta** A false doctrine.
- Apāya** Sin arising from attachment etc.; perception, determinate cognition.
- Apārdha** Half.
- Apunarāgama** That state from which there is no return to the world, liberation.
- Apunarāvartaka** One who does not return to the world, freed from the cycle of birth and death.
- Apunarāvṛtti** Salvation,

emancipation.

**Apunarbhava** Freedom from rebirth.

**Apunaścyava** Absence of any further death.

**Apuruṣākāraparākrama** Absence of manly exploits.

**Apūrvakaraṇa** A spiritual attainment not experienced before, a stage of spiritual development attained for the first time.

**Aprṣṭalābhika** An ascetic accepting only those alms which are not preceded by the question "What may I give you?"

**Aprṣṭavyākaraṇa** Explaining something which is not asked.

**Apekṣā** Standpoint, viewpoint, relativity.

**Apoha** Exclusion.

**Apkāya** A water-bodied soul.

**Aprakāśa** Being blinded with pride etc. ✱

**Apratipātin** Infallible, permanent.

**Apratibaddha** Unobstructed; free from attachment.

**Apratiṣṭhāna** Liberation, salvation.

**Apratihata** Unimpaired;

**Apratyākhyānāvaraṇa** A group of passions hindering partial renunciation.

**Aprathama** Beginningless; second, third etc.

**Apradeśa** Indivisible.

**Apramatta** Careful.

**Apramattasamyata** An ascetic free from negligence etc.

**Apramāṇa** A fault incurred by an ascetic by eating beyond the fixed limit.

**Apramāṇabhōjin** An ascetic eating more than thirty-two morsels of food.

**Apramāda** Carefulness, lack of negligence.

**Apralīna** Free from sexual enjoyment.

**Apraśasta** Evil, wicked.

**Aprāptakārin** Same as **Aprāpyakārin**.

**Aprāpyakārin** A sense-organ cognising its object without coming into direct contact with it.

**Aprārthitaprārthaka** One desiring death.

**Aprāvṛta** Nude, not covered, open.

**Aprāsuka** Containing life, living.

**Abuddhika** One who believes that karma does not bind the soul but only touches it.

**Abandha** Absence of karmic bondage.

**Abandhaka** One not incurring the bondage of karmas.

**Abādḥā** Endurance of karmas without effect.

**Abādḥākāla** Period of karmic non-fruition.

**Abuddha** Devoid of right knowledge.

**Abodhi** Ignorance of the truth.

**Abrahmacarya** Non-observance of celibacy, sexual enjoyment.

**Abrahman** Absence of chastity, coition.

**Abhakta** A fast.

**Abhavastha** An emancipated soul.

**Abhavya** Incapable of salvation.

**Abhāva** Wicked thought; non-existence.

**Abhāṣā** False or half-false speech.

**Abhigama** Acquisition of

knowledge.

**Abhigraha** Self-imposed restriction in the matter of food etc., obstinately persisting in one's own belief.

**Abhinibodha** Sensory perception in general and deduction in particular.

**Abhiniveśa** Perversion, obstinacy in the wrong.

**Abhiniṣadyā** A place of study.

**Abhinna** Whole, entire, unbroken, identical, not different, same, not separate.

**Abhibhūyajñānin** An omniscient person.

**Abhivacana** A synonym.

**Abhisamāgama** An authentic cognition.

**Abhiḥṛta** A fault incurred by the ascetic by accepting food brought to his place.

**Abhīkṣṇa** Frequent, constant.

**Abhūta** Non-existent, unreal.

**Abheda** Identity, sameness.

**Abhyantaratapasa** Internal austerity, mental penance.

**Abhyākhyāna** False accusation.

**Amanaska** A soul not in possession of mind.

- Amama** Free from attachment.
- Amara** A god, a liberated soul.
- Amarabhavana** An abode of gods, heaven.
- Amarendra** A king of gods.
- Amita** Unlimited, infinite.
- Amitajñānin** Omniscient.
- Amukta** Not liberated from karmic bondage, mundane.
- Amūḍha** Free from delusion, one who knows the truth.
- Amūḍhadṛṣṭi** One possessing undeluded view, knowing the real nature of things.
- Amūrcchita** Free from attachment.
- Amūrta** Formless, i.e. devoid of touch, taste, smell and colour.
- Amṛta** An emancipated soul which is not subject to death; nectar.
- Amṛṣā** True, not false.
- Ayamśandhi** Punctual in the performance of duties.
- Ayata** Careless; a person having right belief but not having renunciation.
- Ayatana** Carelessness.
- Ayati** Non-renunciation.
- Ayana** A period of six months.
- Ayaśahkīrtināman** A variety of body-making karma by whose rise a person is subjected to dishonour and shame.
- Ayuta** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Ayutāṅgas**.
- Ayutāṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Akṣanikuras**.
- Ayoga** Absence of the activities of body, speech and mind.
- Ayogikevalin** An omniscient who is free from all activities of mind, speech and body.
- Ayogin** Free from the activities of mind, speech and body.
- Ayonika** An emancipated soul.
- Arajas** An emancipated soul which is free from karmic dust.
- Arata** Free from attachment.
- Arati** Disliking.
- Aratimohanīya** A kind of deluding karma the rise of which produces disliking.
- Arahas** The omniscient to whom nothing can be a secret.
- Arāga** Free from attachment.
- Aruha** A liberated soul which is free from birth.
- Arūpakāya** A formless

extensive substance.

**Arūpin** Formless, i.e., without touch, taste, smell and colour.

**Artha** Substance; object; purpose; meaning; wealth.

**Arthadaṇḍa** Committing violence for some useful purpose.

**Arthanaya** A viewpoint relating to an object.

**Arthādhikāra** The subject of a chapter etc.

**Arthāpatti** Implication.

**Arthāvagraha** Object-awareness.

**Ardhacakrin** A *Vāsudeva*.

**Ardhanārācasamhanana** A joining of the body in which two bones are hooked into each other on one side, while on the other the bones are simply pressed together and nailed.

**Arpitanaya** A stand-point having particularity for its consideration.

**Arhat** One worthy of reverence, the omniscient.

**Alābha** Non-acquisition of food etc.

**Alūṣaka** One not violating the vows of asceticism.

**Aleśya** A soul free from thought-tint.

**Aloka** Non-universe, beyond the world.

**Alokākāśa** Space beyond the universe, non-cosmic space.

**Alpabahutva** Relative numerical strength.

**Avaktavya** Inexpressible, indescribable.

**Avagama** Determination.

**Avagāha** Occupying space; providing accommodation.

**Avagāhanā** The measure of space occupied by a body etc., the height of a body etc.

**Avagraha** Sensation; shelter.

**Avadya** Sin.

**Avadyakara** sinful.

**Avadyavirati** Cessation of sin.

**Avadhāraṇa** Determination, decision.

**Avadhāriṇī** Decisive, assertive.

**Avadhijñāna** Limited direct knowledge, clairvoyance.

**Avadhijñānāvaraṇīya** A kind of karma obscuring **Avadhijñāna**.

**Avadhidarśana** Limited direct apprehension, apprehensive



clairvoyance.

**Avadhidarśanāvaraṇīya** A kind of karma obscuring **Avadhidarśana**.

**Avabodha** Recollection.

**Avamaudarya** Reduced diet.

**Avanṇavāda** Blasphemy.

**Avalambanatā** Grasping.

**Avava** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Avavāṅgas**.

**Avavāṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Aṭaṭas**.

**Avaśa** Dependent.

**Avasarpiṇī** Descending aeon in which happiness etc. gradually decrease.

**Avasthāna** Steadiness; retention.

**Avasthita** Steady.

**Avācanīya** Unfit to be taught.

**Avācyā** Inexpressible.

**Avāya** Perception, determination.

**Avikampa** Firm, steady.

**Avikalpa** Absence of misgiving.

**Avikṛṣṭa** Not practising the austerity of more than three fasts.

**Avigraha** Uncurved, straight-forward.

**Avigrahagati** Straightforward motion.

**Avicāra** Devoid of transition; motionless; inconsistent.

**Avicyuti** Absence of lapse, retention.

**Avitatha** True, correct.

**Avidyā** False knowledge; ignorance.

**Aviratasamyagdr̥ṣṭi** A soul with vowless right belief.

**Avirati** Non-abstinence from sin, non-cessation of sinful activity.

**Avirādhanā** No violation, complete observance.

**Avirādhitasaṃyama** An ascetic fully observing the rules of right conduct.

**Avisaṃvāda** Consistency.

**Avihimsā** Absence of different kinds of violence.

**Aveda** A person free from sexual desire.

**Avedana** A soul free from sense-feeling, an emancipated soul.

**Avyakta** Indistinct, indefinite.

**Avyaya** Indestructible.

- Avyavasita** Indecisive, indeterminate.
- Avyāghāta** Absence of obstruction.
- Avyābādha** Free from troubles.
- Avyāmoha** Absence of delusion.
- Avyucchittinaya** The standpoint of substance, the viewpoint of identity.
- Aśana** Food.
- Aśanapāna** Food and water.
- Aśaraṇa** Helpless.
- Aśarīrin** An emancipated soul.
- Aśastra** Sinless conduct, asceticism.
- Aśastrapariṇata** A sentient thing not deprived of life by fire etc.
- Aśuci** Impurity, filth.
- Aśubha** Inauspicious, evil, bad, sinful.
- Aśubhanāman** Inauspicious body-making karma.
- Aśrutaniśrita** Knowledge not backed by scriptural learning but derived from spontaneous thought.
- Aśloka** Dishonour, ill-fame.
- Aṣṭamabhakta** Fast for three days.
- Asaṃyata** Devoid of right conduct.
- Asaṃyama** Sinful conduct.
- Asaṃvara** Influx of karma.
- Asaṃvibhāgin** Selfish, not sharing with others.
- Asaṃvṛta** Indulged in sinful activity.
- Asamsakta** Unattached, unconnected.
- Asaṃsāra** Salvation.
- Asaṃsārasamāpanna** A liberated soul.
- Asaṃstuta** Irrelevant, inconsistent.
- Asakta** Free from attachment.
- Asaṅkleśa** Purity of thought.
- Asaṅkhya** Innumerable.
- Asaṅkhyeya** Same as **Asaṅkhya**.
- Asaṅkhyeyaguṇa** Multiplied innumerable times.
- Asaṅga** A soul free from attachment.
- Asañjñin** Non-rational, non-discursive.
- Asatipoṣaṇa** Maintenance of prostitutes etc.
- Asat Non-existent**, non-being.

**Asatkriyā** A sinful action.

**Asattva** Non-existence.

**Asatya** False, falsehood or lie; futile.

**Asatyamṛṣā** Neither true nor false.

**Asadārambha** An evil activity.

**Asadgraha** Perverseness.

**Asadbhāva** Non-existence.

**Asadvedya** Same as **Asātāvedanīya**.

**Asabhya** Impolite, abusive.

**Asamañjasa** Improper, ungraceful.

**Asamādhi** Distraction of mind, lack of concentration.

**Asamiti** Carelessness.

**Asambaddha** Detached, disconnected.

**Asamyaktva** Absence of right belief, wrong faith.

**Asātā** Pain.

**Asātāvedanīya** A variety of feeling-producing karma which causes pain.

**Asāvadya** Sinless.

**Asiddha** A worldly soul.

**Asiddhahetu** Non-existent probans.

**Asiddhi** Non-salvation.

**Astikāya** An extensive substance.

**Astivāda** The doctrine accepting the existence of realities like soul, matter, karma etc.

**Asteya** Non-stealing.

**Asthitakalpa** Flexible rules of conduct.

**Asthiranāman** A variety of body-making karma by the rise of which a living being gets an unfirm body.

**Ahiṃsā** Non-injury, non-killing, non-violence, non-harm.

**Ahorātra** A day and night.

### Ā

**Ākāśa** Space.

**Ākāśāstikāya** An extensive substance in the form of space.

**Ākiñcanya** Non-attachment, non-possession.

**Ākīrṇa** A horse of good breed; modest.

**Ākuṭṭi** Killing, injuring, hurting.

**Ākṣepañī** A kind of religious story which attracts the hearer to the truth.

**Ākhyāyaka** One who predicts the consequences of omens.

**Āgati** Birth.

**Āgama** Scripture, scriptural knowledge, authority, verbal testimony, word.

**Āgāra** A house; an exception.

**Āgāradharma** The duty of a householder.

**Āgārin** A householder.

**Āghāta** Killing.

**Āghātamaṇḍala** A slaughter-house.

**Ācāmaka** Water removed after boiling rice, pulse etc.

**Ācāmla** A kind of austerity in which food is taken without salt etc.

**Ācāra** Conduct, behaviour, practice.

**Ācārvat** One possessed of right conduct.

**Ācārya** A preceptor; the head of a group of monks.

**Ācelakya** Nakedness, nudity.

**Ācchedya** A sin incurred by snatching food from others and giving it to ascetics.

**Ājāti** Birth.

**Ājīva** A fault incurred by an ascetic by accepting food after

making his caste etc. known.

**Ājñāpanikā** Incurring karma by ordering some evil action.

**Āḍhaka** One-fourth of a **Drona**.

**Ātañka** A fatal disease.

**Ātapa** A kind of body-making karma by the rise of which a soul gets hot body.

**Ātāpana** Practising austerity by enduring heat etc.

**Ātman** A soul, a self, a conscious substance, a sentient being.

**Ātmarūpa** quality.

**Ātmavādin** One who admits the existence of soul as a substance.

**Ātmaśaṣṭhavādin** One who admits the existence of soul in addition to the five elements.

**Ātmāṅgula** A measure consisting of 108th part of the full height of a man.

**Ādānanikṣepasamiti** Carefulness in taking up and laying down things.

**Ādikara** A **Tīthañkara**.

**Āditīrthañkara** Ṛṣabha, the first **Tīrthañkara**.

**Ādirāja** Ṛṣabha, the first king.

**Ādhākarman** A sin incurred by an ascetic by accepting the food etc. specially prepared for him.

**Ānāprāṇa** Respiration.

**Ānayanaprayoga** Asking somebody to bring something from outside the limits.

**Ānukampika** Compassionate.

**Ānupūrvī** A variety of body-making karma by the rise of which a soul transmigrates from one state of existence to another.

**Āntādin** An ascetic eating inferior kind of food.

**Āpṛcchā** Same as **Āpṛcchanā**.

**Āpta** Free from passions, omniscient, reliable.

**Ābhinibodhika** Sensory - cum- mental knowledge.

**Ābhoga** Knowledge, consciousness.

**Ābhoganatā** Reflection, thought.

**Ābhogabakuśa** An ascetic consciously incurring sin.

**Āma** Raw, unripe, uncooked.

**Āmaka** A thing having life.

**Āmagandha** A fault, a sin.

**Āmarśauśadhi** Power to cure diseases by mere touch of the hand.

**Āmoṣaka** A thief.

**Āmnāya** Repetition, revision.

**Āyatasamsthāna** Long configuration.

**Āyatārtha** Emancipation.

**Āyāgapaṭa** A votive slab.

**Āyāmaṣṣkambha** Length and breadth.

**Āyuktatā** Carefulness, attentiveness.

**Āyuṣkarman** Longevity-determining karma, karma which confers on a living being a certain quantum of life.

**Ārabhaṭā** Hasty inspection of clothes.

**Ārambha** Sinful operation, killing.

**Ārā** A spoke of wheel; an era, a division of time.

**Ārādhaka** One who devotes himself to asceticism.

**Āropanā** Addition of another expiation to the former one.

**Āroha** The height of a body.

**Ārohāpariñāha** The length of the outstretched arms being equal to the height of the body.

**Ārjava** Straight-forwardness.

**Ārtadhyāna** Mournful contemplation, sorrowful concentration.

**Ārya** Noble, revered, cultured; maternal grandfather; paternal grandfather.

**Āryā** A nun, a female ascetic.

**Āryikā** A nun; maternal grand-mother; paternal grand-mother.

**Ālāpaka** A group of connected sentences, a paragraph.

**Ālāpana** Binding of two things joined together.

**Ālumpa** One engaged in evil deeds.

**Ālocana** Confession: general awareness.

**Ālocanā** Same as **Ālocana**.

**Āvaraṇīya** Obscuring, veiling, obstructing.

**Āvarjīkaraṇa** The process on the part of the omniscient to force into the remnants of his karmas.

**Āhāraparyāpti**, Full development of the power of assimilating food.

**Āhārasañjñā** Desire of taking food.

**Āhiṇḍaka** A wanderer.

I

**Āṅkhiṇī** Censure, blame.

**Āṅginīmaraṇa** Voluntary death in a definite area without receiving any service from others.

**Īcchākāra** Willingly carrying out the orders of a preceptor.

**Īcchāparimāṇa** Limitation of desires.

**Ītvaraparighṛītāgamana** To enjoy a woman accepted for a short time.

**Ītvarika** Temporary.

**Ītvarī** A woman temporarily kept.

**Īndra** A lord of gods.

**Īndriya** A sense-organ.

**Īndriyaja** Sensuous, sensory.

**Īndriyārtha** The object of a sense-organ.

**Īhalokabhaya** Fear arising from the beings of the same class.

**Īhalokāśaṃsāprayoga** Desiring being a king etc. in this world.

I

**Īryā** Walking.

**Īryāpathakarman** A kind of

karma incurred by walking etc.

**Īryāpathikabandha** Karmic bondage caused by walking etc.

**Īryāsamiti** Carefulness in walking.

**Īśvarakāraṇika** One who holds that God is the creator of the universe.

**Īhā** Speculation.

### U

**Uccagoṭra** A kind of karma by the rise of which a soul is born in a high family.

**Uccavrata** One observing great vows, i.e., an ascetic.

**Uccāraprasravaṇa** Excretion and urine.

**Uccāvaca** High and low.

**Uccholana** Careless washing of hands etc.

**Ucchvāsa** Inhalation.

**Uñcha** Begging of alms.

**Utkarṣa** Pride.

**Utkālika** A canonical text which can be studied at any proper time, that is, for the study of which there is no fixed time.

**Utkrṣṭa** Maximum.

**Uttamapuruṣa** An excellent man like **Tīrthaṅkara**, **Cakravartin** etc.

**Uttamasthāna** Salvation.

**Uttamārtha** Salvation.

**Uttaraguṇa** A secondary duty, a minor virtue.

**Uttaracara** Successor, subsequent.

**Uttaraprakṛti** A sub-division of karma.

**Uttānika** One who has taken a vow to lie flat.

**Uttānapariyānika** A biography from birth to death.

**Utpala** A measure of time consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Utpalāṅgas**.

**Utpalāṅga** A measure of time consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Hūhukas**.

**Utpāda** Origination.

**Utpādana** A fault incurred by an ascetic himself in connection with his food etc.

**Utsarpiṇī** Ascending aeon in which happiness etc. gradually increase.

**Utsedhāṅgula** A measure equal to eight barley grains.

**Udaya** Rise, realisation,

operation.

**Udāharaṇa** Illustration.

**Udīraṇā** Premature realisation.

**Udgama** A fault incurred by an ascetic owing to a householder in connection with his food etc.

**Udghātika** Minor expiation.

**Udghātima** Same as **Udghātika**.

**Uddiṣṭabhakta** Food specially prepared for an ascetic.

**Uddeśa** Same as **Uddeśaka**.

**Uddeśaka** A sub-division of a chapter.

**Uddyota** A kind of body-making karma by the rise of which a soul gets bright body.

**Uddhārapalyopama** The time required to empty a pit which is one **Yojana** in length, breadth and width and is filled with the finest points of hair and from which one hair-point is taken out at every **Samaya**.

**Uddhārasamaya** The number of **Samayas** contained in 2½ **Sāgaropamas**.

**Uddhārasāgaropama** A measure of time consisting of

ten **Koṭūkoṭis** of **Polyopamas**.

**Udbhinna** A fault incurred by an ascetic by accepting the food etc. given after opening a door etc.

**Udvartanā** Increasing the duration and intensity of karma.

**Unmāna** A measure of weight.

**Unmiśra** Food mixed with what possesses life.

**Upakaraṇa** An implement.

**Upakaranendriya** Protecting environment of a sense-organ.

**Upakāra** Function; benefit, benevolence.

**Upagraha** Help; favour, kindness, benevolence.

**Upaghāta** False accusation.

**Upaghātanāman** A variety of body-making karma which causes abnormal formation of the body.

**Upacāra** Transference of epithet; figurativeness; formality.

**Upadeśaruci** Right belief produced by a sermon.

**Upadhāna** An austerity; a pillow.

**Upadhāraṇatā** Holding.

**Upadhi** Implements.

**Upanaya** Application.



- Upapatti** Reasoning, argument.
- Upapāta** Instantaneous birth, i.e. the birth of celestial and infernal beings.
- Upapāda** Same as **Upapāta**.
- Upabr̥mhaṇa** Encouraging, nourishing, praising, glorifying.
- Upabhoga** Enjoyment of consumable things.
- Upabhogaparibhogaparimāṇa** Limiting consumable and non-consumable things.
- Upabhogāntarāya** A variety of power-obstructing karma by the rise of which one cannot enjoy consumable things.
- Upamāna** Analogy.
- Upayukta** Attentive, cautious.
- Upayoga** Cognition; carefulness, attentiveness.
- Uparata** One who has desisted from sin, free from sinful activity.
- Upalambha** Comprehension, acquisition.
- Upavāsa** A fast.
- Upāśama** Forgiveness; peace; subsidence.
- Upāśamaka** An ascetic subsiding his passions.
- Upāśamaśreṇi** The ladder of spiritual advancement by a gradual subsidence of deluding karmas.
- Upāśāntakaṣāya** One whose passions have subsided.
- Upāśāntamoha** One whose delusion has subsided.
- Upasampadā** Placing oneself under another preceptor in order to acquire knowledge etc.
- Upasarga** Trouble, affliction.
- Upasthāpana** Readmission into the order of monks or nuns.
- Upāṅga** A subsidiary canonical text.
- Upādāna** Material cause.
- Upādeya** Acceptable.
- Upādhyāya** A teacher, a professor.
- Upāśraya** A place where ascetics stay.
- Upāsaka** A lay-votary.
- Upāsakapratimā** A special vow of the lay-votary.
- Upāsikā** A female lay-votary.
- Upekṣā** Indifference.
- Upodghāta** An introduction.
- Uraḥparisarpa** A reptile

moving on the breast.

Ū

**Ūnodarikā** Reduced diet.

**Ūrdhvagati** Upward motion.

**Ūrdhvaloka** Upper world, celestial world.

**Ūha** Inductive reasoning.

Ṛ

**Ṛjugati** Straight motion.

**Ṛjumati** Straight telepathy.

**Ṛjusūtra** Straight (present or momentary) view-point, analytic stand-point.

**Ṛjusūtrābhāsa** Fallacy of the straight viewpoint, fallacy of the analytic standpoint.

**Ṛtu** A measure of time consisting of two months.

**Ṛddhī** An extraordinary power.

**Ṛṣabhanārācasamhanana** A physical constitution in which the joining of bones is not very firm.

E

**Ekajñānin** An omniscient person.

**Ekatva** Oneness, identity; solitariness, loneliness.

**Ekabhakta** Taking only one meal in a day.

**Ekavādin** One who holds that there is only one soul in the universe and that alone is real.

**Ekānta** Absolute.

**Ekāntara** Fasting on alternate days.

**Ekāntavāda** Absolutism.

**Ekārthasamavāyin** Coinherent in the substratum.

**Ekāvālī** An austerity consisting of a number of fasts in ascending and descending order.

**Ekāśana** Taking only one meal in a day.

**Ekāśanika** One who takes his food only once a day.

**Ekendriya** A one-sensed being, a being with one sense, viz., touch.

**Evambhūta** Such-like viewpoint which accepts the meaning of a word when the object is engaged in the action indicated by it.

**Evambhūtābhāsa** Fallacy of the such-like viewpoint.

**Eṣaṇū** Search of food etc.

**Eṣaṇāsamiti** Carefulness in begging food etc.

**Eṣaṇīya** Acceptable, worthy of being received.

## O

**Ogha** General, ordinary; worldly stream.

**Oghadr̥ṣṭi** Commonplace attitude.

**Oghasañjñā** Instinct.

## Au

**Aughika** General, common.

**Autpattikī** Instantaneous.

**Audayika** Emerging due to the rise of karma.

**Audārika** Gross body etc.

**Auddeśika** A sin incurred by an ascetic by accepting the food etc. specially prepared for them.

**Aupapātika** A celestial or infernal being.

**Aupapādika** Same as **Aupapātika**.

**Aupaśamika** Emerging due to the subsidence of karma.

## K

**Kaṭibandhana** A cloth for the waist.

**Kaṭuka** Bitter taste.

**Kaṭhina** Hard touch.

**Kathaka** A professional storyteller.

**Kathañcit** In some way, from a particular point of view,

relatively.

**Kanakāvalī** An austerity which, when graphically represented by the units of fasts of which it consists, assumes the shape of a gold necklace.

**Kanda** A bulb, a bulbous root, a bulbous vegetation.

**Kandamūla** A bulb and a root.

**Kandarpa** An amorous talk.

**Kanyālīka** A lie spoken for one's daughter.

**Kamaḍhaka** A dining bowl of a nun.

**Kambala** A blanket.

**Karaṇa** An instrument, a means; an action, a performance; a sense-organ; an astrological division of day; mental modification, thought-activity; a secondary vow or virtue.

**Karuṇā** Compassion, mercy.

**Karotika** An ascetic carrying a garland of human skulls.

**Karkaśā** Acute pain.

**Karmaja** Karmic body etc.

**Karmajā** Developed by practical experience.

**Karman** Fine particles of matter binding the soul; action or activity; occupation.

- Karmapudgala** Karmic matter. two aeons; a group of celestial regions.
- Karmabandha** Karmic bondage. **Kalpanīya** Free from any fault, acceptable.
- Karmabhūmi** A land of action, i.e., a region where people earn their livelihood by any of the three occupations, viz., military, literary and agricultural. **Kalpavṛkṣa** A desire-fulfilling tree.
- Karmabhūmija** A person born in a land of action. **Kalpasthita** An ascetic observing scriptural rules.
- Karmamāṣaka** A weight equal to ten grains. **Kalpātīta** An ascetic who has transcended scriptural rules; a heavenly being born beyond the **Kalpas**.
- Karmayoga** Activity pertaining to karmic body. **Kalpika** proper, prescribed.
- Karmavādin** One who believes in the doctrine of karma. **Kalpita** Fit for an ascetic, acceptable.
- Karmasamutthā** Identical with **karmajā**. **Kalpopaga** Same as **Kalpopapanna**.
- Karmaskandha** Karmic molecule. **Kalpopapanna** A heavenly being in a **Kalpa**.
- Karmādānā** A profession not fit for the lay-votary, a cruel profession by which sinful karmas are incurred. **Kalpya** Acceptable, permitted.
- Kalaṅkalībhāva** Wandering in the cycle of birth and death. **Kalyāṇa** Bliss, good, happiness, welfare.
- Kalpa** Proper conduct, i.e., conduct according to prescribed rules; a cycle of **Kalyāṇaka** Blissful, auspicious.
- Kalyāṇabhāgin** Covetous of bliss.
- Kalyoja** A sum which when divided by four leaves one as remainder.
- Kalyoja-kalyoja** A sum which when divided by four leaves

one as remainder and has a quotient which, too, when divided by four leaves one as remainder.

**Kalyoja-kṛtayugma** A sum which when divided by four leaves no remainder and has a quotient which when divided by four leaves one as remainder.

**Kalyoja-tryoja** A sum which when divided by four leaves three as remainder and has a quotient which when divided by four leaves one as remainder.

**Kalyoja-dvāparayugma** A sum which when divided by four leaves two as remainder and has a quotient which leaves one as remainder when divided by four.

**Kavalāhāra** The intake of gross food.

**Kaṣāya** A passion, i.e., anger, pride, deceit or greed.

**Kaṣāyakuṣīla** An ascetic not free from passions.

**Kaṣāyamohanīya** a kind of deluding karma causing passions.

**Kaṣāyaraśa** Astringent taste.

**Kākiṇī** A weight equal to two grains.

**Kāṅkṣā** Desire for false tenets.

**Kāpotaleśyā** The third of the six kinds of *Leśyā*, the gray temperament.

**Kāma** Objects of visual and auditory senses; sexual desire.

**Kāmabhoga** Objects of the five senses; sexual enjoyment.

**Kāya** Body.

**Kāyakleśa** Mortification of the body, physical mortification.

**Kāyagupti** Control of bodily activities.

**Kāyadaṇḍa** Sin of the body.

**Kāyaduṣpraṇidhāna** Sinful activity of the body.

**Kāyaprayoga** Bodily activity.

**Kāyapravīcāra** One who experiences sexual enjoyment through body.

**Kāyasamita** Careful in bodily activities.

**Kāyika** Physical, bodily.

**Kāyotsarga** Stoppage of bodily activities, renunciation of bodily attachment.

**Kāraka** A kind of right belief by which one performs virtuous acts and causes others to do the

same.

**Kāraṇa** Cause; reason.

**Kāruṇya** Compassion.

**Kārmaṇa** Karmic body etc.

**Kārmikī** Same as **Karmajā**.

**Kārya** Effect.

**Kāla** Time, the auxiliary cause of change; death.

**Kālacakra** Cycle of time consisting of six ascending and six descending eras.

**Kālamāsa** Time of death.

**Kālika** A canonical text which can be studied at the first and the last of the four divisions of a day as well as of a night.

**Kāluṣya** Sinfulness.

**Kimicchaka** Accepting alms after asking such questions as "Have you got this? Have you got that?" etc.

**Kilviṣa** Deceit.

**Kīlikasaṃhanana** A weak joining of the body in which the bones are merely pressed together and nailed.

**Kukṣi** A measure equal to two cubits.

**Kuḍava** A weight equal to four **Setikās**.

**Kutīrthika** A heretic.

**Kutrika** The three worlds, viz., the upper world, the lower world and the middle world.

**Kutrikāpaṇa** A shop from which any of the articles produced in the three worlds can be purchased.

**Kudarśana** Wrong belief, false faith.

**Kudṛṣṭi** One who possesses a false faith, a heretic.

**Kudharma** A heretical creed.

**Kupya** Utensils, furniture, clothes etc.

**Kupravacana** A heretical scripture.

**Kubja** Hump-backed.

**Kumāraśramaṇa** One who has taken initiation as bachelor, an unmarried ascetic.

**Kumbhī** The birth-place of infernal beings.

**Kuruka** Deceit.

**Kurūpa** Deluding karma.

**Kula** A group of the disciples of the same preceptor.

**Kulaka** Same as **Kuḍava**.

**Kulakara** Governor.

**Kulapati** The head of a group of ascetics.

**Kuliṅga** Garments worn by heretics.

**Kuliṅgin** A heretic.

**Kuśīla** Of bad character, of wicked conduct; imperfect.

**Kusamaya** A false doctrine; a heretical scripture.

**Kūṭatola** False weight.

**Kūṭamāna** False measure.

**Kūṭalekha** False document.

**Kūṭasākṣya** False evidence.

**Kṛtayugma** Any number which being divided by four does not leave any remainder behind.

**Kṛtayugma-kalyoja** Any number which being divided by four leaves one behind and the sum thus got by division when divided by four leaves no remainder.

**Kṛtayugma-kṛtayugma** Any figure in which the sum divided, as also the sum obtained by division, leaves nothing behind when divided by four.

**Kṛtayugma-tryoja** Any number which being divided by four leaves three behind and the sum thus got by division when divided by four leaves no remainder.

**Kṛtayugma-dvāparayugma**

Any number which being divided by four leaves two behind and the sum thus got by division when divided by four leaves no remainder.

**Kṛtikarman** Obeisance to a preceptor and the like.

**Kṛtya** A revered person.

**Kṛṣṇaleśyā** The first of the six kinds of *Leśyā*, the black temperament.

**Kevala** Omniscience.

**Kevalajñāna** Perfect comprehension, comprehensive omniscience.

**Kevalajñānāvaraṇa** A karma which obscures perfect comprehension.

**Kevaladarśana** Perfect apprehension, apprehensive omniscience.

**kevaladarśanāvaraṇa** A karma which obscures perfect apprehension.

**Kevalin** Omniscient.

**kevalisamudghāta** The activity performed by an omniscient being by expanding his soul-particles to destroy some karmas.

**Keśarikā** A small brush of threads.

**Keśaloca** Rooting out of hair, pulling out of hair.

**Keśavāñijya** Dealing in furs or furred animals.

**Kaivalya** Omniscience.

**Koṭākoṭi** A crore multiplied by a crore.

**Koṭikoṭi** Same as **Koṭākoṭi**.

**Koṣṭha** Firmly grasping.

**Kautkucika** One who acts like a joker.

**Kautkucya** Undesirable gesticulation.

**Kramabhāva** Successive occurrence.

**Kriyā** Activity.

**Kriyāvādin** Believer in moral and spiritual action.

**Krīta** A fault incurred by giving food etc. to an ascetic after purchasing it.

**Krodha** Anger.

**Krodhana** Irritable, wrathful.

**Krośa** A measure equal to four thousand **Kukṣis**.

**Kṣaṇika** Momentary.

**Kṣapakaśreṇi** Ladder of spiritual advancement by a gradual destruction of karmas.

**Kṣapaṇa** Destruction of karmas; an ascetic.

**Kṣapitakarman** One who has destroyed karmas.

**Kṣamaṇa** an ascetic of forbearing nature; an austerity; a fast.

**Kṣamā** Forgiveness, forbearance.

**Kṣamāpanā** Begging of pardon.

**Kṣamāśramaṇa** An ascetic of forgiving nature.

**Kṣaya** Destruction or annihilation of karmas.

**Kṣayopaśama** Destruction-cum-subsidence of karmas.

**Kṣānti** Forbearance, patience.

**Kṣāntikā** A mother.

**Kṣāyopaśamika** Resulting from destruction-cum-subsidence of karmas.

**Kṣiptacitta** One maddened on account of sorrow.

**Kṣīṇakaśāya** One whose passions are destroyed.

**Kṣīṇamoha** One whose delusion is destroyed.

**Kṣīrāsrava** One possessed of sweet speech like milk.

**Kṣullaka** A small monk.

**Kṣullikā** A small nun.

**Kṣetra** Place, area, space, land; country, region.



**Kh**

**Khagati** Gait.

**Khaṭvāṅga** An instrument employed by ascetics.

**Khaṇḍika** A pupil, a disciple.

**Khaluṅka** An immodest disciple.

**Khādima** Same as *Khādya*.

**Khādya** All that is chewed or nibbled.

**Khimsana** Dishonour, censure, disregard, contempt.

**Khedajña** One who has knowledge of the miseries of the world.

**G**

**Gaccha** A smaller group of ascetics.

**Gaṇa** A bigger group of ascetics.

**Gaṇadhara** A pontiff, a principal disciple of *Tirthaṅkara*; the head of a *Gaṇa*.

**Gaṇāvacchedaka** The head of a small group of monks.

**Gaṇāvacchedinī** The head of a small group of nuns.

**Gaṇin** The head of a *Gaṇa*.

**Gaṇinī** The principal nun in a *Gaṇa*.

**Gaṇipīṭaka** Scriptures.

**Gaṇḍikā** Composition of sentences uniform in sense.

**Gaṇḍīpustaka** A book equal in length and breadth.

**Gati** Motion, gait; a state of existence.

**Gatināman** A kind of body-making karma the rise of which leads a soul to various states of existence.

**Gandha** Smell.

**Gama** Uniform style of composition; varieties, distinctions; description.

**Gamaka** Same as *Gama*.

**Gamika** A scripture having similar passages.

**Garbhajanma** Uterine birth.

**Garhaṇā** Same as *Garhā*.

**Garhā** Censure.

**Gali** A lazy disciple.

**Gaveṣaṇatā** Same as *Gaveṣaṇā*.

**Gaveṣaṇā** fathoming.

**Gāthāpati** The head of a family; a merchant.

**Giripātana** Death by fall from a mountain.

**Gītārtha** Well-versed in scriptures.

**Gucchaka** A kind of brush to remove dust or insects from body etc.

**Guñjā** A weight equal to two grains.

**Guṇa** A quality, an attribute; a virtue, a merit; a vow; a degree; a thread; multi-plication.

**Guṇaratna** A kind of penance lasting for sixteen months in which one fasts for a day in the first month, for two days in the second and so on for sixteen days in the sixteenth month.

**Guṇaviramaṇa** Identical with **Guṇavrata**.

**Guṇavṛddhi** Increasing of a degree.

**Guṇavrata** A supplementary vow to strengthen the fundamental vows of a lay-votary.

**Guṇasthāna** A stage of spiritual development, a state of virtues.

**Guṇahāni** Decreasing of a degree.

**Guṇideśa** The residence of a substance.

**Gupti** Self-control.

**Guru** A preceptor.

**Gurukula** A group of ascetics under one preceptor.

**Gurunāman** A variety of body-making karma by the rise of which a soul gets heavy body.

**Gurumāsa** Same as **Māsaguru**.

**Gurulaghu** Heavy and light.

**Gurusparśa** Heavy touch.

**Ḡḍhrapṛṣṭha** Death caused by the piercing of the beaks of vultures etc.

**Ḡḥītārtha** One who has accepted the path of salvation.

**Gocara** Begging of alms.

**Gocarī** Alms.

**Gocchaka** Same as **Gucchaka**.

**Gotrakarman** A kind of karma causing heredity, heredity-determining karma.

**Gomūtrikā** A motion with three curves.

**Grantha** Knot of karmas; external and internal possessions.

**Granthi** A knot in the form of attachment and aversion.

**Granthibheda** Cutting of the intense **Granthi**.

**Graha** Receiving.

**Grahaṇa** Same as **Graha**.

**Glāna** An ailing ascetic.

### Gh

**Ghaṣṭimātraka** A small earthen pot.

**Ghana** Sound produced from metallic instruments.

**Ghanavāta** Dense air.

**Ghanavātavalaya** Circular dense air.

**Ghanodadhi** An ocean with dense water.

**Ghanodadhivalaya** A circular ocean with dense water.

**Ghāta** Killing, destruction; hell.

**Ghātīkarman** An obstructive karma, karma which obstructs any of the fundamental qualities of a soul.

**Ghātin** Obstructive, obscuring.

**Ghrāṇa** Identical with **Ghrāṇendriya**.

**Ghrāṇendriya** The organ of smell, the nose, the olfactory sense-organ.

### C

**Cakradhara** Identical with **Cakravartin**.

**Cakravartin** The sovereign king of a country.

**Cakrin** Same as **Cakravartin**.

**Cakṣurindriya** The sense of sight, the eye, the visual organ.

**Cakṣurdarśana** Visual apprehension.

**Cakṣurdarśanāvaraṇa** A kind of karma obscuring visual apprehension.

**Caturanta** The world.

**Caturindriya** A four-sensed being, a being with four senses, viz., touch, taste, smell and sight.

**Caturthabhakta** A fast.

**Caturviṃśatistava** A hymn dedicated to the twenty-four **Tirthaṅkaras**.

**Candrakavedhya** Piercing the eye of a rotating doll with an arrow.

**Candrapratimā** A sort of penance in which one morsel of food is increased on every day in the bright half and decreased similarly in the dark half of the month.

**Cayopacayika** Subject to decrease and increase.

**Cara** A mobile being.

**Caraṇa** Ascetic conduct,

asceticism; conduct.

**Caranākaraṇānuyoga** An exposition of the primary and secondary rules of conduct.

**Caramadeha** One with the last body, i.e., one who attains liberation in the same birth.

**Carita** Conduct; life.

**Caryā** Moving about.

**Calanikā** A waist-cloth used by a nun.

**Cāṇḍikya** Anger.

**Cāturmāsa** The rainy season.

**Cāturyāmadharmā** The law of four vows, viz., non-violence, non-falsehood, non-stealing and non-possession.

**Cāraṇa** An ascetic possessed of an extra-ordinary power of movement.

**Cārikā** A nun.

**Cāritra** Conduct, right conduct.

**Cāritramohanīya** Conduct-deluding karma, a kind of karma that obstructs right conduct.

**Cāritrācāritra** Partial observance of right conduct.

**Cāritrāvaraṇīya** Same as **Cāritramohanīya**.

**Cāritrin** An ascetic.

**Citta** Mind, soul, consciousness, knowledge, life, vitality.

**Cittavat** A sentient being.

**Cintā** Thought; reasoning; induction.

**Cintāmaṇi** A wish-fulfilling gem.

**Cilimilikā** A curtain.

**Cilimilī** Same as **Cilimilikā**.

**Cūlā** An appendix.

**Cūlikā** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Cūlikāṅgas**; an appendix.

**Cūlikāṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Prayutas**.

**Cetana** Conscious.

**Cetanā** Identical with **Caitanya**.

**Cetas** Same as **Citta**.

**Cela** Cloth.

**Celaka** Identical with **Cela**.

**Caitanya** Consciousness.

**Caitya** A memorial on a funeral place; a temple; a garden; delightful; omniscience.

**Colapaṭṭa** The waist-cloth of a monk.

**Caurika** Same as *Caurya*.

**Caurya** Stealing, theft.

**Cyavana** Death of a god.

### Ch

**Chatrāticchatra** Holding one umbrella above another.

**Chadman** An obscuring karma, a kind of karma that obscures the qualities of soul.

**Chadmastha** A non-omniscient.

**Chandanā** Inviting the preceptor etc. to partake of a thing received by an ascetic.

**Channa** A feast, a festivity.

**Channapada** Deceit, fraud.

**Chardana** Abandoning.

**Chardita** A fault connected with accepting food at the hands of one who has vomitted.

**Chaviccheda** Mutilation of limbs.

**Chāgalika** A butcher.

**Chāyopaga** A densely shady tree.

**Cheda** Degradation, cut in seniority.

**Chedopasthāpana** Reinitiation.

### J

**Jaga** A living being.

**Jaghanya** Minimum.

**Jaṅgama** A mobile being.

**Jaṅghācāraṇa** An ascetic who can move in the sky simply by patting the thighs.

**Jantu** A living being.

**Jarāyuja** Birth with a yolk-sac.

**Jalacara** A five-sensed aquatic being.

**Jalla** Dirt of the body; an acrobat.

**Jallauṣadhi** The power by which a disease is destroyed by mere contact with dirt of the body.

**Jāṅgamika** Produced from mobile living being, e.g. wool, silk etc.

**Jātatejas** Fire.

**Jāti** A class of living beings; maternal side; birth; a caste; a kind.

**Jātināman** A variety of body-making karma causing birth in different classes.

**Jātisthavira** An ascetic of sixty or more years of age.

**Jātismaraṇa** Memory of past lives, recollection of past births.

**Jina** A conqueror of passions, a victor.

**Jinakalpa** The conduct of an ascetic like that of *Jina*.

**Jinakalpika** Identical with *Jinakalpin*.

**Jinakalpin** A solitary ascetic whose conduct is like that of *Jina*.

**Jinagrha** A *Jina* temple.

**Jinadharmā** Jinism, Jainism.

**Jinapratimā** An image of a *Jina*, an idol of a *Tirthaṅkara*.

**Jinavara** A *Tirthaṅkara*.

**Jinavāṇī** Speech or words of a *Tirthaṅkara*.

**Jinaśāsana** Jainism.

**Jinendra** A *Tirthaṅkara*.

**Jineśvara** A *Tirthaṅkara*.

**Jinottama** A *Tirthaṅkara*.

**Jihvendriya** The sense-organ of taste, the gustatory sense-organ.

**Jitakalpa** Traditional usage or convention.

**Jīṇakumārī** A woman who has remained virgin till old age.

**Jīva** A soul, a living being, an animate or a sentient substance.

**Jīvakāya** A group or class of living beings.

**Jīvanikāya** Same as *Jīvakāya*.

**Jīvapradeśa** An indivisible particle of a soul.

**Jīvarāśī** A collection of living beings, an aggregate of conscious beings.

**Jīvaloka** The world of living beings.

**Jīvasthāna** A state of soul, a condition of living being.

**Jīvāstikāya** An animate extensive substance, a sentient extensive being, a conscious extensive real, an extensive substance in the form of soul.

**Jīvita** Life.

**Jīvitāśamsā** Desire to live long.

**Jugupsā** Disgust.

**Jaina** Relating to *Jina*; revealed by *Jina*; a follower of *Jina*.

**Joṣaṇā** Destruction of karmas; act of resorting.

**Jñāta** An illustration.

**Jñāna** Comprehension, determinate cognition, knowledge.

**Jñānāvaraṇa** Comprehension - obscuring karma.

**Jñānāvaraṇīya** Same as austerility.

**Jñānāvaraṇa.**

**Jñānin** A person possessed of right knowledge.

**Jñānopayoga** Determinate cognition.

**Jyotiṣka** A stellar god.

### T

**Tata** Sound produced from leather covered musical instruments.

**Tattva** Reality or truth; a real; essence; an essential thing; substance.

**Tattvajñāna** Knowledge of the truth.

**Tattvaruci** Predilection for the truth.

**Tattvārtha** A real object; an essential thing; a substance.

**Tathākāra** Assent.

**Tathāgata** Free from reincarnation, emancipated.

**Tathāgatipariṇāma** That being the natural state of motion.

**Tanuvāta** The atmosphere of thin air.

**Tanuvātavalaya** The circular atmosphere of thin air.

**Tapas** A penance, an

**Tapasvin** One who practises penance; an ascetic.

**Tamaskāya** A column of darkness.

**Tarka** Inductive reasoning.

**Taskaraprayoga** Encouraging a thief.

**Tāpasa** An ascetic.

**Tikta** Pungent taste.

**Tintiṇika** Grumbling at not being able to get food etc.

**Tiryak** Identical with **Tiryāṅca.**

**Tiryagdik** The transverse direction.

**Tiryagloka** The middle world.

**Tiryāṅca** An animal or a sub-human being; a plant, an earth-bodied being, a water-bodied being, a fire-bodied being and an air-bodied being.

**Tīrtha** An order of monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen; a ford; a holy place; a creed.

**Tīrthaṅkara** A founder of the four-fold order; a ford-maker.

**Tīrthaṅkaranāman** A kind of body-making karma by the rise of which a soul takes birth as a

**Tīrthaṅkara.**

**Tivrakāmābhiniveśa** Intense sexual desire.

**Tucchauṣadhibhakṣaṇa** Eating a worthless thing from which much is to be thrown away.

**Trṇasparśa** Pain inflicted by blades of grass.

**Tejaska** Identical with **Taijasa**.

**Tejaskāya** A fire-bodied being.

**Tejaskāyika** Same as **Tejaskāya**.

**Tejoleśyā** The fourth of the six kinds of **Leśyā**, the bright temperament; an effulgence of hot atoms.

**Taijasa** Electric body etc.

**Taijasanāman** A kind of body-making karma causing electric body.

**Trasa** A mobile being.

**Trasakāya** A mobile-bodied being.

**Trasakāyika** Same as **Trasakāya**.

**Trasanāḍī** The space-channel occupied by mobile beings.

**Trasanāman** A kind of body-making karma by the rise of

which a soul gets mobile body.

**Trasareṇu** The sixty-fourth part of the tip of a hair.

**Trīndriya** A three-sensed being, a being with three senses, viz., touch, taste and smell.

**Truṭita** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Truṭitāṅgas**.

**Truṭitāṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Pūrvas**.

**Tryoja** A number which divided by four leaves three as remainder.

**Tryojakalyoja** A number which leaves a remainder of one and the quotient leaves that of three when divided by four.

**Tryojakṛtayugma** A number which leaves zero as remainder and the quotient leaves three when divided by four.

**Tryojatryoja** A number which leaves a remainder of three when it as well as its quotient is divided by four.

**Tryojadvāparayugma** A number which leaves a remainder of two and the quotient leaves that of three when divided by four.



## D

**Daṇḍa** Sinful activity, violence; a measure equal to four cubits.

**Daṇḍaka** A division, a section.

**Datti** An unbroken current of water or food.

**Dattika** An ascetic observing a vow of taking a particular number of *Dattis* of food and water.

**Dantavāṇijya** Ivory trade.

**Dayā** compassion, kindness.

**Darśana** Apprehension, intuition, indeterminate cognition; belief, faith, conviction; introspection.

**Darśanamoha** Identical with *Darśanamohanīya*.

**Darśanamohanīya** Belief-deluding karma.

**Darśanaśrāvaka** The layman who holds right belief.

**Darśanāvaraṇa** Apprehension-obscuring karma.

**Darśanāvaraṇīya** Same as *Darśanāvaraṇa*.

**Dalika** An aggregate of karmic particles.

**Davāgnidāpana** Setting fire to a forest etc.

**Daśadaśamikā** A penance of a hundred days in which on every day or the tenth day one *Datti* of food and water is increased till it reaches ten *Dattis*.

**Daśamabhakta** Four fasts.

**Dānāntarāya** A kind of power-obstructing karma which hinders the inclination for making gifts and charities.

**Dāvāgnidāna** Same as *Davāgnidāpana*.

**Digambara** Nude, naked.

**Digvirati** Same as *Digvrata*.

**Digvrata** A vow restraining the limit of directions.

**Diśāparimāṇa** Same as *Digvrata*.

**Dikṣā** Renunciation, initiation, consecration.

**Dīptacitta** One maddened on account of joy.

**Dīrghakālasaṅjñā** Identical with *Dīrghakālikī*.

**Dīrghakālikī** A cognition lasting for a long time.

**Dīrghakālopaśeṣikī** Identical with *Dīrghakālikī*.

**Dīrghaloka** Vegetation.

**Duḥkha** Pain, distress, suffering, misery.

- Duḥsvara** Harsh voice.
- Durabhiḡandha** Bad smell.
- Durgati** An evil state of existence.
- Durbhaga** Unfortunate.
- Durlabhabodhika** Dull.
- Durvasu** Incapable of salvation.
- Duścīrṇa** bad, wicked, evil.
- Duṣkrta** A sin, an evil act.
- Duṣpakvauṣadhi** Improperly cooked food.
- Duṣpratīlekhana** Improper inspection.
- Duṣpramārijana** Improper brushing or sweeping.
- Duṣṣamaduṣṣamā** Exceedingly miserable era.
- Duṣṣamā** Miserable era.
- Dūtīpiṇḡa** A fault incurred by an ascetic by obtaining food by conveying a message.
- Dūrālaya** Salvation.
- Dūṣya** A cloth, a garment.
- Drṣṭānta** An example, an illustration.
- Drṣṭi** Sight, vision; view, tenet, doctrine; belief, faith.
- Drṣṭimat** Having right belief.
- Drṣṭivādasañjñā** Identical with **Drṣṭivādopadeśikī**.
- Drṣṭivādopadeśikī** A cognition backed by scriptural knowledge.
- Deva** A god.
- Devakula** Temple.
- Devagati** The celestial state of existence.
- Devacchandaka** A platform on which an idol is seated.
- Devadūṣya** A divine garment.
- Devanikāya** A group of gods, a class of celestial beings.
- Devādhideva** A **Tīrthaṅkara**.
- Devānupriya** Lovable like a god.
- Devendra** A lord of gods.
- Deśaghātin** Partially obscuring karmic particles.
- Deśacāritra** Partial observance of right conduct.
- Deśanā** Sermon.
- Deśavirata** A lay-votary, the laity.
- Deśavirati** Partial renunciation.
- Deśavrata** Same as **Deśavirati**.
- Deśāvakaśika** A vow restraining the limit of area.
- Daivasika** Pertaining to day.

**Dravika** Self-restrained.

**Dravya** A substance; a potency; a generality; matter, a physical thing.

**Dravyānu yoga** An exposition relating to a substance, a substantial exposition.

**Dravyārthika** Substantial, generic.

**Dravyārthikanaya** Substantial standpoint, generic viewpoint.

**Dravyāstika** same as **Dravyārthika**.

**Droṇa** A measure of four **Ādhakas**.

**Dvāparayugma** A figure which divided by four leaves two as remainder.

**Dvāparayugmakalyoja** A figure which leaves a remainder of one and the quotient leaves two when divided by four.

**Dvāparayugmakṛtayugma** A figure which leaves zero as remainder and the quotient leaves two when divided by four.

**Dvāparayugmatryoja** A figure which leaves a remainder of three and the

quotient leaves two when divided by four.

**Dvāparayugmadvāparayugma** A figure which leaves a remainder of two when it as well as its quotient is divided by four.

**Dvāra** A topic, a chapter, a section.

**Dvicarama** One attaining liberation after being born as a human being twice.

**Dvīndriya** A two-sensed being, a being with two senses, viz., touch and taste.

**Dveṣa** Aversion.

#### Dh

**Dhanuṣ** A measure of four cubits.

**Dharma** Medium of motion; property, attribute, characteristic; law, moral virtue, religion.

**Dharmacakra** Wheel of law.

**Dharmatīrtha** A religious order.

**Dharmadhyāna** Inquisitive contemplation or meditation.

**Dharmācārya** A religious preceptor.

**Dharmāstikāya** An extensive substance in the form of medium of motion.

**Dharmin** Substance; subject.

**Dharmya** Virtuous, righteous.

**Dharmyadhyāna** Same as **Dharmadhyāna**.

**Dhātrīpīṇḍa** A fault incurred by obtaining alms by amusing a child like a nurse.

**Dhāraṇa** Holding.

**Dhāraṇā** Retention.

**Dhūma** A fault incurred by an ascetic by condemning the dryness of food.

**Dhyāna** Meditation, concentration, contemplation.

**Dhruva** Constant, permanent; inevitable.

**Dhruavya** Permanence.

## N

**Nandi** Knowledge.

**Nandī** Same as **Nandi**.

**Nandyāvarta** A kind of diagram.

**Napuṃsakaveda** Androgynous desire.

**Naya** A viewpoint, a standpoint, a partial judgment.

**Nayavāda** Doctrine of viewpoint.

**Nayābhāsa** Fallacious viewpoint, false standpoint.

**Nayuta** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Prayutas**.

**Naraka** A hell.

**Narakapāla** A guard of hell, a torturer of hellish beings.

**Narakāvāsa** An infernal abode.

**Nalina** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Nalināṅgas**.

**Nalināṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Padmas**.

**Navanavamikā** A kind of penance lasting for eighty-one days.

**Nāgnyabhāva** Possessionlessness, asceticism.

**Nāmakarman** Body-making karma, physique-making karma.

**Nārakagati** The infernal state of existence.

**Nārācasamhanana** A weak joining of the body in which the bones are loosely tied together.

**Nārāyaṇa** Identical with **Vāsudeva**.

**Nālikā** A measure equal to four cubits; a period equal to twenty-four minutes.

**Nāstitva** Non-existence.

**Nihkṣepa** Same as **Nikṣepa**.

**Niḥśreyas** Salvation.

**Niḥśvāsa** Exhalation.

**Niḥśṛta** Manifest.

**Nikācana** Invitation.

**Nikācanā** A state of karma in which there is no possibility of any change in its nature, intensity etc.

**Nikāya** A collection, a group; salvation.

**Nikṛti** Deceit.

**Nikṣipta** A fault incurred by an ascetic by accepting food etc. placed on an animate thing.

**Nikṣepa** Positing a meaning, determination of a meaning; placing, putting.

**Nigamana** Conclusion.

**Nigoda** A vegetation in the lowest form of life.

**Nigraha** Preventing sinful activity.

**Nitya** Permanent, eternal, constant, perpetual.

**Nityabhakta** Daily meal.

**Nityavāda** Eternalism.

**Nityavāsa** Living in one place permanently.

**Nityānitya** Permanent as well as impermanent.

**Nidāna** Desire for worldly gain as a reward for austerities.

**Nidrā** Ordinary sleep.

**Nidrānidrā** Deep sleep.

**Nidhatti** Incapability of all the processes of karma other than increased realisation and decreased realisation.

**Nibandha** Operation.

**Nimittakāraṇa** Instrumental cause.

**Nimittapiṇḍa** Accepting alms on the basis of augury.

**Niyati** Fate, destiny, pre-determination.

**Niyativāda** Fatalism, determinism, necessitarianism.

**Niyativādin** A fatalist, a determinist.

**Niyama** A secondary vow.

**Niyāga** Emancipation.

**Niravadya** Sinless.

**Nirāmagandha** Faultless.

**Nirupakrama** Irreducible, inevitable.

**Nirodha** Cessation, prevention.

**Nirgrantha** One devoid of knot, one without possession, detached, passionless, an ascetic, a monk.

**Nirgranthadharmā** Jainism.

- Nirgranthapravacana** Jaina scriptures.
- Nirgranthī** A nun.
- Nirjarā** Dissociation of karmas, destruction of karmas.
- Nirmāṇa** A variety of physique-making karma which causes the formation of the body with the several parts in their proper places.
- Nirmitavādin** One who holds that the universe is created by God.
- Niryāṇa** Emancipation.
- Niryukti** Determination of the relevant meaning of a word.
- Nirlāñchana** Emasculation, castration.
- Nirvartanā** Construction.
- Nirvāṇa** Perfection, Emancipation.
- Nirvikalpa** Indeterminate.
- Nirvikalpaka** Same as *Nirvikalpa*.
- Nirvrta** Perfect, emancipated, free from the cycle of birth and death.
- Nirvṛti** Same as *Nirvāṇa*.
- Nirvṛtti** Accomplishment.
- Nirvega** Disgust with the world.
- Nirveda** Identical with *Nirvega*.
- Nirharāṇa** Cremation.
- Nivṛtibādarasamparāya** Same as *Apūrvakarāṇa*.
- Niśīthikā** A place for study or meditation.
- Niścaya** Continued cognition.
- Niścayanaya** Real viewpoint, essential standpoint.
- Niścalapada** Salvation.
- Niśrā** Dependence.
- Niśrita** Dependent.
- Niṣadyā** A seat, a sitting place.
- Niṣīdana** Act of sitting.
- Niṣīdhikā** Identical with *Niśīthikā*.
- Niṣeka** A particular order of karmic particles.
- Niṣedhikā** Same as *Naiṣedhikī*.
- Niṣkarman** Salvation.
- Niṣkuṭakṣetra** The region occupied by immobile beings only.
- Niṣkramaṇa** Entrance into the ascetic order.
- Nisarga** Operation.
- Nisargakriyā** Approval of an evil act.
- Nisargaruci** Intuitive belief.
- Niha** Deceitful.

**Nihā** Deceit.

**Nihnava** One who conceals the truth and propounds a false doctrine, a schismatic.

**Nīcagotra** Inferior heredity.

**Nīcagotrakarman** Inferior heredity-determining karma.

**Nīcaigotra** Identical with **Nīcagotra**.

**Nīti** Same as **Naya**.

**Nīlaleśyā** Blue thought-tint, the second of the six kinds of **leśyā**.

**Nūma** Deceit; darkness; covering.

**Naigamanaya** The non-distinguished standpoint.

**Nairayika** Identical with **Nāraka**.

**Naiścayika** Real.

**Naiṣedhikī** Reciting a word suggestive of negation.

**Noindriya** Mind.

**Nokarman** Quasi-karmic matter.

**Nokaṣāya** A quasi-passion.

**Notrasanosthāvara** A liberated soul.

**Nyagrodhaparimaṇḍala** The upper part of a body to be symmetrical and not the lower.

**Nyāsa** Same as **Nikṣepa**.

**Nyāsāpahāra** Misappropriating a pledged property.

## P

**Pakṣa** A thesis; an abode.

**Pañcakalyāṇa** Five auspicious events in the life of a **Tīrthaṅkara**.

**Pañcāstikāya** Five extensive substances.

**Pañcendriya** A five-sensed being, a being with five senses, viz., touch, taste, smell, sight and hearing.

**Paṇḍaka** A eunuch.

**Paṇḍitamaraṇa** Wise death, peaceful death, voluntary death.

**Pataṅgavīthikā** Begging alms without any order.

**Padastha** Concentration upon holy chants.

**Padārtha** A substance, an object.

**Padma** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Padmāṅgas**.

**Padmaleśyā** Pink thought-tint, the fifth of the six kinds of **Leśyā**.

**Padmāṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Utpalas**.

- Paratva** Priority.
- Paramapada** Salvation.
- Paramāṅga** A way to salvation.
- Paramāṅgu** An atom, an indivisible part of matter.
- Paramāṅupudgala** Same as **Paramāṅgu**.
- Paramātman** A liberated soul.
- Paramāyata** Salvation.
- Paramārtha** Emancipation.
- Parameṣṭhin** The supreme divinity.
- Parampara** With intervening space or time; succession.
- Paramparāgama** Scriptures received in succession.
- Paralokabhaya** Fear produced by another class of beings.
- Paralokāśamsā** Other-worldly desire.
- Paravyapadeśa** To say about one's own possession that it belongs to someone else.
- Parasaṅgraha** The ultimate generic viewpoint.
- Parāghāta** Superiority over others.
- Parārthānumāna** Syllogistic inference.
- Parikuñcana** Deceit, fraud.
- Parigopa** Greed.
- Parigraha** Possession, possessiveness.
- Parigrahaparimāṇa** Limited possession.
- Parigrahaviramaṇa** Abstinence from possessions, non-possessiveness.
- Parigrahasaṅjnā** Desire for possession, acquisitive instinct.
- Paricāraṇā** Sexual enjoyment.
- Parijñā** Abandoning after a thorough understanding.
- Pariṇati** Identical with **Pariṇāma**.
- Pariṇāma** Modification, transformation, change; inherent nature or capacity.
- Pariṇāminityatva** Permanence in the midst of changes.
- Paridevana** Bewailing.
- Parinirvāṇa** Perfection, salvation.
- Paribhoga** Enjoyment of a thing that can be used repeatedly or externally.
- Parimantha** Destruction.
- Parivarta** A period consisting of infinite **Utsarpiṇīs** and **Avasarpiṇīs**.



- Parivartanā** Revision, affliction, repetition.
- Parivartaparihāra** Entering another's dead body.
- Parivartita** A fault connected with giving of food etc. to an ascetic after changing or exchanging.
- Parivāda** Blame, accusation, censure.
- Parīṣṭhāpana** Abandoning or throwing with care.
- Paṭisarpa** A reptile.
- Paṭisrava** The cause of destroying karmas, destruction of bondage.
- Pariharāṇa** Using, utilising.
- Parihāraviśuddhi** Purity attained by a particular penance lasting for eighteen months, an expiatory catharsis.
- Parīta** Numerable, limited; separate, independent; little, small.
- Parītakāya** One body with one soul.
- Parītajīva** A soul with a separate body.
- Parītasamsārīn** One who has to wander in this world for a short time.
- Parīṣaha** A trouble, an affliction.
- Parīṣahajaya** Conquest of troubles, endurance of afflictions.
- Parokṣa** Indirect knowledge, non-perceptual cognition, mediate knowledge.
- Paryaya** Same as **Paryāya**.
- Paryāpta** Identical with **Paryāptaka**.
- Paryāptaka** A developed living being.
- Paryāptanāman** A kind of body-making karma by the rise of which a living being gets a developed body.
- Paryāpti** Full development, completion.
- Paryāya** A mode, a condition, a form, a state.
- Paryāyajeṣṭha** Senior in initiation.
- Paryāyasthavira** An ascetic after twenty years of consecration.
- Paryāyārthika** Modal, particular, specific.
- Paryāyārthikanaya** Modal standpoint, particular viewpoint.
- Paryāyāstika** Same as **Paryāyārthika**.
- Paryāvasatha** A monastery.

- Paryupāsana** Service, devotion.
- Paryuṣaṇa** Residence in a particular place during the rainy season.
- Paryuṣaṇā** Identical with **Paryuṣaṇa**.
- Palālaka** A straw-bed.
- Palita** A wicked deed; karmic particles.
- Palya** Same as **Palyopama**.
- Palyopama** An innumerable quantity of years, i.e., a number of years crossing seventy-seven cyphers.
- Paścātkarman** A sin due to washing of utensils etc. with water having life after giving food to an ascetic.
- Paśyattā** Apprehension; vision.
- Pāṇimukta** A motion with one curve.
- Pādapopagamana** Meeting death voluntarily in a tree-like motionless state.
- Pādaproñchana** A piece of cloth to wipe the feet.
- Pādapagamana** Same as **Pādapopagamana**.
- Pāna** A drink.
- Pānaka** Same as **Pāna**.
- Pānapuṇya** A virtue acquired by giving water out of compassion.
- Pānabhojana** Food and drink.
- Pāpa** Evil karma, sinful karma, evil, sin.
- Pāpaka** Sinful, wicked.
- Pāpaprakṛti** A species of sinful karma.
- Pāraṇaka** Same as **Pāraṇā**.
- Pāraṇā** Breaking a fast.
- Pāramārthika** Real, transcendental.
- Pārāñcika** Expulsion from the order.
- Pārigrāhikī** A sin due to an attachment to property.
- Pāriṇāmika** Inherent, natural.
- Pāriṇāmikī** Mature intelligence.
- Pāritāpanikā** A sin incurred by troubling others.
- Pārihārika** An ascetic who accepts food avoiding faults; a performer of a particular penance for a period of eighteen months.
- Pārśvastha** An ascetic fallen from right conduct.
- Pāsastha** Same as **Pārśvastha**.

- Pāṣaṇḍa** Heresy.
- Pāṣaṇḍin** A heretic.
- Piṇḍapāta** Alms.
- Piṇḍaprakṛti** A collective type of body-making karma.
- Piṇḍalaka** One who lives on alms.
- Piṇḍaviśuddhi** Purity of food.
- Piṇḍastha** Concentration upon certain material objects.
- Piṇḍaiṣaṇā** Search for food.
- Pihita** A fault incurred by an ascetic by accepting food covered with an animate thing.
- Pītalesyā** Yellow thought-tint.
- Pumveda** Masculine desire.
- Puṇya** Good karma, virtuous karma, good, virtue.
- Puṇyaprakṛti** A species of virtuous karma.
- Pudgala** Matter; flesh; soul.
- Pudgalaparāvarta** A period required by a soul for absorbing all the material particles of the universe as gross body etc.
- Pudgalaparivarta** Identical with *Pudgalaparāvarta*.
- Pudgalaprakṣepa** Throwing of pebbles etc.
- Pudgalāstikāya** An extensive substance in the form of matter.
- Punarbhava** Rebirth.
- Puraḥkarman** Same as *Purākarman*.
- Purākarman** A sin due to washing of hands etc. before giving food to an ascetic.
- Puruṣaveda** Same as *Pumveda*.
- Puruṣādāniya** Honourable, respectable, revered.
- Pulāka** An ascetic whose conduct is worthless like chaff.
- Puṣkarinī** A lotus-pond.
- Pūtikarman** Mixing of pure food with the impure.
- Pūrva** A period equal to eighty-four lakhs of *Pūrvāṅgas*; a scripture that was composed first.
- Pūrvacara** Predecessor, antecedent.
- Pūrvadhara** One versed in the *Pūrva* texts.
- Pūrvabhava** Previous birth, former life.
- Pūrvarata** Sexual enjoyments earlier experienced.
- Pūrvavid** Same as *Pūrvadhara*.
- Pūrvāṅga** A period equal to

eighty-four lakhs of years.

**Pūrvin** Identical with **Pūrvadhara**.

**Ṁṛcchanā** Enquiring.

**Ṁrthaktva** From two to nine.

**Ṁrthaktvavitarka** Meditating upon the difference among the modes of a substance according to scriptural knowledge.

**Ṁrthvikāya** An earth-bodied soul.

**Ṁrthvīśilāpaṭṭaka** An earthen slab as a plank.

**Paiśunya** Slander, back-biting.

**Potaka** A cotton cloth.

**Potaja** One born in a bare state.

**Ṁoṣadha** Self-observation, spiritual activity.

**Ṁoṣadhopavāsa** Fasting combined with self-observation.

**Paudgalika** Material.

**Pauruṣi** A quarter of a day or night.

**Pauṣadha** Same as **Ṁoṣadha**.

**Pauṣadhaśālā** A place for observing **Pauṣadha**.

**Prakarāṇa** An explanatory

text.

**Prakalpa** Excellent conduct.

**Prakīrṇa** Same as **Prakīrṇaka**.

**Prakīrṇaka** Miscellaneous canonical texts.

**Prakṛti** Nature of karma.

**Prakṛtibandha** Bondage of karmic nature.

**Prakṣēpāhāra** Eating in mouthfuls.

**Pracaṅkramaṇa** Moving on the knees.

**Pracalā** Sleeping while sitting or standing.

**Pracalāpracalā** Sleeping while walking.

**Pracchannapratisēvin** A secret sinner.

**Pracchādani** An upper garment.

**Prajñapti** Identical with **Prajñāpanā**.

**Prajñā** Reasoning.

**Prajñāpanā** Explanation, exposition.

**Praṇidhāna** Concentration.

**Praṇidhi** Same as **Praṇidhāna**.

**Praṇītarasabhjana** Delicious food.

**Pratara** A layer.

- Pratāna** Dreaming at length.
- Pratikramaṇa** Repentance.
- Pratīkrānta** One who has repented for his faults.
- Pratigraha** A bowl.
- Pratijñā** A thesis.
- Pratinārāyaṇa** Identical with **Prativāsudeva**.
- Pratīpatti** Continued cognition.
- Pratīpātin** Fallible, passing.
- Pratīpūrṇapauṣadha** Self-observation for a day and night.
- Pratīpṛcchanā** Asking permission again; questioning in order to clear a doubt.
- Pratīpṛcchā** Same as **Pratīpṛcchanā**.
- Pratībhā** Grasp.
- Pratīmā** A particular vow or penance.
- Pratīmāna** Weight.
- Pratīrūpakavyavahāra** Dealing in counterfeit commodities.
- Pratīlekhaṇa** Inspection.
- Pratīlekhanā** Same as **Pratīlekhaṇa**.
- Prativāsudeva** The enemy of a **Vāsudeva**.
- Pratīśatru** Same as **Prativāsudeva**.
- Pratīṣṭhā** Fixing.
- Pratīsaṃlīnatā** Staying at a lonely place, living alone.
- Pratīsevanā** Incurring a fault.
- Pratīsevā** Same as **Pratīsevanā**.
- Pratyakṣa** Perception, direct cognition, immediate knowledge.
- Pratyabhijñāna** Recognition.
- Pratyākhyāna** Abandonment, renouncement.
- Pratyākhyānāvaraṇa** A group of passions hindering total renunciation.
- Pratyāvartanatā** Repeated determination.
- Pratyeka** One body having one soul, an individual body.
- Pratyekaprakṛti** An individual type of body-making karma.
- Pratyekabuddha** One who attains enlightenment by means of something.
- Pratyekaśarīra** Same as **Pratyeka**.
- Pradeśa** A particle, an indivisible part, a partless part; a space-point.
- Pradeśabandha** Bondage of karmic particles.

- Pradveṣa** Aversion.
- Prabhāvanā** Propagation of law.
- Pramattasamhata** An ascetic having some negligence.
- Pramāṇa** An organ of knowledge, a means of cognition, right knowledge, valid cognition; complete judgment.
- Pramāṇāṅgula** A measure equal to one thousand **Utsedhāṅgulas**.
- Pramāda** Negligence, carelessness.
- Pramāṛjana** Sweeping, brushing, cleaning.
- Pramokṣa** Emancipation.
- Prayuta** A period equal to eighty-four lakhs of **Prayutāṅgas**.
- Prayutāṅga** A period equal to eighty-four lakhs of **Ayutas**.
- Prayoga** Activity.
- Prayogakriyā** Bodily operation.
- Prayogaja** Produced by an effort.
- Prayogabandha** Bondage due to activity.
- Prayogamati** Intellectual activity.
- Prayogasampat** The power to debate.
- Prarūpaṇā** Explanation, exposition.
- Pravacana** Scripture, sermon, doctrine, creed.
- Pravartaka** One who causes monks to observe asceticism, the administrative head of a group of monks.
- Pravartin** Identical with **Pravartaka**.
- Pravartinī** A chief nun who causes others to observe asceticism, the female administrative head of a group of nuns.
- Pravādin** A heretic.
- Pravāduka** An opponent.
- Pravīcāra** Sexual enjoyment.
- Pravrajīta** An ascetic.
- Pravrajyā** Initiation, consecration.
- Prasṇāpraṣṇa** Stating to both who asks and does not ask.
- Prasthāpita** Beginning of an expiation.
- Prasphoṭanā** A fault incurred by an ascetic by jerking clothes.
- Prasravaṇa** Urine.

**Prāṇa** A vitality, a life-principle, a vital element, life; out-breath, exhalation; a measure of time equal to breath.

**Prāṇavadha** Destruction of life, severance of a vitality.

**Prāṇavyaparopana** Identical with **Prāṇavadha**.

**Prāṇātīpāta** Injury to vitality, destruction of life, killing, violence.

**Prāṇātīpātaviramaṇa** Non-violence, non-killing, non-injury, abstinence from violence, refraining from killing or injuring.

**Prāṇin** A sentient being, a living being, an animate being.

**Prātihārika** Returnable.

**Prātihārya** A majestic occurrence, a miraculous happening.

**Prātītyikī** A sin owing to external things.

**Prāduṣkaraṇa** A fault incurred by giving food to an ascetic by lighting a lamp.

**Prādveṣikī** A sin incurred by jealousy.

**Prāntakula** A low family.

**Prāntacaraka** An ascetic who

deserves the vow of accepting remnants of coarse or dry food.

**Prāntajīvin** One who lives on coarse or dry food.

**Prāntāhāra** Coarse or dry food; remnants of food.

**Prāpyakāritā** Coming in close contact.

**Prābhṛta** A chapter; a quarrel; a present.

**Prābhṛtaprābhṛta** A sub-chapter.

**Prābhṛtikā** A fault incurred by offering food etc. to an ascetic as a gift.

**Prāmānya** Validity.

**Prāmitya** Borrowing for an ascetic.

**Prāyaścitta** An expiation, an atonement.

**Prāyogyā** Reduction of karmic effect.

**Prāvacanika** A preceptor well-versed in scriptures.

**Prāśnika** An ascetic who tells the good or evil result of a question.

**Prāsuka** Lifeless.

**Prekṣā** Reflection; inspection.

**Preyas** Attachment.

**Preṣyaparityāga** A vow in

which the lay-votary does not ask his servant to do any work.

**Preṣyaprayoga** Sending a servant outside the prescribed sphere.

**Proṣadha** Identical with **Poṣadha**.

**B**

**Bakuśa** An ascetic who cares for the adornment of his body and implements and whose mind is spotted by infatuation, a spotted ascetic.

**Baddhasprṣṭa** Closely touched.

**Bandha** Bondage of karmas; binding.

**Bandhana** Binding, bondage.

**Baladeva** The elder brother of a **Vāsudeva**.

**Balabhadra** Same as **Baladeva**.

**Bahirātman** Exterior self.

**Bahirmukha** Extrovert.

**Bahirvyāpti** External concomitance.

**Bahubījaka** Having numerous seeds.

**Bahurata** A doctrine which holds that an act takes many

a moment for its performance.

**Bahuśruta** One versed in many scriptures, a very learned person.

**Bādara** Gross.

**Bādarakāya** A gross-bodied being.

**Bādarānāman** A kind of body-making karma which causes gross body.

**Bādarasamparāya** One in whom passions occur in a gross form.

**Bālatapas** An ignorant practice of penance, childish penance.

**Bālapaṇḍita** A lay-votary, one with partial renunciation.

**Bālamaraṇa** Foolish death, childish death.

**Bāhalya** Thickness.

**Bāhyatapas** External austerity, physical penance.

**Bāhyopadhi** External belongings.

**Bījabuddhi** One having intellect like a seed which leads him to many meanings from a word having one meaning.

**Bījaruci** Right belief brought about by hearing a word.



**Buddha** Omniscient, enlightened, learned.

**Buddhi** Intelligence, intellect; vivid determination.

**Bodha** Comprehension.

**Bodhi** Right belief.

**Bodhidurlabhatva** Rarity of right belief.

**Brahmacarya** Celibacy, continence.

**Brahman** Celibacy; salvation; self-knowledge; self-restraint.

### Bh

**Bhaktakathā** A talk about food.

**Bhaktaparijñā** Abandoning of food for ever.

**Bhaktapāna** Food and water.

**Bhaktapratyākhyāna** Fasting.

**Bhaṅga** A division, a fold.

**Bhajanā** Option, contingency, indefiniteness.

**Bhajanīya** Optional, contingent, indefinite.

**Bhaṭṭa** An honourable one.

**Bhaṭṭāraka** A venerable one.

**Bhadanta** Respectable, revered.

**Bhadrā** A penance to be performed in a particular

posture for two days.

**Bhadrottarā** A particular penance.

**Bhaya** A deluding karma that causes fear.

**Bhayaśāñjñā** The instinct of fear.

**Bhavana** A type of residential quarters meant for gods.

**Bhavanapati** Identical with **Bhavanavāsīn**.

**Bhavanavāsīn** A residential god.

**Bhavapratyaya** Owing to birth.

**Bhavabhramaṇa** Wandering in the worldly life.

**Bhavaviraha** The end of worldly existence.

**Bhavasiddhika** A soul fit to attain emancipation.

**Bhavāntara** Another life.

**Bhavika** Identical with **Bhavya**.

**Bhavya** Capable of salvation.

**Bhāṅgika** A cloth of flax.

**Bhājya** Optional, contingent, indefinite.

**Bhāṭakakarman** Livelihood from letting beasts of burden etc. on hire.

**Bhāva** State, mode, modification, condition;

inclination, intention; thought; nature; quality; psyche, mind; object, thing; actuality, reality.

**Bhāvanā** Contemplation, reflection, thought, disposition, intention, mentality, attitude.

**Bhāvabandha** Psychical bondage.

**Bhāvaviśuddhi** Purity of thought, mental purity.

**Bhāvaśruta** Scriptural knowledge.

**Bhāvasādhu** A real ascetic.

**Bhāvitātman** A meritorious man, a virtuous soul.

**Bhāṣāpariṇāti** Modification of material particles in the form of speech.

**Bhāṣāsamiti** Carefulness in speaking.

**Bhikṣācarī** Same as **Bhikṣācaryā**.

**Bhikṣācaryā** Begging alms.

**Bhikṣucaryā** The conduct of an ascetic.

**Bhikṣuṇī** A nun.

**Bhikṣupratimā** A particular penance or vow observed by the ascetic.

**Bhujaparisarpa** A reptile

moving on the arms.

**Bhūta** A living being.

**Bhūtavāda** Realism.

**Bhūtārtha** Real, true.

**Bheda** Division, dissociation; difference, distinction.

**Bhedana** Destruction.

**Bhedābhedavāda** The doctrine of identity-cum-difference.

**Bhoga** Enjoyment of things.

**Bhogabhūmi** A region of enjoyment, a land of inaction.

**Bhogāntarāya** A variety of power obstructing karma by the rise of which one cannot enjoy non-consumable things.

**Bhogopabhoga** Non-consumable and consumable things.

**Bhogopabhogaparimāṇa** Same as **Upabhogaparibhogaparimāṇa**.

**Bhaumeya** Same as **Bhavanavāsin**.

**Bhrānti** Lapse of memory.

## M

**Maṅkha** A wandering beggar earning his livelihood by showing pictures.

**Maṅḍalaka** A weight equal to twelve **Karmamāṣakas**.

- Mati** Intelligence, intellect; determination, decision.
- Matijñāna** Sensory-cum-mental knowledge.
- Matijñānāvaraṇa** A kind of karma obscuring **Matijñāna**.
- Matyajñāna** Wrong sensory knowledge.
- Madhukaravṛtti** Begging food like a bee.
- Madhukarī** Begging of alms.
- Madhyaloka** Middle world.
- Madhvāsrava** One possessed of sweet speech like honey.
- Manahparyayaajñāna** Telepathy, direct knowledge of mental modes.
- Manahparyayaajñānāvaraṇa** Telepathy-obscuring karma.
- Manahparyavajñāna** Identical with **Manahparyayaajñāna**.
- Manas** Mind.
- Manuṣyagati** The human state of existence.
- Manogupti** Mental control.
- Manojña** An ascetic of high reputation.
- Manojñāna** Same as **Manahparyayaajñāna**.
- Manoduṣpraṇidhāna** Improper mental act.
- Manoyoga** Mental activity.
- Maraṇāsāmsā** To wish for death.
- Markaṭabandha** A weak joining of bones.
- Mahattara** A chief monk.
- Mahattarā** A chief nun.
- Mahattarikā** Same as **Mahattarā**.
- Maharṣi** A **Tirthaṅkara**.
- Mahāvraṭa** A great vow, a complete vow.
- Mahāvratin** An ascetic who observes great vows.
- Mahāśilākaṇṭaka** A battle in which a pebble becomes a huge stone.
- Mahāskandha** The biggest physical aggregate.
- Mātrgrāma** Women.
- Mādhyasthya** Indifference.
- Māna** Pride; a means of measurement; a means of knowledge; honour, respect.
- Māyā** Deceit.
- Māyāmṛṣā** Falsehood together with deceit.
- Māraṇāntika** To be done when death approaches.
- Mārgaṇatā** Same as **Mārgaṇā**.
- Mārgaṇā** Searching.

- Mārdava** Modesty, mildness.
- Mālāpahṛta** Brought down from an upper storey.
- Māsakalpa** A rule that an ascetic should not stay at a place for more than a month except in the rainy season.
- Māsakṣamaṇa** Fasting for a month.
- Masaguru** A fast.
- Māsalaghu** A half fast.
- Māsikabhakta** Fasting for a month.
- Mithyākāra** Repentance.
- Mithyātva** Delusion, wrong or false belief.
- Mithyātvamohaniya** A kind of belief-deluding karma which produces complete wrong belief.
- Mithyādarśana** Wrong or false belief, delusion.
- Mithyādr̥ṣṭi** One who possesses wrong belief.
- Miśrajāta** A fault incurred by an ascetic by accepting food prepared for both the ascetic and the householder.
- Mukta** Liberated, emancipated.
- Mukti** Liberation, emancipation.
- Mukhapotikā** Same as **Mukhavastrikā**.
- Mukhavastrikā** A piece of cloth to cover the mouth.
- Mukhavāsa** Anything to scent the mouth.
- Mukhānantaka** Same as **Mukhavastrikā**.
- Muṇḍakevalin** An ordinary omniscient person.
- Mudhā** Non-attachment.
- Muni** An ascetic.
- Musala** A measure equal to four cubits.
- Muhūrta** A period equal to seventy-seven **Lavas**, i.e., forty-eight minutes.
- Mūrcchā** Attachment.
- Mūla** Root; reordainment in monkhood.
- Mūlakarman** Securing food by causing abortion etc.
- Mūlaguṇa** A fundamental or primary duty, a basic virtue.
- Mūlaprakṛti** A fundamental type of karma, a basic division of karma.
- Mūlabīja** A kind of vegetation whose roots serve as seeds.
- Mūlavrata** A fundamental or

basic vow.

**Mūlasūtra** An original canonical text, a fundamental canonical text.

**Mṛtādin** One who eats lifeless things.

**Mṛṣā** False.

**Mṛṣāvāda** A lie, falsehood.

**Mṛṣāvādaviramāṇa** Abstinence from falsehood, non-falsehood.

**Medhā** Retentiveness.

**Maithuna** Copulation, coition.

**Maithunaviramāṇa** Abstinence from copulation, non-copulation.

**Maithunasañjñā** Sexual desire.

**Moka** Urine.

**Mokṣa** Emancipation, liberation.

**Moha** Delusion, infatuation.

**Mohaniya** Deluding karma.

**Maukharya** Talkativeness.

**Mauna** Asceticism; silence.

**Mraṁṣita** A fault incurred by an ascetic by accepting food etc. smeared with an animate thing.

**Mleccha** Same as *Anārya*

## Y

**Yata** Careful.

**Yatanā** Carefulness.

**Yati** An ascetic, a monk.

**Yatidharma** The duty of an ascetic.

**Yathākhyāta** Perfect conduct.

**Yathājāta** Naked.

**Yathāpravṛttakarāṇa** Soul's ineradicable tendency towards spiritual growth.

**Yathāpravṛttikarāṇa** Same as *Yathāpravṛttakarāṇa*.

**Yathālanda** Specified time.

**Yathāsamvibhāga** Proper sharing with the ascetic.

**Yadṛcchā** Accident.

**Yadṛcchāvāda** Accidentalism.

**Yantrapīḍanakarman** Work involving milling.

**Yama** A primary vow.

**Yamanikā** An implement kept by an ascetic in the right armpit.

**Yamala** In juxtaposition.

**Yava** The eighth part of an *Aṅgula*.

**Yavamadyā** A penance having the form of the middle part of a barleycorn.

**Yaśaḥkīrtināman** A kind of

body-making karma which causes fame and honour-giving personality.

**Yāma** A vow, a great vow.

**Yāvatkathika** For life.

**Yukta** A variety of the innumerable and infinite.

**Yuga** A measure equal to four cubits; a period equal to five years.

**Yugala** A pair of male and female twins.

**Yugalaka** Identical with **Yugala**.

**Yugalita** Consisting of a pair of male and female twins.

**Yugalin** A pair of male and female twins.

**Yugma** An even number.

**Yoga** Activity.

**Yojana** A measure equal to four **Krośas**.

**Yoni** A seat of birth, a place of birth.

R

**Rajastrāṇa** A covering for vessels.

**Rajoharaṇa** A broom.

**Rajju** 1/14 of the total height of the universe, i.e., innumerable **Yojanas**.

**Rati** Liking.

**Ratimohanīya** A kind of deluding karma which produces liking.

**Ratnatraya** The three jewels, viz., right belief, right knowledge and right conduct.

**Ratnādhika** Identical with **Rātніка**.

**Ratnāvalī** A penance to be performed for five years, two months and twenty-eight days.

**Ratni** A cubit.

**Rathamusala** A battle in which a club is tied at the back of a chariot.

**Rathareṇu** A molecule of eight **Trasareṇus**.

**Rasa** Taste; intensity.

**Rasana** Same as **Rasanā**.

**Rasanā** Same as **Rasanendriya**.

**Rasanendriya** The gustatory sense-organ, the tongue.

**Rasaparityāga** Abandonment of stimulating or delicious food.

**Rasabandha** Bondage of karmic intensity.

**Rasavāñijya** Trade in alcohol.

**Rahasyabheda** Same as **Rahasyābhyākhyāna**.

**Rahasyābhyākhyāna** Revealing a secret.

**Rahobhyākhyāna** Identical with *Rahasyābhyākhyāna*.

**Rāga** Attachment.

**Rāgadveṣa** Attachment and aversion.

**Rājapiṇḍa** King's food.

**Rātnika** Senior in initiation; superior in merit.

**Rātribhakta** Identical with *Rātribhojana*.

**Rātribhojana** Taking food at night.

**Rātribhojanaviramaṇa** Avoidance of night-eating, abstinence from taking food at night.

**Rādhāvedha** Shooting a doll's eye with an arrow.

**Rāśiyugma** An even quantity.

**Ruci** Belief, faith.

**Rūkṣa** Rough touch.

**Rūpa** Form.

**Rūpasthadhyāna** Concentration on the form of the *Jina*.

**Rūpātītheadhyāna** Concentration on the formless *Siddha*.

**Rūpānupāta** Making a bodily gesture.

**Rūpin** With form, having

form, possessing form.

**Rocaka** Belief in right conduct.

**Romāhāra** Taking food from air etc. through hair.

**Raudradhyāna** Cruel contemplation.

### L

**Laghu** Light.

**Laghumāsa** Same as *Māsalaghu*.

**Lajjā** Self-restraint.

**Labdhi** Attainment of capacity; attainment of super-normal power.

**Labdhyakṣara** Capacity to follow the meaning of the letters and their combinations.

**Layana** A place of rest, a house.

**Lava** A period equal to forty-nine breaths; karma.

**Lavālava** Observance of right conduct every moment.

**Lākṣāvāñijya** Trade in lac.

**Lāṅgalikā** A motion with two curves.

**Lābhāntarāya** A kind of power-obstructing karma which hinders gaining.

**Likṣā** A molecule equal to eight tips of hair.

**Liṅga** A sign, a mark.

**Luñcana** Same as **Loca**.

**Luñcita** One whose hair are plucked out.

**Lūṣaka** Cruel; destroyer.

**Leśyā** Temperament, thought-tint, mentality; light, lustre.

**Loka** The universe, the world.

**Lokavādin** A believer in the world.

**Lokasañjñā** Worldly desire.

**Lokākāśa** The universe-space, the space within the universe, the cosmic space.

**Lokāgra** The tip of the universe.

**Lokāloka** The universe and the non-universe.

**Lokottara** Extra-ordinary.

**Loca** Plucking out of hair.

**Lobha** Greed.

**Lomāhāra** Same as **Romāhāra**.

**Laukika** Ordinary.

V

**Vaktavya** Expressible, describable.

**Vakragati** Curved motion.

**Vacana** Speech.

**Vacanagupti** Control of speech.

**Vacanadaṇḍa** Sinful speech.

**Vacanaduṣprañidhāna** Improper speech.

**Vacanayoga** Vocal activity.

**Vacanasamita** Careful in speech.

**Vacanīya** Censurable.

**Vacas** Identical with **Vacana**.

**Vajramadhyā** A penance having the form of the middle part of the thunder-bolt.

**Vajraraśabhanārāca** An excellent joining of the body in which the bones are hooked into one another.

**Vaṭabha** Hump-backed.

**Vadha** Killing; injuring; beating.

**Vanakarman** Livelihood from wood.

**Vanakāya** Same as **Vanaspatikāya**.

**Vanaspati** Vegetation, plants.

**Vanaspatikāya** A plant-bodied soul.

**Vanaspatikāyika** Identical with **Vanaspatikāya**.

**Vanīpaka** Accepting alms by showing misery.



- Varagati** Liberation.
- Varajñāna** Omniscience.
- Vargaṇā** A group of material particles or atoms.
- Varṇa** Colour.
- Varṇavāda** Praise.
- Vartanā** Gradual change, incessant change.
- Vardhamāna** The increasing one.
- Varṣa** A region, a country.
- Varṣadhara** A mountain which forms boundary of a particular region or country.
- Valanmaraṇa** Death after falling from self-restraint.
- Vasārtamarāṇa** Death caused by the subjection of senses.
- Vācaka** A reader, a teacher.
- Vācanā** Reading, teaching.
- Vāc** Identical with *Vacana*.
- Vātavalaya** Circular air.
- Vāda** Debate.
- Vādika** A debater.
- Vādin** A disputant.
- Vānavyantara** Identical with *Vyantara*.
- Vāmana** Dwarf.
- Vāyukāya** An air-bodied soul.
- Vāyukāyika** Identical with *Vāyukāya*.
- Vāsanā** Impression.
- Vāsudeva** The sovereign king of the half of a country.
- Vikaṭa** Water.
- Vikaṭanā** Confession.
- Vikaṭabhōjin** One who eats in the daytime.
- Vikalādeśa** Partial statement.
- Vikalendriya** A living being having two, three or four senses.
- Vikāla** Evening.
- Vikuttanā** Pain due to beating in various ways.
- Vikurvaṇā** Same as *Vikriyā*.
- Vikṛta** An object that causes passion, e.g., milk etc.
- Vikṛṣṭabhakta** Fast for more than three days.
- Vikriyā** Transformation.
- Vikṣepaṇā** Expanding; expounding.
- Vikṣepaṇī** A kind of religious story which expounds different doctrines.
- Vigama** Destruction.
- Vigraha** Body; curve, bend; quarrel.

- Vigrahagati** Transmigratory motion.
- Vicaya** Contemplation.
- Vicāra** Transition.
- Vicārabhūmi** A place for voiding stools.
- Vicikitsā** Inconstancy; disgust.
- Vicela** Naked.
- Vijñāna** Determinate cognition.
- Vitata** Sound produced by a stringed instrument.
- Vitarka** Scriptural knowledge.
- Vitasti** A measure equal to twelve fingers.
- Vidaṇḍa** A staff as high as the armpit.
- Vidāraṇakriyā** Proclaiming others' sins.
- Vidyācāraṇa** An ascetic who can move in the sky through the power of his lore.
- Vidyādhara** A person who can fly in the sky through the power of his lore.
- Vidyāpiṇḍa** Securing food by showing the application of a lore.
- Vidhāna** Division, classification.
- Vidhikalpanā** Positive aspect.
- Vinaya** Veneration, reverence.
- Vinayavāda** Doctrine of non-discrimination.
- Vinayavādin** Same as **Vainayika**.
- Viparyaya** Wrong, false.
- Vipāka** Fruit, fruition.
- Vipākavicāra** Contemplation of fruition of karmas.
- Vipulamati** Complex telepathy.
- Viprayoga** Removal.
- Vibhaṅgajñāna** False clairvoyance.
- Vibhajyavāda** Conditional expression, explanation by making divisions.
- Vimarśa** Enquiry.
- Vimāna** A heavenly abode; a celestial car.
- Vimānavāsin** Same as **Vaimānika**.
- Vimānāvāsa** A celestial abode.
- Vimukta** Emancipated, released.
- Vimukti** Salvation, release, emancipation.
- Vimokṣa** Same as **Vimukti**.
- Viyaṣṭi** A stick lower by four fingers than one's own body.

- Virata** An ascetic.
- Viratasamyagdr̥ṣṭi** An ascetic with right belief.
- Viratāvirata** Identical with **Deśavirata**.
- Virati** Abstinence from sin, cessation of sinful activity.
- Viramaṇa** Abstinence.
- Virāadhanā** Violation of a vow.
- Vivarta** Mode.
- Viviktaśayyāsana** A lonely residence.
- Vivekapratimā** A vow of renouncing external and internal possessions.
- Viśalyakaraṇa** Making the soul faultless.
- Viśvasena** A **Cakravartin**.
- Viṣavāñijya** Trade in poisonous articles.
- Viṣkambha** Width, extension.
- Viśaṁvādana** Deception.
- Viśambhogika** One with whom intercourse of food etc. is broken.
- Viśarga** Expansion.
- Viśarpa** Expansion.
- Viśrasā** Nature.
- Vihagagati** Same as **Vihāyogati**.
- Vihāyogati** Gait.
- Vihārabhūmi** A place for study.
- Vīcāra** Same as **Vicāra**.
- Vītarāga** Free from attachment and aversion.
- Vīrya** Power, energy.
- Vīryāntarāya** A kind of power-obstructing karma which hinders exertion or effort.
- Vṛttipariśaṅkhyāna** Reduction of alms, restrictions for food.
- Vṛttisaṅkṣepa** Identical with **Vṛttipariśaṅkhyāna**.
- Vṛṣabha** Excellent, able.
- Veda** Sexual desire.
- Vedana** Experience, feeling.
- Vedanā** Pain; experience, feeling.
- Vedanīya** Feeling-producing karma.
- Vedya** Feeling, experience.
- Vaikālika** A text which is studied in the evening.
- Vaikriya** Transformable body etc.
- Vaikriyalabdhi** The power of making a transformable body.
- Vaikriyasamudghāta** Emanation of soul-particles at the time

of making a transformable body.

**Vaikriyika** Same as *Vaikriya*.

**Vaidharmya** Heterogeneity, dissimilarity.

**Vainayika** An upholder of non-discrimination.

**Vainayikī** Born of faithful service.

**Vaimānika** A heavenly god.

**Vaiyāvṛttya** Service.

**Vairāgya** Detachment.

**Vaisrasika** Natural.

**Vaihāyasa** Committing suicide by hanging.

**Vyakta** Distinct, definite.

**Vyañjana** Sense-object-contact.

**Vyañjanākṣara** Sound of the letter, the spoken letter.

**Vyañjanāvagraha** Contact-awareness.

**Vyatikrama** Trying to violate a vow.

**Vyatireka** concomitance in disagreement.

**Vyantara** A peripatetic god.

**Vyaparopana** Destruction, severance.

**Vyaya** Destruction.

**Vyavacchitti** Destruction.

**Vyavacchinnakriyāpratipātin** Same as *Vyuparatakriyānivṛtti*.

**Vyavadāna** Penance; destruction of karmas.

**Vyavasāya** Determination.

**Vyavahāranaya** Practical standpoint, empirical viewpoint.

**Vyavahārābhāsa** Fallacy of the practical viewpoint.

**Vyākaraṇa** Answer, reply, explanation.

**Vyāghāta** An obstruction.

**Vyāpaka** Determinant concomitant.

**Vyāpti** Necessary concomitance.

**Vyāpya** Determinate concomitant.

**Vyāmoha** Delusion.

**Vyucchittinaya** The viewpoint of mode, the standpoint of difference.

**Vyutkarṣa** Pride, arrogance.

**Vyutpāta** Violence.

**Vyutsarga** Renunciation of attachment.

**Vyutsita** Bigoted.

**Vyuparatakriyānivartin** Same as *Vyuparatakriyānivṛtti*.

**Vyuparatakriyānivṛtti** A state of meditation where all activities are stopped and which is infallible.

**Vrata** A vow.

**Vratin** One who observes vows, a votary.

Ś

**Śakaṭakarman** Livelihood from carts.

**Śaṅkā** Doubt in the teachings of the *Jina*.

**Śaṅkita** A fault incurred by receiving suspicious food.

**Śata** Same as **Śataka**.

**Śataka** A chapter.

**Śabala** A gross fault, a blunder.

**Śabda** Sound.

**Śabdanaya** Verbal viewpoint.

**Śabdānupāta** Making a sound with a view to calling some one from outside the prescribed sphere.

**Śabdābhāsa** Fallacy of the verbal viewpoint.

**Śama** Calmness, peace.

**Śambūkāvartā** Begging food starting from a house in the centre and going like the

spiral of a conch.

**Śayana** Same as **Śayyā**.

**Śayanīya** Same as **Śayyā**.

**Śayyā** An abode, a residence; a bed, a bedding.

**Śayyātara** Owner of the residence, one who offers lodging to an ascetic.

**Śarīra** The body.

**Śarīraka** Identical with **Śarīra**.

**Śarīrin** A worldly soul.

**Śalākāpuruṣa** A great man.

**Śalya** A thorn in the form of false faith, deceit etc.

**Śalyoddharaṇa** Expiation.

**Śastrapariṇata** Lifeless.

**Śastrāvapāṭana** Committing suicide by cutting the body with a weapon.

**Śāṭaka** An upper garment.

**Śāṭikā** An upper garment worn by ladies.

**Śāśvata** Eternal, everlasting.

**Śāsana** Doctrine, command, scripture.

**Śāsqnadevatā** A guardian deity.

**Śikṣāvratā** A recurring exercise in self-discipline.

**Śiva** Salvation.

**Śīrṣaprahelikā** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Śīrṣaprahelikāṅgas**.

**Śīrṣaprahelikāṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Cūlikās**.

**Śīla** A supplementary vow; moral conduct; continence.

**Śukladhyāna** Pure concentration, metaphysical contemplation or meditation.

**Śuklapākṣika** A soul which attains liberation within half a **Pudgalaparāvarta**.

**Śuklaleśyā** White thought-tint, pure thought.

**Śubha** Auspicious, good, virtuous.

**Śubhanāman** Auspicious body-making karma.

**Śuṣira** Sound produced from a wind instrument.

**Śaikṣa** A disciple, a student.

**Śaileśī** An inert state of soul in which all activities are stopped.

**Śoka** Sorrow.

**Śauca** Purity; absence of greed.

**Śraddhā** Belief, faith.

**Śraddhāna** Same as **Śraddhā**.

**Śrama** Penance, austerity.

**Śramaṇa** An ascetic, a monk.

**Śramaṇatva** Asceticism.

**Śramaṇabhūta** A lay-votary who lives like a monk.

**Śramaṇasaṅgha** An order of monks.

**Śramaṇī** A nun.

**Śramaṇopāsaka** A lay-votary, a lay-man devoted to ascetics.

**Śramaṇopāsikā** A lay-votaress, a lay-woman devoted to ascetics.

**Śrāddha** A lay-votary.

**Śrāddhī** A lay-votaress.

**Śrāmaṇya** Asceticism.

**Śrāvaka** A lay-votary.

**Śrāvikā** A lay-votaress.

**Śruta** Scripture.

**Śrutakevalin** Perfect in scriptures.

**Śrutajñāna** Scriptural knowledge, verbal knowledge.

**Śrutajñānāvaraṇa** A kind of karma obscuring **Śrutajñāna**.

**Śrutadhara** Versed in scriptures.

**Śrutaniśrita** Backed by scriptural knowledge.

**Śrutaskandha** A section.

**Śrutasthavira** Well-versed in scriptures.

**Śrutājñāna** Wrong scriptural knowledge.

**Śreṇi** A row; a class; a ladder.

**Śrotrendriya** The sense-organ of hearing, the ear, the auditory organ.

**Śvetāmbara** White-clad.

### §

**Ṣaṭkāya** Six types of living beings.

**Ṣadjīvanikāya** Same as **Ṣaṭkāya**.

**Ṣaṣṭibhakta** Fast for a month.

**Ṣaṣṭhabhakta** Fast for two days

### S

**Saṃyata** an ascetic, a monk.

**Saṃyatāsaṃyata** A lay-votary.

**Saṃyatī** A nun.

**Saṃyama** Self-restraint.

**Saṃyamāsaṃyama** Partial self-restraint.

**Saṃyuktādhikaraṇa** Same as **Saṃyojanādhikaraṇa**.

**Saṃyojanā** A fault incurred by an ascetic by combining different things to create taste.

**Saṃyojanādhikaraṇa** Combining destructive instruments.

**Saṃrambha** Sinful planning.

**Saṃlekhanā** Same as **Sallekhanā**.

**Saṃvara** Stoppage of the influx of karma.

**Saṃvibhāga** Proper sharing.

**Saṃvṛta** An ascetic.

**Saṃvṛtāsaṃvṛta** A lay-votary.

**Saṃvega** Desire for emancipation.

**Saṃśaya** Doubt.

**Saṃstāra** A bed.

**Saṃstāraka** Identical with **Saṃstāra**.

**Saṃstobha** Transformation.

**Saṃsthāna** Figure.

**Saṃsthānavicaya** Contemplation of the structure of the universe.

**Saṃsvedaja** A living being born in sweat.

**Saṃsvedima** Water in which or with which something is boiled or washed.

**Saṃhanana** Bone-structure.

**Saṃhrta** A fault incurred by an ascetic by accepting food from a vessel besmeared with a living thing.

- Sakalādeśa** A synthetic statement, a complete judgment.
- Sakāmamarāṇa** voluntary death, wise death.
- Sañkara** Confusion, mixture.
- Sañkalana** Synthetic judgment.
- Sañkalpa** Intention.
- Sañkramaṇa** transformation.
- Sañkliṣṭa** Malevolent.
- Sañkhaḍi** Feast.
- Sañkhya** Numerable.
- Sañkhyādatika** An ascetic who accepts food according to a number of **Dattis**.
- Sañkhyeya** Same as **Sañkhya**.
- Saṅga** Attachment; bondage.
- Sañgrahanaya** Generic viewpoint.
- Sañgrahanayābhāsa** Fallacy of the generic viewpoint.
- Sañgha** A religious order, an order of monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen, church.
- Sañghaṭṭa** Touch.
- Sañgharṣa** Sound produced by rubbing.
- Sañghāṭaka** A group.
- Sañghāṭī** An upper garment used for covering.
- Sañghāta** Union, fusion, association, combination.
- Sañghātana** Same as **Sañghāta**.
- Sacitta** Having life, living.
- Sacittanikṣepa** Placing a thing on what possesses life.
- Sacittapidhāna** Covering a thing by what possesses life.
- Sacittapratibaddha** Same as **Sacittasambaddha**.
- Sacittasambaddha** A thing connected with what possesses life.
- Sacittasammiśra** A thing mixed with what possesses life.
- Sacittāhāra** Food having life.
- Sacela** One wearing garments.
- Sacelaka** Same as **Sacela**.
- Sajīva** Living.
- Sajvalana** Angry.
- Sañjñā** Instinct, desire; recognition; rationality, reason.
- Sañjñākṣara** The script or alphabet.
- Sañjñin** A rational being.
- Sañjvalana** A group of passions preventing perfect conduct.
- Sat** Existent, being, real, true;



good.

**Sattā** Endurance, existence.

**Sattva** A living being.

**Satya** True, truth, truthfulness.

**Sadbhūta** Real, true.

**Sadvedya** Identical with **Sātāvedanīya**.

**Santīrṇa** Liberated.

**Sapakṣa** Homologous.

**Saparyavasita** Having an end.

**Saptabhaṅgī** Sevenfold predication, sevenfold judgment, sevenfold proposition, sevenfold statement.

**Saptasaptamikā** A penance extending upto seven weeks.

**Sapravīcāra** One who is given to sexual enjoyment.

**Saptasaptamikā** A penance extending upto seven weeks.

**Sapravīcāra** One who is given to sexual enjoyment.

**Samacaturasra** The entire body to be symmetrical.

**Samatā** Equanimity.

**Samanaska** One possessed of mind.

**Samanojña** One who

observes similar conduct.

**Samantānupāta** Leaving excrement in places frequented by men etc.

**Samabhāva** Same as **Samatā**.

**Samabhirūḍha** Conventional viewpoint, specific standpoint.

**Samabhirūḍhābhāsa** Fallacy of the conventional viewpoint.

**Samaya** The minimum time-unit, a moment, an instant; a doctrine, a precept, a scripture; sign, convention; self, soul.

**Samayaḥṣetra** The human region where time is measured by the movements of sun etc.

**Samavasaraṇa** An assembly, a conference, a gathering, a meeting; arriving, coming.

**Samavasṛta** Arrived, reached.

**Samaśreni** An even row.

**Samā** An era.

**Samācāra** Right conduct.

**Samācārī** Conduct of an ascetic, proper conduct.

**Samādāna** Violation of vows.

**Samādeśa** A fault incurred by reserving particular food for ascetics.

**Samādhi** Peace of mind, easement.

- Samādhimaraṇa** Peaceful death.
- Samāya** Attainment of equanimity.
- Samārambha** Sinful preparation.
- Samāhita** Pacified, tranquil.
- Samita** Careful, cautious.
- Samiti** Carefulness, cautiousness.
- Samucchinnakriyānivṛtti** Same as *Vyuparatakriyānivṛtti*.
- Samuccheda** Momentariness.
- Samucchedaṅgādīn** One who holds the doctrine of momentariness.
- Samutthita** Ready to observe self-restraint.
- Samudāna** Begging, seeking alms.
- Samudghāta** Emanation of soul-particles from the body to destroy some karmas.
- Samuddeśa** Teaching; food; a sub-chapter.
- Samuddeśanakāla** Teaching time.
- Samuddeśika** Same as *Auddeśika*.
- Samparāya** Passion; transmigration.
- Sampātima** A flying insect.
- Samprayoga** Contact.
- Samprekṣā** Contemplation.
- Sambādhā** Pain.
- Sambodhi** Right knowledge, enlightenment.
- Sambhinnaśrotr** One who possesses the power of hearing through any part of the body.
- Sambhoga** Intercourse, interdining etc.
- Sammūrcchana** Spontaneous generation.
- Sammūrcchima** Identical with *Sammūrcchana*.
- Samyak** Right, true.
- Samyakcāritra** Right conduct.
- Samyaktva** Righteousness, right belief, right faith.
- Samyaktvamohanīya** A kind of deluding karma causing right belief in a preliminary degree.
- Samyagjñāna** Right knowledge.
- Samyagdarśana** Right belief, right faith.
- Samyagdrṣṭi** One having right belief, one possessing right faith.
- Samyaṅmithyātvamohanīya** A kind of deluding karma causing

- right and wrong, i. e., mixed belief.
- Samyañmithyādarśana** Mixed, i. e., right and wrong belief.
- Samyañmithyādṛṣṭi** One having right and wrong, i.e., mixed belief.
- Sayoga** Same as **Sayogin**.
- Sayogikevalin** An omniscient having activities of mind, speech and body.
- Sayogin** Having activities of mind, speech and body.
- Sayonika** A worldly soul.
- Saraḥśoṣaṇa** Drawing off the water from lakes etc.
- Sarāga** Passionate, having passions.
- Sarīsrpa** A reptile.
- Sarūpin** a worldly soul.
- Sarvaga** Omnipresent.
- Sarvagata** Identical with **Sarvaga**.
- Sarvaghātin** Completely obscuring karmic particles.
- Sarvajña** Omniscient, one who possesses perfect comprehension.
- Sarvajñatva** Omniscience.
- Sarvatobhadra** A kind of meditation lasting for ten days; a kind of penance lasting for 100 days or for 245 days.
- Sarvathā** Absolutely.
- Sarvadarśin** Omniscient, one who possesses perfect apprehension.
- Sarvabhadrā** A penance of 392 fasts and 49 break-fasts.
- Sarvavirati** Complete renunciation.
- Saleśya** A soul with a thought-tint.
- Sallekhanā** Voluntary death, making the body and passions thin, passionless end.
- Savicāra** Having transition, with shifting.
- Saviśeṣa** A little more.
- Saveda** A person with sexual desire.
- Sahacara** Concomitant.
- Sahabhāvin** Simultaneous, co-existent.
- Sahasābhyākhyāna** Speaking thoughtlessly.
- Sāmvyahārīka** Empirical, practical.
- Sākāramantrabheda** Divulging someone's secret.
- Sākāropayoga** Determinate

knowledge.

**Sāgara** Same as **Sāgaropama**.

**Sāgaropama** A period equal to ten **Koṭākoṭi Palyopamas**.

**Sāgāra** A householder; with an exception.

**Sāgārika** Identical with **Sāgārin**.

**Sāgārikā** A housewife.

**Sāgārin** A householder.

**Sātā** Pleasure.

**Sātāvedaniya** A kind of feeling-producing karma which causes pleasure, pleasure-producing karma.

**Sātireka** A little more.

**Sādi** The body below the navel to be symmetrical; having a beginning.

**Sādika** Same as **Sādi**.

**Sādhana** Probands; means.

**Sādharma** Identical with **Sādharmīn**.

**Sādharmīn** Co-religionist.

**Sādharmya** Homogeneity.

**Sādhāraṇa** Common body of several souls.

**Sādhāraṇaśarīra** Same as **Sādhāraṇa**.

**Sādhika** A little more.

**Sādhu** A monk.

**Sādhya** Probandum; end.

**Sādhvī** A nun.

**Sānaka** A flaxen cloth.

**Sānta** Having an end.

**Sāntarottara** An under and upper garment.

**Sāmācārī** Identical with **Samācārī**.

**Sāmānya** Generality.

**Sāmāya** Same as **Sāmāyika**.

**Sāmāyika** A vow pertaining to the attainment of equanimity, abandoning all sinful acts.

**Sāmucchadika** Identical with **Samucchadavādin**.

**Sāmparāyika** Due to passions; leading to transmigration.

**Sāmbhogika** Ascetics of the same state of conduct wherein they can interdine etc.

**Sāvadya** Sinful.

**Sāsvādanasamyagdr̥ṣṭi** One who has a slight taste of right belief.

**Simhaniṣkrīḍita** A kind of penance in which fasting gradually increases and decreases.

**Simhavikrīḍita** Same as **Simhaniṣkrīḍita**.

**Siddha** Liberated, emancipated.

**Siddhagati** Liberation.

**Siddhaśilā** A place where liberated souls reside.

**Siddhānta** A scripture; a doctrine.

**Siddhāyatana** A *Jina* temple.

**Siddhi** Liberation, emancipation.

**Sukṛta** A virtue, a good act.

**Sukha** Pleasure, happiness, bliss.

**Sucīrṇa** Rightly done.

**Sucīrṇakarman** A good deed.

**Subhaga** Fortunate.

**Suyoga** A good activity.

**Sura** A god.

**Surabhigandha** Good smell, fragrance.

**Suvarṇa** A weight of gold equal to sixteen

**Karmamāṣakas.**

**Suṣamaduṣṣamā** Happy-cum-miserable era.

**Suṣamasuṣamā** Exceedingly happy era.

**Suṣamā** Happy era.

**Susvara** Sweet voice.

**Sūkṣma** Subtle.

**Sūkṣmakāya** A subtle-bodied being.

**Sūkṣmakriyāpratipātin** An infallible state of pure meditation in which subtle bodily activities occur.

**Sūkṣmanāman** A kind of body-making karma which causes subtle body.

**Sūkṣmasamparāya** One in whom passions occur in a subtle form.

**Sūtra** A scripture (text); an aphorism; a thread.

**Sūrapramāṇabhojin** One who eats from morning till evening.

**Setikā** A measure equal to two handfuls.

**Sendriya** Having senses.

**Sevārtasamhanana** A weak joining of the body in which the ends of the bones merely touch one another.

**Sopakramāyūṣka** Same as **Apavartyāyūṣ.**

**Skandha** A molecule.

**Stambha** Pride.

**Stimita** Steady; fearless.

**Stena** A thief.

**Steya** Theft.

**Styānagrddhi** Somnambulism.

**Styānarddhi** Identical with

**Styānagr̥ddhi.**

**Strīveda** Feminine desire.

**Sthaṇḍila** A pure place, a proper place, a fit place; anger, rage.

**Sthavira** An aged monk, a senior monk, a learned monk.

**Sthavirakalpa** The conduct of an ascetic who lives in a group.

**Sthavirakalpin** An ascetic who lives in a group.

**Sthāna** A source; a state; motionlessness.

**Sthānaka** A place where ascetics stay.

**Sthāpana** A fault incurred by receiving reserved food etc.

**Sthāpanā** Representation; placing.

**Sthāvara** An immobile being.

**Sthāvarakāya** An immobile-bodied being.

**Sthāvaranāman** A kind of body-making karma by the rise of which a soul gets immobile body.

**Sthīta** Steady, motionless.

**Sthiti** Duration; rest; permanence.

**Sthitibandha** Bondage of karmic duration.

**Sthiranāman** A kind of body-making karma by the rise of which a soul gets firm parts of body.

**Sthula** Gross.

**Snāta** Same as **Snātaka**.

**Snātaka** Omniscient.

**Spandana** Vibration.

**Sparḍhaka** A group of karmic particles.

**Sparsā** Touch.

**Sparsāna** The tactile sense-organ.

**Sparsānendriya** Identical with **Sparsāna**.

**Sphotakarman** Livelihood from hewing.

**Smarāna** Recollection.

**Smṛti** Recollection.

**Syāt** In some respect, from a certain point of view, under a certain condition, relatively.

**Syādvāda** Relativism, non-absolutism.

**Svadāramantrabheda** Exposing the secret of one's own wife.

**Svayāṃsambuddha** Same as **Svayambuddha**.

**Svayambuddha** One who becomes enlightened by

himself without the aid of anybody, self-enlightened.

**Svarga** A heaven.

**Svaliṅga** One's own garb.

**Svaliṅgasiddha** One who attains liberation in the garb of a *Jaina* ascetic.

**Svaliṅgin** A *Jaina* ascetic.

**Svādima** All that is relished.

**Svādya** Identical with **Svādima**.

**Svādhyāya** Self-study, study of scriptures.

**Svārthānumāna** Subjective inference, inference for oneself.

**Hīyamāna** Decreasing.

**Huṅḍa** The entire body to be unsymmetrical; odd.

**Hūhuka** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Hūhukāṅgas**.

**Hūhukāṅga** A period consisting of eighty-four lakhs of **Avavas**.

**Hetu** Reason; cause; mark.

**Hetuvādasañjñā** Identical with **Hetūpadesīkī**.

**Hetūpadesīkī** A discriminating cognition.

**Hetvābhāsa** Fallacious reason.

## H

**Harita** Vegetation.

**Haritakāya** Identical with **Vanaspatikāya**.

**Hasta** A cubit.

**Hastaka** A broom, a brush.

**Hastakarman** Masturbation.

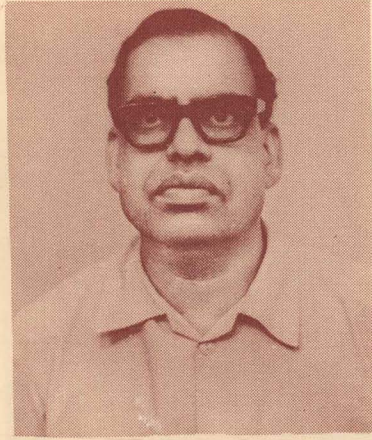
**Hāyamānaka** Same as **Hīyamāna**.

**Hāsa** Same as **Hāsyā**.

**Hāsyā** Laughter.

**Himsā** Injury, hurt, harm, violence, killing.

**Himsāpradāna** Giving a hurtful thing.



### Prof. Dr. MOHAN LAL MEHTA

Born on 9th April, 1928, in a poor family of Kānoḍ (Udaipur-Rajasthan).

Received early education at Kānoḍ and Beawar (Jain Gurukul).

A student of the Parshvanath Vidyashram, Varanasi, from 1946 to 1956.

Obtained Doctorate in 1955.

Served the Education Department, Government of Rajasthan, for 5 years (1956-61).

Worked as Deputy Director of the L. D. Institute of Indology, Ahmedabad, for 3 years (1961-64).

Served the P. V. Research Institute, Varanasi, as its Director, for 14 years (1964-78).

Also worked as Honorary Professor of Jainology and Prakrit in the Banaras Hindu University and taught Post-Graduate classes and guided Research Scholars.

Served as Professor of Jain Philosophy in the University of Poona for 10 years (1978-88).

His books have earned him laurels from the Governments of Uttar Pradesh and Rajasthan.

Undertook world-tour in 1975 and delivered lectures on various aspects of Jainology in different Universities and Institutes.

His published works include the following :

#### English :

1. Outlines of Jaina Philosophy
2. Outlines of Karma in Jainism
3. Jaina Psychology
4. Jaina Culture
5. Jaina Philosophy
6. Prakrit Proper Names
7. Jaina Technical Terms
8. Jaina Theory of Knowledge

#### Hindi :

9. जैन दर्शन
10. जैन आचार
11. जैन साहित्य का बृहद् इतिहास (भाग 2,3,4)
12. प्राकृत और उसका साहित्य
13. गणितानुयोग (अनुवाद)
14. जैन धर्म-दर्शन